A GRAMMAR AND COMMENTARY ON THE INTERNATIONAL LANGUAGE ESPERANTO.
Translations by the same Author:

"Ali Baba, at La Kvartek Kvernulo." Price, 4d.; post free, 4½d.

"Alden, at La Mirinda Lampo." Price, 6d.; post free, 5½d.

Published by
THE BRITISH ESPERANTO ASSOCIATION
(incorporated),
139–140, High Holborn, London.
A GRAMMAR AND COMMENTARY
ON THE INTERNATIONAL LANGUAGE
ESPERANTO.

Compiled by
MAJOR-GENERAL GEORGE COX,
B.A. (Cantab).

THIRD EDITION.
REVISED

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED.

NEW YORK: "NORTH AMERICAN REVIEW," FRANKLIN SQUARE.
LONDON: BRITISH ESPERANTO ASSOCIATION (INCORPORATED),
125-126, HIGH HOLBORN.
PREFAO TO THE FIRST EDITION.

Esperanto is the International Auxiliary Language
created by Dr. L. L. Zamenhof, a doctor of medicine,
residing at Warsaw, Poland. It is hardly necessary to mention this fact, but there was a time,
not very long ago, when many people thought that
Esperanto was a patent medicine, a new kind of
soap, or, in fact, anything except a language!
In its aim is not to displace existing languages, but to
be a second language for the world, and its merits are
now recognised by many eminent men of all national-
ities. If we consider the enormous advantages of a
common language, acknowledged by all, we shall at once
confess what a blessing Dr. Zamenhof has conferred
upon mankind, for:

Firstly. It enables anyone to correspond on any
topic, social, commercial, or scientific, with persons of
all nationalities.
Secondly. Books of all descriptions are at once
translated into this common language, and sold all
over the world; consequently scientific and medical
men will not have to wait, perhaps years, before some
important treatise appears in their own language.
vi. PREFACE.

There is already an International Science Review (Internacia Scienca Revuo) published monthly, and also a Medical Review (Internacia Revuo Medicina), containing articles by eminent scientists, medical men, and others. Lovers of fiction would also have at command the works of all the best foreign novelists.

Thirdly.—At international congresses the speeches and discussions could be in Esperanto, and understood by all present, the aid of interpreters being unnecessary, by which great saving of time would be effected.

Fourthly.—Treaties and Conventions with foreign Powers could be drawn up in the international language, and there would be no difficulty in determining their exact signification. Take, for instance, the recent treaty of peace between Russia and Japan. The official copies of this treaty were drawn up in French and English, neither of which was the national language of the countries which the plenipotentiaries represented.

Esperanto was first introduced into England by Mr. Joseph Rhoda, of Keighley, Yorkshire, who formed the first group in that town in 1902. Shortly afterwards, in January, 1903, a group was formed in London, under the auspices of Mr. W. T. Stead, Miss E. A. Lawrence, and Mr. J. O'Connor, M.A., Ph.D., which resulted in the foundation of the present London Esperanto Club. The first English Esperanto-Gazette was founded by Mr. H. Bolingbroke Mollie in November, 1903; this was followed in January,
Progress in the language was at first slow, but it is now advancing by leaps and bounds, and there are at present in England, Ireland, and Scotland some 60* societies, groups, and clubs, affiliated to the British Esperanto Association. There is also now an American Esperanto Association, with already a large number of energetic groups; and the Esperanto Society of India has just been formed.

I hope that those who take up this Commentary on Esperanto will not think it necessary to wade through all its pages before they can read and write the language. All that is necessary for this purpose is to read the 16 simple rules, written by Dr. Zamenhof himself (para. 94), and a few paragraphs and examples on the Formation of Words (48), and on the Parts of Speech (103), (105), (113), (125), (159), (220), (245), (296). This can easily be done in two or three hours; and then, with the aid of a small English Dictionary, you will be able to write a letter in Esperanto, which will be readily understood by any Esperantist.

Or, you can buy for a few pence various primers, first lessons or instruction books, most of which contain a small vocabulary of common words. A tiny book, costing 4d., called the "Esperanto Key," weighing 4½ of an ounce, by Orlit, containing a vocabulary of

* In 1907 more than 80.
over 1,500 roots, with explanations of the suffixes, formation of words, etc., etc., gives you the language in a nutshell. This little book is already published in eight different European languages; and Chinese and Japanese editions are in preparation. If you wish to correspond with anyone of a different nation, all you have to do is to write your letter in Esperanto, enclose the "Esperanto Key" in the language of the person you are writing to, and he will understand your letter. This, you may say, is pure nonsense, but I assure you it is true, for on several occasions I have done this myself. In all cases my letters were thoroughly understood, and in two cases I received replies written in Esperanto, within three days of my writing, from persons who had never previously read a word in the language; these replies were in perfectly good Esperanto, with only one or two trifling errors, and I was quite amazed when I got them. I sent one to the editor of "The Esperantist," and he informed me he had had letters equally good, and that, in fact, it was quite a common experience.

But then you will say, "What is the use of this Commentary?" Well, it is compiled for the use of those who wish to go deeper into the study of this delightful, logical, flexible, and sonorous language, and who wish to write and speak it, not merely sufficiently well so as to be understood, but to write and speak it in good style. Esperanto, although so extraordinarily
easy to learn, has, like every national language, a certain style and elegance of expression of its own. If we translate French, or any other foreign language, literally into English, we see how bald and strange it reads, and probably some sentences would be unintelligible. A language literally translated into Esperanto would be quite intelligible to persons of all nationalities, owing to the latter being a purely logical, clear, and unidiomatic language, and to the use of the accusative case; but the literal translation might be wanting in style, grace, and smoothness, for the order of the words, although perfectly correct grammatically, might, in some cases, entail harshness of sound, and so the easy flow and euphony of the language would be lost.

The standard book for good style in the language is the "Fundamenta Krestomatio" (Fundamental Krestomathy), or book of extracts for studying a language. This book, containing 458 pages of prose and verse on numerous subjects, was published by Dr. Zamenhof in 1903, and all the articles in it were either written by himself, or if written, as many were, by the best writers of other nationalities, were corrected by him to such a degree that they do not differ from the Doctor's own style.

The more the student studies this language, the more he will wonder how it could have been created by the brain of one man; for we must remember that Esperanto was not devised by a group of learned men.
of different nationalities, bringing the knowledge of their own language to bear upon the construction of an entirely new language, but that it was born of one individual after years of intense thought and labour, and it is marvellous how he has discarded the illogical, and introduced the logical and best points of all the European and dead languages into Esperanto. How this result was obtained can best be shown by a short history of the language, taken generally from the Doctor's article on the subject in the "Krestomatio," page 341, and also from a letter he wrote to a friend, which was first printed by his consent in 1894, and reproduced in "Esperantaj Prozaĵoj," page 239.

THE ORIGIN OF ESPERANTO.

Doctor Ludovic Zamenhof, Doctor of Medicine, the inventor of Esperanto, was born on the 3rd December, 1859, at Bjelostok (Bialystok), in the Government of Grodno, West Russia, where he spent his boyhood. The inhabitants of Bjelostok were of four different nationalities, Russians, Poles, Germans, and Jews, all speaking different languages, and generally on bad terms with each other. The boy's impressionable nature caused him to reflect that this animosity was occasioned by diversity of language, and thus the first seeds of the idea of an International Language were sown. Even at an early age Dr. Zamenhof came to the conclusion that an international language was possible only if it were neutral, belonging to no nationality in particular. When he passed from the Bjelostok gymnasium to the second classical school at Warsaw he was for some time allured by the dead languages and dreamed of travelling through
the world to revive one of them for common use, but he was eventually convinced that this was
impracticable, owing to the mass of grammatical forms and ponderous dictionaries of those languages.

In his boyhood he learnt French and German, and
began to work out the idea of his new language, but when, in the 5th Class of the Gymnasium, he began to study English, the simplicity of its grammar was a revelation to him, and his own grammar soon melted down to a few pages without causing any loss to the language. But his giant vocabularies left him no peace of mind.

He tried to use similar economy in his dictionary as in the grammar, thinking that it did not matter what form a word took if it had a given meaning; so he began to invent words, taking care only that they should be as short as possible. For instance, he argued that the word "conversazione" has 12 letters; why should not the same idea be conveyed by two, say "pa"? He tried this by simply writing the shortest and most easily pronounced numerical series of pencil letters, and to these he gave a defined meaning, e.g., ab, ac, ad, ba, ca, da, ... eb, ec, ed, ... etc. He, however, soon abandoned this idea, as he found these invented words very difficult to learn, and hard to remember, and thus he came to the conclusion that the word material for the dictionary must be Romance-Teutonic, changed only as regularity and other important conditions of the language required.

He soon remarked that the present spoken languages possessed an immense store of ready-made international words known by all nations, and he commenced at once to make use of this unlimited supply.

One day, when he was in the 6th or 7th Class at the gymnasium, he, by chance, observed that the signs over shops had certain terminations, as we might notice in England, for instance, "Surgery," "Library," etc., and it then struck him for the first
time that these terminations had certain meanings, and that by using a number of suffixes, each always having the same meaning, he might make out of one word many others that need not be separately learnt. This thought shed a ray of light upon his great and terrible vocabularies, and he cried out: "The problem is solved!" He at once understood how important it was to make use of this power, which, in the national languages, plays only a blind, irregular and incomplete role. So he began to compare words and to search out the fewest and most defined relationship between them. He cast out of his vocabularies a vast series of words, substituting for each huge mass a single suffix, which had always a certain fixed relationship to a root-word. He next remarked that certain words, which he had hitherto regarded as purely roots, might easily become formed words and disappear from the dictionary, such as patrino (mother), malargia (narrow), trancilo (knife). Soon after this the Doctor had in manuscript the whole grammar and a small vocabulary.

In 1878, when he was in the 8th Class at the gymnasium, the language was more or less ready, and his fellow students commenced to study it. On the 17th December, 1878, they celebrated the birth of the language by a banquet, at which a hymn was sung, the beginning words being as follows:

Malamikete de las nacjes
Kado, kado, jam temp' esta!
La tot' homoze in familje
Konunigare so debe.

The language then was very different from what it is now, as the following translation will show:

Malamikete de la naeioj
Falu, falu, jam tempo estas!
La tuta homaro en familion
Unu 
P

"Let the unity of nations fall, fall, for the hour is come
All mankind must be united in one family."
On the table, in addition to the grammar and
dictionary, were some translations in the new
language.

The Doctor's fellow students were at first en-
thusiastic, but meeting with ridicule when they
tried to discuss the language with their elders, they
soon renounced it, and the Doctor hid his work from all
eyes.

After he left school and was at the University, for
five years and a half he never spoke of it to anyone.
This secrecy tormented him. Compelled to conceal
his thoughts and plans, he went nowhere anywhere,
and in making, and the best period of his life,
his student years, were, for him, his saddest.

Occasionally he sought society, but it failed to
torment him, and he then tried to tranquillise his
mind by writing poems in the language he was
elaborating.

For six years he worked at perfecting and testing
it. This gave him plenty of work, notwithstanding
he had considered it ready in 1878; but seven trials
showed him that, although it might be ready in
theory, it was not so in practice. He had much to
cut out, alter, and radically transform. Words, forms,
principles, and postulates opposed one another in
practice, although each, taken separately, appeared
in theory right. Such things as the universal
preposition je, the elastic verb meti (to put), the
neutral, but definite, ending u, would probably
never have entered his head had he proceeded only
on theory. Some forms, which appealed to him to
possess a mine of wealth, were shown in practice to
be useless ballast, and, on this account, he discarded
several unnecessary suffixes.

He had thought, in the year 1878, that it was
sufficient for the language to have a grammar and
vocabulary; the knowledge and use of grammar of
the language he attributed to him not knowing it sufficiently
well; but practice always kept convincing him that
the language required an indescribable "something," a
uniting element, giving it life and soul. He
therefore avoided all literal translations, and
commenced to think in the language.
He soon noticed that his new language was not a
mere shadowy reflection of the language he happened
to be translating, but was becoming imbued with a
life and spirit of its own, and was now a mere
lifeless mixture of words. It flowed of itself as
fluidly, gracefully, and freely as his own native
tongue.

However, another circumstance delayed for a long
time its public appearance. He knew that everyone
would say "Your language will be useful to me only
when the whole world accepts it; therefore, I shall
not learn it until I find everyone else is adopting it."
This problem gave him much thought, till at last it
struck him that correspondence was carried on in
cipher by means of a key possessed by both parties.
This gave him his great idea, namely, to construct his
language in the fashion of such a key by inserting in
it not only the vocabulary, but the whole grammar in
its separate elements. Such a key, alphabetically
arranged, would enable anyone possessing the key,
giving the meaning of the elements in his own
language, to understand without further ado a letter
written in Esperanto.

Dr. Zamenhof illustrates this in the "Krestomatio,
page 249, by the following sentence: "I do not
know where I left my stick; did you not see it?"
Now supposing this is German wished to write this to
an Englishman or person of any other nationality, he
would translate it from the German into Esperanto
as follows, dividing the words into their elements by
hyphens.

Mi ne sci-as, he mi las-is mi-a-n baston-o-n; m vi
gi-n ne vid-is ?
The Englishman, on receiving the letter, turns to his Esperanto dictionary, or to the CefeO Key, if it be enclosed, and reads as follows:

**MI XE I SCI-AS KIE MI LI LAS-I-IS Pf(t, BASTOX-cu VI (Ŝ-XE/VID-T-IS I = no. not = know = ending of present tense of verb = where = 1 = leave or have = end (of past tense of verb = 1 = ending of an adjective (nom. case) = stick = ending of noun (nom. case) = ending for the objective case = whether = asks a question = you = it = nom. case) = ending for the objective case = no, not = see = ending of past tense of verb = or = did = see).**

The above, therefore, in bald English is "I not know where I left my stick; whether you it have not seen (or, did see)?" Now this is perfectly comprehensible to any Englishman. But some may say "But if the German had written in his own language, and I had a German dictionary, I could quite as easily have made out his meaning." Now the following is the German for this sentence:

Ich wünsch nicht wo ich meinen Stock gelassen habe; habet Sie ihn noch gesehen?

On referring to the German dictionary, and looking out the words, he would find:—ICH = I, WEISS = white, NICHT = not, WO = where, MEINEN = to think, STOCK = stick, GELASSEN = composed, calm, HABE = to have, SIE = she, her, it, they, them, you, IHN = (not in the dictionary), NICHT = not, GESEHEN = (not in the dictionary). Therefore the sentence...
would read — I think not where I to think stick compound
property, to have (blank) not (blank).
It would be rather difficult to gather the meaning of this!

On leaving the university, Dr. Zamenhof commenced
his medical practice, and began to consider the
publication of his language. He prepared the manu-
script of his first brochure, "An International
Language, by Dr. Esperanto, Preface and Full Manual,"
and sought out a publisher. For two years he sought
in vain, the financial question meeting him at every
turn, till at length, after strenuous efforts, he
succeeded in publishing the brochure himself, in 1887.
He had "crossed the Rubicon," and Esperanto was
given to the World!

Before concluding this preface let me give a word
of advice to learners. Do not think, after a few days'
study, as many do, that you can improve the language.
If you have such thoughts, put down on a piece of
paper your youthful would-be improvements, and
think no more of them till you have a really good
knowledge of the language. Then read them over,
and they will go at once into the wastepaper bucket! or, perhaps, be preserved as curiosities! The
most skilled Esperantists have had these thoughts,
and have wasted valuable time in thinking them out,
only to find at last that the more they studied
Esperanto, the less they found it needed alteration.
This is what Dr. Zamenhof himself says on the
point:—"As the author of the language, I naturally,
more than anyone else, would wish that it should be
as perfect as possible; it is more difficult for me than
others to hold back from fancied improvements, and I
have at times been tempted to propose to Esperantists some slight alterations, but I kept in mind the great danger of this step and abandoned my intention. 

Copy the Doctor in this, and whatever you do, do not attempt to put your crude ideas of improvement into print.

In compiling this Commentary, my thanks are due to the following works I have consulted:—

"Fundamento de Esperanto," by Dr. Zamenhof.
"Esperanto Sintakso," by M. Paul Fruichet.
"The Student's Complete Text Book," by Mr. J. C. O'Connor, B.A.
"Grammaire et Exercices," by M. L. de Beaufron.
"Esperanto sintekso," by M. Paul Fruichet.
Various articles in "The Esperantist" and "The British Esperantist" gazettes.

As regards personal assistance, Mr. Bolingbroke Mudie very kindly looked over the MS. before its completion.

In preparing the manuscript for publication, my warmest thanks are due to Mr. E. A. Millidge, F.R.E.A., who took infinite pains in correcting errors of all kinds. And I must take occasion here to say that any points of grammar that may be found incorrect, or failure in making explanations clear to learners, are, in all probability, due to neglect solely following his suggestions.

21st August, 1906. GEORGE COX.
In this Second Edition of the "Grammar and Commentary" the press and other errors which appeared in the first edition have been corrected, and the book has been revised throughout; the text also has been altered, where explanations were not quite clear.

In Part I. an attempt has been made to give a nearer approach to the proper pronunciation of the vowels which differ in sound from those in English. In Part II. the use of some of the pronouns, correlative words, and adverbs has been more fully explained, and fresh pages have been added to the verb section, showing, by numerous examples, the rendering of the common English verbs "can, could, may, might, shall, will, should, would, must, ought." In Part V. additions have been made in the list of useful words and expressions.

My thanks, for their kind assistance in the revision of the book, are especially due to Mr. E. A. Millidge, Mr. A. E. Wackrill, Mr. J. W. Warden (President of the Edinburgh Group), Mr. M. C. Butler, Mr. G. W. Bullen, Dr. R. Legge, Mr. W. Bailey, Mr. C. P.
PREFACE.

Blackham, Mr. P. J. Cameron, Mr. H. Clegg, Mr. W. Morrison, Mr. G. Ledger, and many other kind Esperantists, who have written to me pointing out errors and giving useful suggestions.

Even in this second edition I fear that some errors will be found, and I shall, therefore, be extremely obliged if Esperantists will kindly point out to me any they may meet with.

12th April, 1907.

GEORGE COX.

PREFACE TO THE THIRD EDITION.

In this Third Edition of the "Grammar and Commentary," I have again to thank many kind Esperantist friends for assisting me in correcting errors, and for their advice in pointing out desirable alterations and improvements.

The book has been carefully revised, and a few additions have been made, which I trust will be found useful.

GEORGE COX.
En la mondia venis nova vento,  
Tra la mondo iras forta voko;  
Por flugiloj de facila vento  
Nun de loko flugu  
i al loko.

Ne al glavo sangon soifanta  
Gi la honro trua familiano;  
Al la mondo estare soifanta  
Gi promesis t樱ki harmonion.

Sub la sukca signo de l'espero  
Kollektu ĝis pacaj batalantoj,  
Kaj rapide kreskas la afero  
Por laboro de la esperanta.

Forte atacas travej de miliarde  
Inter la populino dividitaj;  
Sub filialo la unuaj kaj la dua,  
Por la terni anoj dislaboro.

Sub unikala lingva fundamento,  
Komprenante unu la alian,  
La populaj familio enhavantaj  
Unu granden mondo familian.

Nia diligenta kolekto  
Unu kerno pasa en la mondo,  
Ĝi la bela truo de l' homo  
Por stari en bela laboro.

L. Zamenskov.
HOPE.

A new sentiment has come into the world,
A mighty call is passing through the land;
On wings of light breeze
From place to place now let it fly.

Not to the sword thirsting for blood
Does it draw the family of mankind;
To the ever-warring world
It promises holy harmony.

Under the sacred sign of hope
Peaceful combatants are gathering,
And the cause is rapidly growing
Through the labour of the hopeful.

Strongly stand the walls of thousands of years
Between the divided peoples;
But the obstinate barriers shall leap asunder,
Beaten down by sacred love.

On a neutral linguistic foundation,
Understanding one another,
The peoples shall form in agreement
One great family circle.

Our diligent colleagues
Will not weary of their peaceful labour,
Until the beautiful dream of mankind
For eternal blessing shall be realised.

Liturgical Translation.
AL LA REGÓ.

Vivu la reg' al ai, tre longe vivu li !
Justa kaj jua reg',—bio pro sia reg'
Esin kun li.

Forta la regn truer, ver' estas lia kreo;
Gloro la reg'.
Kun amu es la reg', regn anu granda gloro...
Vivu la reg' !

Brulo, ho ucbita flamo de la eterna amo'
Pro la patruj !
Kaj forte staros mi, funj per anu li
Pro la patruj !

Longe, ho, muna vi gloro de la nuoj,
Sur rega reg!
Via plej granda glor' en la popola kor'.
Vivu la reg' !

L. ZAMENHOF.

El Fundamenta Krestomatio.
## CONTENTS

### PART I.

### PART II.
Grammar and Commentary.

### PART III.
Exercises ...

### PART IV.
Phrases. — Conversation. — Correspondence ...

### PART V.
List of Primary Words. — List of Adverbs. — Adjectives. — Conjunctions. — Prepositions. — Suffixes. — Pronominal Expressions. — Roles and Prenominal Expressions ...

### HINTS TO LEARNERS

### INDEX
PART I.

ALPHABET (Alfabeto).

1. The Alphabet (Alfabeto) consists of 28 letters, viz., 5 vowels (vokaloj) and 23 consonants (konsonantoj).

Aa, Bb, Cc, Gg, Ĝĝ, Hh, Kk, Ll, Mm, Ss, Sŝ, Tt, Ĉĉ, Dd, Ee, Ff, Ģĝ, Ĥĥ, Jj, Ľĵ, Nn, Oo, Pp, Rr, Uu, Ŭŭ, Vv, Zz.

2. The Characters are written as in English, the marks over the letters requiring them being added as printed.

3. Typewriting. — If the letters Ĉ, Ĝ, Ģ, Ĕ, Ė, Ū, Ŭ are not on the machine, type the plain letters and add the supersigns afterwards with the pen; most makers, however, supply a machine with the necessary characters.

4. The Names given to the letters are different from those of other languages. For instance, in English we add E to some of the consonants to name the letter, but in Esperanto O is added to all the 23 consonants, and the Alphabet runs thus:—A, Bo, Co, Ĉo, Do, Eo, Fo, Go, Ho, Ħo, Io, Jo, Ko, Lo, Mo, No, Oo, Po, Ro, So, Ŭo, Ŭo, Yo, Zo.

Note particularly the pronunciation of the 12 consonants, given in the next paragraph.

See "Hints to Learners," page 349.
5. The Consonants are pronounced as in English, with the following exceptions:

- **C** pronounced like in pitt, Thar.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pronounced like in chock or church.
- **Č** pron
PRONUNCIATION

1. Ĥ is a guttural aspirate similar to the Spanish CONTEXT (as heard in mujer (a woman), or like the Scotch ch in "loch," or the Irish gh in "lough." If the learner cannot catch this sound it will be sufficient to strongly aspirate the character as if it were a double letter HH, laying stress on the last H.

2. H has never the sound of X, as it has in the English words "row, box, wax," etc.

3. ĵ, the small letter, does not require the dot in addition to the circumflex.

4. Ĉ is a consonant, and is used in the combinations Ĉŭ and Ĉŭ (see para. 10).

S. Vowels.

There are no short vowels in Esperanto, as heard in the words bat, bet, bit, pot, but. All vowels should be of medium length, but it is well to begin by sounding them long (see note, page 11).

9. The vowel Ą is sounded like "ah!" or the a in "father"; Ĭ like ee in "seen"; Ū like oo in "fool."

As regards the vowels E and O, we have no words in English exactly expressing their true sounds. The correct sound of E is something midway between the vowels heard in "bale" and "bell," and that of O something midway between those heard in "dole" and "doll," viz., "eh!" (cut short) and "oh!" (cut short), but without the prolonged eau heard in these words. In the vowel E there should be no trace of the ee sound heard in "cake;" its true sound is much nearer to the e in "bell." The vowel O approaches the sound of o in "for," or of oo in "fool."

In the scheme of pronunciation (para. 10) we have therefore used ah for Ą, ah for Ū, as for I, o for O, as for U. N.B.—Do not skip or drag the vowels.

10. Combinations, Vowel and Consonant.—The following 6 combinations resemble diphthongs.
11-13. **PRONUNCIATION.**

But are not so, since a diphthong consists of 2 vowels and j and dj are both consonants:

- **AJ** pronounced ah'j or something like ai in aisle.
- **EU** pronounced eh'j or something like ai in aisle.
- **UJ** pronounced uj in joy.

It will be observed that if these double sounds be rapidly made the pronunciation will resemble the English words given, but remember they are each pronounced as one syllable, so the examples "cayenne," "wayward," "Hallelujah," are not strictly correct. **AJ, EJ, OJ, UJ** have the same sound as heard in the French words "paille," "oseille," "boyard," "fouille," and *AU* as heard in the German word "Haus."

**N.B.—** It is difficult to explain the exact sound of **ETJ**. Pronounce our word "ewe," and then give the sound of eh (cut short) to the first letter, thus ehwt, pronouncing the word as one syllable. In the scheme of pronunciation at page 8 we have given it as ehw. It occurs very rarely.

### Combinations of Consonants

- **GV, KN, KV, SV.** When these letters commence a word, both must be clearly pronounced, but the stress falls on the latter. The sound is as if a very short vowel intervened. **SV** is similar to **SW** as heard in "swell." The sound of **V** replacing **W**.

### S

- **S** being the same as our Sh, must be distinctly pronounced, when followed by one or two consonants.
- **Sš = shm, Sž = shn, Sžp = shp, Sžt = sht, Sžtr = shtr, Sžv = shv.** If the sh sound be not clearly given, mistakes might occur in a few words, as, for instance, **štup** is a step (of a ladder), but **Stup** is tow; **štal** is steel, but **Stal** a stall.
14. Sc. This combination is rather a difficulty, especially when it comes in at the beginning of a word, since it represents STS, which, with a following vowel, forms but one syllable. There are, however, very few words commencing with SC, viz.:—The five given in the list of words (para. 19) and their derivatives, the word sci (to know) being the only one in common use. First the sound of S has to be given, then T, and lastly S. Since every letter has to be sounded, it is not sufficient to pronounce sci as see, for then the initial S is omitted; we must therefore pronounce it either, the "s" being uttered very rapidly (as if it were merely a short syllable) before the voice reaches the TS, on which the stress is made. When SC is not preceded by a comma or other stop or is in the middle of a word, the pronunciation can be easily effected by joining the sound of the preceding letter to the S. Thus mi mone—i must can be pronounced mie mon-e. Mi eesti broon sciur-n = I see brown squirrel—mee tsee-broo-n sciur-oo-ron. But when the preceding word ends in S, the full sound of both of the letters S must be given, as mi mone sciur-n = I have a squirrel—mee h/ihvahs eslsee-oo-ron (the initial S very short to help to give the sound of the first s).

15. Kz. In pronouncing this combination, do not follow the English pronunciation of words like "exempt," etc., which our dictionaries give as "egzempt." Be careful not to turn the K into G in such words as ekzemplo = example, ekzameni = to examine. The full sound must be given to every letter or the three syllables, ek-zem-pl-o.

16. Pronunciation of Words.—Every vowel and consonant in a word is pronounced distinctly, and the sound never varies, whether the letters are initial, medial, or final; there is no mute letter in Esperanto. Each syllable must be distinct, and it must be
Pronunciation.

Remembered that when two vowels come together, such as ai, ae, ee, ii, oi, etc., or two similar consonants, as kk, ll, mm, etc., each letter always belongs to a different syllable, and must be given its full sound.

17. Tonic Accent.—The stress of the voice, or the tonic accent, is always on the penultimate (last syllable but one). Even in words of two syllables the tonic accent must be strongly perceived in the first syllable. The euphony and beauty of the language would in a great measure be destroyed by non-observance of this rule.

In compound words, as in others, the accent must very distinctly fall in the penultimate of the whole word; but where the compound is itself capable of four syllables, or more, the meaning of the prefixed word, or words, should be shown by laying a certain stress on those syllables which would be accented if they were complete independent words. It will be noticed how much easier it is to grasp the meaning of prefixed words when, for instance, _beauriplen& = hard-working_ is compared with _beauriplen& = hard-working_; and how much easier it is to understand an accent of the voice being given on the syllable on which we are accustomed to hear the accent fall when the word stands alone, as _a bursts = to burst_ is compared with _a bursts = to burst_.

18. Beginners should read aloud daily; at first slowly and slightly exaggerating the sounds, making free use of the organs of speech. It will then be found that in more rapid utterance the exaggeration will gradually disappear, and a good, bold, free pronunciation be attained. (See "Hints to Learners," page 349).

19. It is advisable that the student, before proceeding to the grammar, should get a thorough knowledge of the sounds of letters, syllables, and words; he should, therefore, read over the following list of words, which gives most of the combinations of sounds in the language. The italicics denote where the tonic accented falls.
**Scheme of Pronunciation.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Letter</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>ah-bah-to</td>
<td>abbot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a-b-a</td>
<td>ah-buh-buh</td>
<td>the affair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a-bi</td>
<td>ah-bi</td>
<td>to traverse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b-a</td>
<td>beh-ah</td>
<td>to wrap</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b-a</td>
<td>beh-ah</td>
<td>pencil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b-a</td>
<td>beh-ah</td>
<td>pencil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b-a</td>
<td>beh-ah</td>
<td>pencil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b-a</td>
<td>beh-ah</td>
<td>pencil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b-a</td>
<td>beh-ah</td>
<td>pencil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a-b-a</td>
<td>ah-buh-buh</td>
<td>the wave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a-b-a</td>
<td>ah-buh-buh</td>
<td>the nail</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
f 16—19.

PRONUNCIATION.

Pronunciation.

Esperanto.

a ŭ laŭdo
antaŭ
hodiaŭ ...
B Biblio ...
C cent
citi
colo
paco
pacienco...
oficiro ...
proceso ...
C ĉar
ĉielo
senĉesa ..
eĉ
E elemento..
e-aoceano ...
e - e treege ...
e-i feino
perei
ej plej
malplej ...
hejrao
e-0 neo
teorio ...
e - u pereu
e ŭ Eŭropo ...
C gento
g v gvidi
lingvo ...

lahw- d o
ahn- tahw

ho-cfe-ahw
Bee-Wee-o
tsehnt

to-tee
tso-lo
pah- tso

pah-tsee-e/m-tso
o-fee-feee-ro
pro-toi-so
chalir

chee-eA-lo
sehn-cAeA-sah
ehch

English.
praise.
before.
to-day.
Bible.
hundred.
to cite, quote
inch.
peace.
patience.
officer.
lawsuit.
because, for.
heaven, sky.
incessant,
ceaseless,
even,
element,
ocean,
exceedingly,
fairy,
to perish.

eh-leh-me/m-to
o-tseh-aA-no
treh-eA-geh
feh-ee-no
peh-reA-ee
plehy (sound " y " short,
as ye) (monosyllable) most,
least,
mahl-\A&hy
home,
hehy-mo
negative,
neh-o
theory,
teh-o-ree-o
(imperish
peh-?'gA-oo
perative).
Europe,
ehw-ro-po
tribe,
gehn-to
to guide,
^ee-dee
language.
leen-gvo
8


### Pronunciation

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Esperanto</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>go</td>
<td>go-bo to</td>
<td>goose,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ge</td>
<td>j-ea</td>
<td>to enjoy,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ga</td>
<td>j-ea</td>
<td>joy,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>h</td>
<td>h-ea</td>
<td>hair,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hau</td>
<td>h-a-ru</td>
<td>cattle,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ĉ</td>
<td>ĉ-e-re</td>
<td>chemistry,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ĝ</td>
<td>ĝ-e-re</td>
<td>echo,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ĥ</td>
<td>ħ-e-re</td>
<td>for any cause,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ĝ</td>
<td>ĝ-e-re</td>
<td>thereby,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ĵ</td>
<td>ĵ-e-re</td>
<td>thus,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ĉ</td>
<td>ĉ-e-re</td>
<td>to deify,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ĵ</td>
<td>ĵ-e-re</td>
<td>as much,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ĵ</td>
<td>ĵ-e-re</td>
<td>each,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ĵ</td>
<td>ĵ-e-re</td>
<td>those,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ĵ</td>
<td>ĵ-e-re</td>
<td>for any cause,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ĵ</td>
<td>ĵ-e-re</td>
<td>those,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ĵ</td>
<td>ĵ-e-re</td>
<td>year,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ĵ</td>
<td>ĵ-e-re</td>
<td>just about,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ĵ</td>
<td>ĵ-e-re</td>
<td>Thursday,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ĵ</td>
<td>ĵ-e-re</td>
<td>beef,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ĵ</td>
<td>ĵ-e-re</td>
<td>although,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ĵ</td>
<td>ĵ-e-re</td>
<td>receipt,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ĵ</td>
<td>ĵ-e-re</td>
<td>example,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ĵ</td>
<td>ĵ-e-re</td>
<td>eclipse,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ĵ</td>
<td>ĵ-e-re</td>
<td>to achieve,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ĵ</td>
<td>ĵ-e-re</td>
<td>a wave,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ĵ</td>
<td>ĵ-e-re</td>
<td>excessively,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Esperanto</td>
<td>Pronunciation</td>
<td>English</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o4 fare</td>
<td>fo-re</td>
<td>a fair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>oj voyaj</td>
<td>vo-yaj</td>
<td>made (plur.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o-ologio</td>
<td>o-lo-gio</td>
<td>ah-ology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o- tronli</td>
<td>tron-li</td>
<td>to abuse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R rimarki</td>
<td>rimark-i</td>
<td>to remark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>re farien</td>
<td>farien-jen</td>
<td>to moveaway</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s sokri</td>
<td>sok-ri</td>
<td>to dismiss</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>so some</td>
<td>(stseh-ro)</td>
<td>(a very short word to help to give the sound of the first r)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seqtro</td>
<td>seq-tro</td>
<td>serpents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>seismo</td>
<td>se-ismo</td>
<td>seismology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sej</td>
<td>se-j</td>
<td>to know</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sciro</td>
<td>si-aro</td>
<td>squirrel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>konzienco</td>
<td>kon-zien-co</td>
<td>conscience</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maso</td>
<td>ma-so</td>
<td>ignorance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sf albo</td>
<td>af albo</td>
<td>sphere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>su svami</td>
<td>su svami</td>
<td>to swoon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sak sh dispro</td>
<td>sh dispro</td>
<td>scale (of fish)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sh demonstro</td>
<td>demonstro</td>
<td>to unload (a cart)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sh holmo</td>
<td>hol-mo</td>
<td>stock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sh malakhi</td>
<td>mal-akhi-jai</td>
<td>to lock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sh fili</td>
<td>fil-i</td>
<td>to smear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sh fapkri</td>
<td>fapkri</td>
<td>to spurt (intrans.)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sh frempo</td>
<td>fremp-o</td>
<td>stocking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sh fukli</td>
<td>fuk-ki</td>
<td>to wheeze</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sh postmano</td>
<td>post-man-ko</td>
<td>postage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T trajo</td>
<td>tra-jo</td>
<td>trail, postage</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
PRONUNCIATION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Esperanto</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>unu</td>
<td>o-noo</td>
<td>one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>du</td>
<td>o-noo</td>
<td>two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trijo</td>
<td>tr-eed-slo</td>
<td>three</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duoj</td>
<td>o-noo</td>
<td>three</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trij</td>
<td>tr-eed-slo</td>
<td>three</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pruo</td>
<td>p-roo</td>
<td>three</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monjo</td>
<td>m-on-o</td>
<td>three</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tuj</td>
<td>t-o-s</td>
<td>four</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>noktomezo</td>
<td>n-o-k-t-o-m-z-o</td>
<td>noon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uj</td>
<td>o-n-o</td>
<td>four</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dnovi</td>
<td>d-n-o-vi</td>
<td>four</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>zonu</td>
<td>z-on-o</td>
<td>four</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Esperanto vowels are very similar in sound to those in German and Spanish, and to the Italian do, re, mi, fa.
SYNTAX (Sintakso).

20. Syntax (sintakso) treats of the connection, dependence, and arrangement of words to form intelligible speech.

21. Speech (parolado) consists of propositions.

22. A Proposition (propozicio) is a collection of words by which we assert, or question, the act, state, or quality of some person or thing. A complete proposition consists of two chief parts, viz., the Subject and Predicate.

23. Subject (subjekto) is the name of the person or thing spoken of.

24. Predicate (predikato) is what is said about the subject.

25. The Subject of a proposition is always —
   (a) One or more nouns.
   (b) Some word used as a noun, e.g.,
      (1) a pronoun, mi = my;
      (2) an adjective, mia kara estas bona filino = my dear daughter;
      (3) an infinitive, mensogi estas honte = to lie (or lying) is shameful;
      (4) a phrase, Estas agrable por mi, ke vi aĉetis tiun domon = it is agreeable to me that you bought that house.

26. The subject is always in the nominative case. When the subject is a noun, it must, therefore, always end in -0, if the noun is singular, or in -OJ, if the noun is plural.

27. Subject omitted. — Sometimes the subject is omitted, as:
   Pluvas = It rains.
   Fulmis = It lightened.
   (See remarks on impersonal verbs, para. 164.)

28. The Object is the person or thing acted upon by the subject, hence the term objective (or accusative) case, as:
   Johano batas la knabo = John beats the boy.
   Knabon = the boy (is the object of the subject).

29. Subject omitted. — Sometimes the subject is omitted, as:
   Pluvas = It rains.
   Fulmis = It lightened.
   (See remarks on impersonal verbs, para. 164.)

30. The Object is the person or thing acted upon by the subject, hence the term objective (or accusative) case, as:
   Johano batas la knabo = John beats the boy.
28. The Direct Complement (rekta komplemento).—The noun or pronoun (not governed by a preposition), which is the direct complement of a transitive verb, must have the accusative form N. The direct complement of a verb can be determined by asking the question "What?" or "Whom?" with such verb, and the word giving the reply to the direct complement, as:—

29. The Direct Complement (rekta komplemento).—The noun or pronoun (not governed by a preposition), which is the direct complement of a transitive verb, must have the accusative form N in the singular, or JN in the plural. The direct complement of a verb can be determined by asking the question "whom?" or "what?" with such verb, and the word giving the reply to the direct complement, as:—

30. The Direct Complement of an active verb becomes the subject if the verb is put in the passive voice, as:

31. The Indirect Complement (nerekta komplemento) is formed with a preposition and a noun or pronoun in the nominative, but if direction towards something be implied, and the preposition of itself does not denote movement, the noun, or pronoun, will then be in the accusative case, as:—

32. The Circumstantial Complement.—A word or phrase is termed a circumstantial complement (eirkonstanca komplemento) when it marks the time, place, manner, cause, etc., of an action, as:

33. The Predicate (Predikato).—The predicate is what is said about the subject. A predicative verb is one which, of itself, shows in a definite manner some act, state, or quality, as:

34. A non-predicative verb is one which does not, of itself, show an act, state, or quality, as:
or a predicative noun, defining and describing the subject, as:—La urbo estas belega = The city is magnificent.
Kolombo estas birdo = A pigeon is a bird.
This is called a "Disjoined predicate" (disigita predikato).

34. The predicate can be further more precisely defined by a word or a noun governed by a preposition. This serves to show the object of the action or circumstances accompanying it, as:—
Arturo batis Ceorgon per sia pugno = Arthur struck George with his fist.

35. A noun can be more precisely defined by the addition of another noun or word used as a noun, as:—Eduardo, reĝo de Anglulo = Edward, King of England. This is called "Apposition" (apozicio).

36. To every noun can be added adjectives or participles, which can also be defined by other nouns, as:—Homo mortiginta sian patrinon estas granda krimulo = A man who has murdered his mother is a great criminal.
An adjective added, without any intervening word, to a noun is termed "qualifying," in order to distinguish it from a predicate adjective, which is understood between it and the noun, as:—Homo bona = A good man (qualifying). La homo estas bona = The man is good (predicate). (See remarks on adjectives, para. 105.)
DEFINITIONS (Definoj).

37. A word consists of one or more syllables or distinct sounds, and has a definite meaning.

38. A root is an incomplete word conveying only an idea. It may consist of one or more syllables, but requires one or more letters to form it into a word.

39. Words in Esperanto may be divided into four classes:—Primary, Simple, Compound, and Foreign.

(a). A Primary word is one which requires no additional letters to give it a distinct meaning (see list of Primary Words, Part V.).

(b). A Simple word is one formed by adding a grammatical termination to a single root, or to a primary word (which then becomes a root), with or without suffixes or prefixes.

EXAMPLES.—

Bon-a = Good.
Cirka ŭ-i = To surround.
Anta ŭ-ul-o = A predecessor.
Dis-sem-i = To scatter.
Mal-aun-ul-ejo = An infirmary.

(c). A Compound word is one formed by adding a grammatical termination to two or more roots, or to a primary word and a root, with or without suffixes or prefixes. Any of the combinations may be complete words, if euphony requires it.

EXAMPLES.—

Bon-intenc-a = Well-meaning.
Super-nalur-a = Supernatural.
Anta ŭ-vid-i = To foresee.
Cas-o-ŝtel-ist-o = A poacher.
Ĝas-gard-ist-o = A gamekeeper.
Vapor-ŝipo = A steamship.
Griz-har-a = Grey-haired.
Super-akv-eg-o = A deluge.

(d). A Foreign word is one common to most languages, being derived from the same root.

EXAMPLES.—

Teatr-o = Theatre.
Ta-tr-a = Theatrical.
Geologi-o = Geology.
Geologi-a = Geological.
FORMATION OF WORDS

40. To show the manner in which words are formed in Esperanto, it will perhaps be better first to do so in Dr. Zamenhof's own words, as given on page 248 of his "Fundamenta Krestomatio." He says:

"I arranged a complete dismemberment of ideas into independent words, so that the whole language, instead of being words in various grammatical forms, consists solely of unchangeable words. If you will take a work written in my language, you will find that each word is always in one constant form, namely in that form in which it is printed in the dictionary, and that the various grammatical forms, reciprocal relation between words, etc., etc., are expressed by the union of unchangeable words. But, because such a construction of language is quite strange to Europeans, I adapted this dismemberment of the language to the spirit of the European languages, so that anyone learning mine from a manual would not suppose that it differed in construction from his own. Take, for example, the word *fratino*, which in reality consists of three words, *frat*, *in*, *o*. *Frat* gives the idea of the offspring of one's parents, *in* the idea of the female sex, and *o* the idea of existence (person or thing); hence a noun. These three ideas combined, in Esperanto, make *fratino* a sister. The first and

It must be remembered that all roots or root-words in Esperanto are either words, or have only the sex naturally belonging to the root, until the feminine suffix—*m*—is added. For instance, *vir-* gives the idea of "man," *fem-* the idea of "woman," and we always speak of *viro* as *li*, because we are sure the noun refers to the male sex. But the root *infan-* gives only the idea of a "child" (neuter), so, unless we actually know the child is
FORMATION OF WORDS.  

last make 

frato = a brother. 1

The instruction book shows this in the following manner:—Brother = frat-,

but because every substantive in the nominative ends in o, therefore frato = brother.

For the formation of the feminine, the little word -in- is inserted, therefore fratino = sister.

In this way, the dismemberment of the language in no way embarrasses the learner; he does not even suspect that that which he calls a prefix, or suffix, or termination, is really an independent word, which always preserves its meaning, no matter whether it be used at the beginning, middle, or end of a word, or independently, and that every word, with equal right, can be used as a root word or grammatical particle.

With reference to the above, it will be observed that Dr. Zamenhof calls all combinations of letters, which convey an idea, a "word," as for instance 

frat, in, o, but it will be clearer to the student to classify these combinations of letters as we have in para. 37—39, and (with the exception of the primary words in the list, Part V.) to call no combination a "word" until it receives a grammatical termination.

male, we speak of infano = c/«W as ĝi-it, just as we do in English. When a suffix denoting a person, such as -estr-, -1st-, -ul-, is added to a root, the root in question, or may be presumed to be masculine, unless the feminine -in- be also added.

1 Not only combinations of letters, but each vowel (as already shown in the case of 0), conveys an idea, and is therefore, technically speaking, a word; for instance:

A "quality" and marks the Adjective.

E "modification," Adverb.

I,. "indefiniteness " Infinitive mood.

O "existence, " Noun.

I "order " Imperative mood.

In the table of Correlative Words, Dr. Zamenhof carries out the idea of indefiniteness in the 1 series, ia, ial, iam, etc.; all, however, be it noted, independent indivisible roots (see para. 147). In fact ia, ie, io, might be considered as adjective, adverb, and noun, regularly formed from the indefinite word (or grammatical termination as we call it) "i."
42. **Grammatical Terminations** (gramatikaj finiĝoj).—Every word in Esperanto, except the primary words, has a grammatical termination which shows:

(a) The part of speech.
(b) Whether the word is singular or plural.
(c) Whether in the nominative or accusative case.
(d) The mood, tense, and participles of a verb.

A list of the grammatical terminations will be found in para. 53.

43. **Suffixes**.—Suffixes are syllables placed between the root and grammatical termination, giving to the word the idea contained in the suffix as well as that in the root.

A list of suffixes will be found in para. 54.

44. **Prefixes**.—A prefix is a syllable placed before the root, giving to the root the idea contained in the prefix.

A list of prefixes will be found in para. 55.

45. From the foregoing definitions we see that words in Esperanto are either primary words, or words composed of:

(a) Roots and grammatical terminations.
(b) Roots, suffixes, and grammatical terminations.
(c) Prefixes, roots, and grammatical terminations.
(d) Prefixes, roots, suffixes, and grammatical terminations.

46. **Order of Suffixes**.—The grammatical terminations, A, E, I, O, U, AS, IS, OS, US, showing the part of speech and mood and tense of verbs, must end all words (except some of the primary words), the accusative N or plural J being added if required. Suffixes precede this termination in their natural order. For instance, if we want to say "a tiny female kitten," we commence with the root kat-, giving the idea only of "cat;" then add -id- (suffix
FORMATION OF WORDS. 46—48.

For "offspring of " catid- = litter; then -in- (female suffix) kat-id-in- = litter female; then -et- (diminutive suffix) kat-id-in-et- = litter female tiny. we may get the root and all the suffixes, and we might make the word an adjective by adding a, but we want a noun, so add 0. kat-id-in-et-o = a tiny female kitten. If we place -et- after cateto we commence by speaking of a "tiny cat." We can also build it thus: kat-ateto = the "female offspring of a tiny cat." If we reverse the three suffixes, we get kat-id-in-et-o = offspring of a tiny female cat. This exaggerated example of building up suffixes will show the importance of placing them in their natural order. The student cannot make a mistake if he commences with the root and forms a word of each suffix in succession; for instance, hund-o = dog, hund-id-o = puppy, hund-id-in-o = a female puppy, hund-id-in-et-o = a tiny female puppy.

47. Order of Prefixes. — In like manner prefixes must come in their natural order, as: san-o = health, mal-san-o = illness, re-mal-san-o = a return of illness, a relapse.

48. Order of roots in compound words. — The principal root is always placed last, and receives the grammatical termination, with or without a suffix. The root of a subordinate word is sufficient without any suffix.

EXAMPLES. — Ĝas-gard-ist-o = A gamekeeper, ĉasi-o = to hunt, Ĝas-gard-o = a thing hunted, game; but it is unnecessary to add the suffix -aj- to the subordinate word ĉas-gard-o. Ĝas-gard-istaj-o = a gamekeeper's dogs, ĉas-gard-o = a dog. Ĝas-gard-o = a gamekeeper's dogs (hund-o = a dog, hund-id-o = a puppy, hund-id-in-o = a female puppy). Ĝas-gard-id-in-et-o = a tiny female puppy. Ĝas-gard-id-in-et-o = a tiny female puppy.

49. Order of Prefixes. — In like manner prefixes must come in their natural order, as: san-o = health, mal-san-o = illness, re-mal-san-o = a return of illness, a relapse.

45. Order of roots in compound words. — The principal root is always placed last, and receives the grammatical termination, with or without a suffix. The root of a subordinate word is sufficient without any suffix.

EXAMPLES. — Ĝas-gard-ist-o = A gamekeeper, ĉasi-o = to hunt, Ĝas-gard-o = a thing hunted, game; but it is unnecessary to add the suffix -aj- to the subordinate word ĉas-gard-o. Ĝas-gard-istaj-o = a gamekeeper's dogs, ĉas-gard-o = a dog. Ĝas-gard-o = a gamekeeper's dogs (hund-o = a dog, hund-id-o = a puppy, hund-id-in-o = a female puppy). Ĝas-gard-id-in-et-o = a tiny female puppy. Ĝas-gard-id-in-et-o = a tiny female puppy.

50. Order of Prefixes. — In like manner prefixes must come in their natural order, as: san-o = health, mal-san-o = illness, re-mal-san-o = a return of illness, a relapse.

51. Order of roots in compound words. — The principal root is always placed last, and receives the grammatical termination, with or without a suffix. The root of a subordinate word is sufficient without any suffix.

EXAMPLES. — Ĝas-gard-ist-o = A gamekeeper, ĉasi-o = to hunt, Ĝas-gard-o = a thing hunted, game; but it is unnecessary to add the suffix -aj- to the subordinate word ĉas-gard-o. Ĝas-gard-istaj-o = a gamekeeper's dogs, ĉas-gard-o = a dog. Ĝas-gard-o = a gamekeeper's dogs (hund-o = a dog, hund-id-o = a puppy, hund-id-in-o = a female puppy). Ĝas-gard-id-in-et-o = a tiny female puppy. Ĝas-gard-id-in-et-o = a tiny female puppy.
49. When the root should be a noun, adjective, or adverb—When the joining of the root only makes the compound word difficult to pronounce, the root is generally made a noun by adding 0 for the sake of euphony, as—Lernorobo = manual, instruction book. But if the prefixed root alone would not give the required meaning, the noun, adjective, or adverb is prefixed, as—

Estis unu-taga laboro = it was one day's work.

But if the prefixed root alone would not give the required meaning, the noun, adjective, or adverb is prefixed, as—Estis unu-taga laboro = it was the first day's work.

In case of adverbs, the form of the accusative is also added, if direction is implied, as—

Li supren-iris la monton = he ascended the mountain (see 67 (b)).

N.B.—The hyphens are not necessary.

50. The idea conveyed by the root.—In forming a word, the first thing is to find out the exact primary idea contained in the root. Do not think, for instance, that because you happen to know that one of the meanings of cel-o is end, that cel-i will mean to finish or end. The primary idea of cel-o is aim, or purpose, therefore cel-i is to aim, or purpose. Do not, in the case of a word with one or more suffixes, think that because you know one of its meanings, you know also the idea conveyed in the root. For instance, kresk-a is a plant, but do not at once say that kresk-i is to plant; kresk-a is a plant, therefore kresk-i is a thing grown, a growth, a plant. So ov-a is something derived from ov-o = an egg, or a shell. Similarly from bono-o = good, we get bono-j-o = a tool (or means) for sewing, a needle.
The Primary words are 158 in number, and must be carefully learnt (see list, Part V.). They are not only complete words in themselves with a definite meaning, but they can be treated as root-words and receive prefixes, suffixes, and grammatical terminations. There is no rule against any of these words, ending in a vowel, from receiving, if logically allowable, the accusative $N$ or the plural $J$ (see para. 142).

EXAMPLES.—*Ja Behold,‘* ja-e As follows. *No (no, not, not to deny),* no-e A man from there (that place). *Gudek* (good, well, fine:—To succeed, for good, in a good manner). *Taj* (there, in there, in the house). *Ti* (this, these, in this or that place). *Taj* (that, those, in that or this place). *Taj* (those, those, in that or this place). *Taj* (those, these, in that or this place). *Taj* (those, those, in that or this place).

Among the Primary Words are found all the personal and demonstrative pronouns, all the cardinal numbers and prepositions, and also most of the common adverbs and conjunctions. It is important, therefore, that the student should thoroughly master their meaning.
§ 52. FOREIGN WORDS.

FOREIGN WORDS (Vortoj fremdaj).

Foreign words are those which in most languages are derived from the same source, and, being consequently much alike in formation, are easily understood by most nations, there being only a slight difference in spelling and that difference of termination which occurs in all languages. Dr. Zamenhof wisely lays down they should undergo no change, beyond conforming to Esperanto orthography and its grammatical terminations. It is, of course, necessary that these words should be spelt, and consequently pronounced, alike by all Esperantists, so, to show their change from English spelling, the following examples are given, not only of words which may be called "foreign," but of others that are a near approach to English in formation. This will not only help the student to form foreign words for himself, but may give him a knowledge of the construction of other words in common use. It must be borne in mind that these changes of letters by no means invariably take place; they are only general.

§ 52 (a) Initial and Medial Letters.

C (hard) = K generally, as — Declaration = deklaracio, economy = ekonomio, decameter = dekmetro, hectogram = hektogramo, in a few cases of terminations, e.g., — decimeter = dekmetro, probably from the French charpentier).
FOREIGN WORDS

C (soft) generally undergoes no change, so remains C with its sound of TS, as:—(Aer = CiferO, cigar = Cigaro, gallicism = galicismo, glycerine = glicerino, grimace = grimaco, spice = spICO. Some few words change to Z, as:—
Price = prezo.

Ch (soft) = (?), as:—Chamber = ĉa.mbrO, charming = iarma, chaste = casta, chief = ĉefo. Exception:—China = Hinujo.

Ch (hard) = H generally, as:—Chameleon = ĥameleono, chaos = ha0S0, chemistry = hemiO, cholera = holero, oligarchy = oligarĥio, hypochondria = ĥiQYŬr0, chorister = ĉoristo. It will be seen that these words are mostly derived from the Greek.

C (soft or hard) = G generally, as:—Geology = geologio, elegant = eleganta, a general (officer) = ĝeneralo. The exceptions in which C is used are mostly words following the French pronunciation, as:—Danger = ĉanĝero, garden = ĝardeno, general (adjective) = ĝenerala, germ = ĝermo, giraffe = ĝirafo, etc.

Ph = F, as:—Elephantiasis = lefantiazo, sphere = Sfero, etc.

Qu = K V, as:—Equivalent = ek veldenato, eloquent = elokvento, inquisition = inkvizicio, quantity = kvanto, quadratic = kvadrata.

S = »S, but in a few instances it becomes S (probably following German pronunciation) or C, as:—Smile = slieno, smear = s利器, spare = sパー, spin = sピニ, etc. Parsimony = parcimonio.

S (sounded like Z) = Z generally, as:—Desert = dezerto, rose = rozo, present = prezentl, preside = prezidi, etc.

Sh = Ŝ generally, as:—Shark = ŜarkO, ship = Ŝipo, shoe = Ŝuo7

Th = T, as:—Theatre = theatro, mythology = mitologio.

X = K, or KL, which can generally be determined by the English sound of X, as:—example = ekzemplo, exception = ekzepcio, understand = uunderstado, etc. Occasionally J is used for X, as:—simple = simplu, compound = kompundo, etc. What is lacking is the English prefix, which in most cases means "out of," and thus, therefore,Esperanto logically uses the proposition EL, meaning "out of," as the prefix.
52. **Terminal Letters.**

Terminal Letters.—If the last syllable ends in the sound of a consonant, it is generally right to add 0 to the last consonant of the English word, to form a noun, as—

- **Diadem** = diademo, 
  **diagon/d** = diagonalo, 
  **granite** = granito, 
  **dialogue** = dialogo, 
  **debate** = debato.

There are, of course, exceptions. Beginners should always consult the Esperanto Dictionary if they have any doubt as to internationality or spelling. Note the following terminations, which have a peculiarity of their own:—

- **-ER.**
  
  Generally, for a noun, as:—
  **December** = Decembro, 
  **diameter** = diametro.

Words like "centre," "theatre," etc., sometimes spelt "center," "theater," follow the rule, as:—
  **Centro, teatro.**

- **-IC.** and **-ICAL.**
  
  These terminations are English suffixes for adjectives. Esperanto, however, discards them and gives its own adjective suffixes:—
  **Galvanic** = galvana, 
  **hypnotic** = hipnota, 
  **theatrical** = teatra, 
  **identical** = identa, 
  **theoretic** = teoria, 
  **geographical** = geografia.

(See remarks on **-OGY** and **-ISM**.)

- **-ICS.**
  
  The English termination -ICS has a plural form, but in Esperanto -K0 is generally represented by -KOJ, as:—
  **Mathematics = matematiko,** etc.

- **-INE.**
  
  The 1 in this termination is occasionally turned into E, as:—
  **Gelatine = gelateno.**

  It more commonly is retained as:—
  **Glycerine = glicerino.**

- **-ISH.**
  
  = DUBE (doubtful) prefixed to colours to form the adjective, as:—
  **Dubenigra = blackish,**
  **dubeblanka = whitish,**
  **dubeverda = greenish.**

- **-ISM.**
  
  0 is simply added to the great majority of the numerous English nouns ending in -ISM, to form the Esperanto word, but, as these follow nearly from part of the root of the word, these which may be desired to be cut down have their root, e.g. hypnosis, galvanism, etc. These words nearly always end in -ISMO or -ISMO, which, if below central, become -ISO in Esperanto. For instance:—
  **Galvanismo, galvanico, galvanita, galvanize = hipnotiigi (root, hipoti).** A few words are formed...
FOREIGN WORDS.

*CRITIC*. n 52.

otherwise, as:—

Criticism = kritiko,
criticize = kritiki
(root, kritik-,)

fanatika, from which “fanaticism” is regularly formed by the suffix -EC-, viz.,
fanatikeco.

Similarly, sceptical, scepticism = skeptika,
scepticism = skeptikeco.

But fanaticismo and skepticismo are also sometimes used.

-1ST. When an English word ends in -1ST, which has the same meaning as the Esperanto suffix -1ST-, be careful not to think that adding a will always form the noun. Find out first what the root is. For instance, profession = profesio (root, profesi-), therefore professional is not required here, so

profesiisto.

Drugs = drogo (root, drOgT-), therefore the double i is not required here, so

drugist = drogisto.

-MENT. When this is the English termination of a noun which is not ending in -MENT, it becomes a,
as:—

Embarrass = embarasi,
embarrassment = embaraso,
rebate = rabati,
rebatemant = rabato.

But when -MENT is part of the English root it is retained, as:—

element = elemento,
experiment = ŭksperimento,
fundament = fun-damento.

-0GY. Words derived from the Greek change Y into 10,
as:—

Geology = geologio,
theology = teologio.

The adjectives of these words end in -IC and -ICAL, and, as their Esperanto root ends in -I, A must be added to this to form the adjectives geologia, teologia.

-ON. Words derived from the Greek change -ON into a,
as:—

Automaton = automata,
phenomenon = fenomeno.

When the word might be mistaken without the full letters, the vowel is added, as:—

diapason = diapazono.

-SIS. Generally, as:—

Apotheosis = apoteozo,
hypothesis = hipotezo,
oasis —  oazo,
synthesis = sintezo.

-TH. = T, as:—

Hyacinth = ŕiacintO.

-TION. = (7/0, as:—

Declaration = deklaracio,
exposition = ekspozicio,
arbitration = arbitraciO,
generation = generacio,
situation = situacio.

-UUM. = 0 generally, as:—

Epithalamium = epitalamio,
gymnasium = gimnazio,
geranium = geranio.

-Y. = IO generally in words derived from Latin or Greek, as:—

Philosophy = filozofio,
parsimony = parcimonio,
sympathy = simpatio,
industry = industriO.
53. GRAMMATICAL TERMINATIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Example</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adjective</td>
<td>Patr.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverb</td>
<td>Patre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Infinitive Mood</td>
<td>Fari</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noun</td>
<td>Patro</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Imperative Mood</td>
<td>Faru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>Patroj</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accusative Case</td>
<td>Patron</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Tense</td>
<td>Ml faras</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Tense</td>
<td>Li faris</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Tense</td>
<td>Ni faros</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conditional Mood</td>
<td>Vi farus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Participle Active</td>
<td>Faranta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Participle Active</td>
<td>Farinta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Participle Active</td>
<td>Faronta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present Participle Passive</td>
<td>Farata</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past Participle Passive</td>
<td>Far'ta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future Participle Passive</td>
<td>Farota</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

N.B. — There are three forms of participles, the adjectival, substantival, and adverbial. The one given above is the adjectival. In the adverbial form the final A is changed into E. For example, Fari, faranta, farante tion, = by doing that, = doing that.

For the substantival form add to the adjective the final O. For example, FarantO = the doer (the person doing). These three forms are applicable to all the three participles in both the active and passive voices (see paras. 208-210).

---

*(Some formulas and terms are stylized for clarity and do not reflect the exact original text)*
LIST OF SUFFIXES (Sufiksoj).

54. The following lists of suffixes (31) and prefixes (7 in number) should be carefully studied, since innumerable words of the finest shade of meaning can be formed by their aid, in fact they are the groundwork of the language. In cases where a suffix can be used as a root, the word it helps to form is given. The hyphens are only used to show the root, suffix, and grammatical termination of the examples. The student should form other words himself, and study the works of the best authors. (For remarks on suffixes and prefixes see paras. 270—290).

-Ĉ

Denotes badness of quality or condition.

dom-o, a house, domo-o, a tumble-down house.

dom-Ĉ-o, a sorry nag.

-AD-

Denotes the continuation of an action (para. 270):
paf-o, a shot, or discharge, paf-ad-o, a firing, fusilade.

ir-i, to go, ir-ad-i, to continue going.

-Ĵ

Denotes some real or concrete thing made from, or having the quality of, the root (a Ĵ-o, a thing), (para. 271):
mola, soft, mol-Ĉ-o, a soft thing, or substance.

frukt-o, fruit, fruktĈ-o, jam.

-AH-

Denotes a member, inhabitant, or partisan (an-o, a member (of a club, etc.) (para. 272):

vila Ĝ-o, a village, vilanĈ-o, a villager.


-AR-

Denotes a collection of the idea implied in the root (ar-o, a collection, flock), (para. 273):

arb-o, a tree, arborĈ-o, a wood.

hom-o, a man, homarĈ-o, an avenger.
H 54. LIST OF SUFFIXES.

-Ĉ. These letters, substituted for one or more of the letters of a masculine name, make it an affectionate diminutive (para. 274):
  -Petr-o, Peter, Peĉ-o, Pete.

-NJ-. For feminine names insert nj instead of ŭ (para. 274):
  -Mari-o, Mary, Manj-o, Polly.
  -Helen-o, Helen, Helenej-o, Nelly, Nell.

-EBL- Denotes possibility, similar to the English terminations -able, -ible (ebl-a, possible, ebl-e, perhaps), (para. 275):
  -leg-i, to read, leg-ebl-a, legible.
  -tra-vid-i, to see through, tra-vid-ebl-a, transparent.

-EC- Denotes an abstract quality of the idea conveyed in the root, like the English terminations -ness, -tude, -ity (ec-o, a distinctive mark, or quality), (para. 271):
  -bon-a, good, bon-ec-o, goodness.
  -kuraĝ-o, courage, kurag-ec-o, fortitude.

-EDZ- Denotes a married person (edz-o, a husband), (para. 276):
  -doktor-o, a doctor, doktor-edz-in-o, a doctor's wife.
  -lav-ist-in-o, a washerwoman, lav-ist-in-edz-o, a washerwoman's husband.

-ED- Denotes augmentation, intensity of degree (eg-a, intense, eg-ec-o, intensity), (para. 277):
  -grand-a, great, grand-eg-a, enormous.
  -pord-o, a door, pord-eg-o, a portal, outer-door.

28
LIST OF SUFFIXES

-ER- Denotes one of many objects of the same kind, a small fragment (er-o, an item), (para. 273):
  - mon-o, money, mon-er-o, a coin.
  - sabl-o, sand, sabl-er-o, a grain of sand.

-ESTR- Denotes a chief, leader, ruler, or head of (estr-o, a chief), (para. 272):
  - imperi-o, an empire, imperi-estr-o, an emperor.
  - iip-o, a ship, iip-estr-o, a captain of a ship.

-ET- Denotes diminution of degree (et-a, little, small), (para. 277):
  - mont-o, a mountain, mont-et-o, a hill.
  - rid-i, to laugh, rid-et-i, to smile.

-ID- Denotes the young of, offspring, descendant (id-o, offspring), (para. 279):
  - safu-o, a sheep, safu-id-o, a lamb.
  - Izrael-o, Israel, Izrael-id-o, an Israelite.

-IC- Denotes the causing, making, or rendering anything to be in the state implied by the root (ig-i, to get, to cause, to make), (para. 280):
  - mort-S, to die, mort-ig-i, to kill.
  - pur-a, clean, pur-ig-i, to clean, purify.
list of suffixes.

-1I- Denotes the action of becoming, turning to, and has sometimes a reflexive force (i.e., to be made), (para. 380):
  -tag-ia, red, tag-al- to become red, to black.
  -riga, rig- to become, or grow rich, or be rich.

-1L- Denotes the tool or instrument or means by which something is done (i.e., a tool, means).
  (para. 281):
  -franca, a knife, -franka, a knife.
  -pres-ia, to print, pres-il- a printing press.

-1N- Denotes the feminine gender (i.e., a female).
  (para. 282):
  -frat-o, a brother, frat-in-o, a sister.
  -leon-o, a lion, leon-in-o, a lioness.

-1D- Denotes worthiness, deserving of something, worthy of (i.e., worth, merit).
  (para. 275):
  -lai-i, to praise, -lai-ind-a, praiseworthy.
  -estim-o, esteem, estim-ind-a, estimable, worthy of esteem.

-1NG- Denotes a thing used for holding only one object (i.e., a socket, or sheath).
  (para. 278):
  -plom-o, a pen, plom-ing-o, a penholder.
  -kandel-o, a candle, kandel-ing-o, a candlestick.

-1ST- Denotes a person occupied with the idea contained in the root (para. 272):
  -drog-o, a drug, drog-ist-o, a druggist.


-1BL- Denotes a numeral multiple (para. 284):
  -du, two, -dul-a, double.
  -tri, three, -trul-a, triple.
LIST OF SUFFIXES. H 54.

-<OH>- Denotes a numeral fraction (para. 284):
  kvar, four, kvar-on-o, a fourth
  kwin, five, kwin-on-o, a fifth

-<OP>- Denotes a numeral collective (op-a, collective),
  du, two, du-op-e, by twos.
  dek, ten, dek-op-e, by tens, ten together.

-UJ- Denotes that which contains, produces, encloses,
  or bears, but capable of containing, etc., a quantity
  or more than one article (uj-o, a receptacle),
  (para. 278):
  ink-o, ink, ink-uj-o, an inkpot.
  plum-o, a pen, plum-uj-o, a pencase (not a pen-
  holder).
  turk-o, a Turk, turk-uj-o, Turkey.

-UL- Denotes a person or being characterised by the
  idea implied in the root (para. 272):
  riĉ-a, rich, riĉ-ul-o, a rich man.
  avar-a, avaricious, avar-ul-o, a miser.

-<UM>- Has no defined meaning. Its different mean-
  ings are easily suggested by the context and
  the signification of the root to which it is joined.
  It is rarely used (para. 285):
  kol-o, a neck, kol-um-o, a collar.
  man-o, a hand, man-um-o, a cuff.

MOSTO. This word is not exactly a suffix, although it
  is usually included amongst them. It is in general
  a general title of respect or politeness (para. 283):
  reĝ-o, a king. Reĝo, Reĝe, Reĝinto, your Majesty.
  Via Reĝo, your Highness, your Eminence, your
  Mosto, your Honours.
55. LIST OF PREFIXES (Prefiksoj).

BO- Denotes any relationship resulting from marriage (para. 289):
- patro, a father, bo-patro, a father-in-law.
- filino, a daughter, bo-filino, a daughter-in-law.

DIS- Denotes division, dissemination, separation, etc., as it does in English (para. 287):
- jeti, to throw, dis-jeti, to throw about, to scatter.
- ŝiri, to tear, dis-ŝiri, to tear in pieces.

EK- Denotes the beginning of an action, or its short duration (para. 288):
- kanti, to sing, ek-kanti, to begin to sing.
- brili, to shine, ek-brili, to flash.

EKS- Denotes late, formerly, like the English ex-
- kolonelo, colonel, eks-kolonelo, ex-colonel.
- edziĝo, a wedding, eks-edziĝo, a divorce.

CE- Denotes persons of both sexes taken together (para. 286):
- patro, a father, ce-patroj, parents, or father and mother.

MAL- Denotes the direct opposite of any idea (para. 299):
- forte, strong, mal-forte, weak.

RE- Denotes, as in English, repetition, again, back (para. 290):
- ri, in, re-ri, in ri again.
- diri, in ri, re-diri, to repeat.
ELISION (Elizio).

56. *Elision* is not common in Esperanto, except in poetry, where it is used, when required, for the purpose of rhythm. Some prose writers use it, but it is better to avoid its use.

57. The letter A in the article la may be elided when the article is preceded by a preposition ending in a vowel, for then the L of the article can be sounded with the preposition and the full pronunciation given to the first letter of the following word, e.g., de la loko = since the creation of the world.

(a) In poetry the letter A of the article, when not preceded by a preposition, may be elided before a word commencing with a vowel, and the final 0 of a substantive may also be elided, but in the latter case the tonic accent (para. 17) remains on the same syllable on which it would fall if no elision had taken place.

The dropped letter is in all cases noted by an apostrophe.

*See the full usage of & because (for & because)FullPath usage & because (for & because)FullPath usage & because (for & because)FullPath usage & because (for & because)*

*Note that the article can be sounded with the preposition and the full pronunciation given to the first letter of the following word.*

Thinking of these to be.

If appears, & whether & is passive
the same be objeto...
§ 58.

INTERROGATION (Demandado).

58. Questions are asked in two ways, viz.,—either by the interrogative adverb ĉu = whether, or by one of the interrogative words ki — what kind, kio = what, kiam = when, kia = why, kio = when, kiel = how, kies = whose, kio = what, kion = how much, or many, ki — where, which.

(1.) Ĉu is used when none of the other words is in a sentence used in an interrogative sense. It is in fact the general word for interrogations.

Example.—Ĉu vi komprenas? = Do you understand?

(2.) Ĉu is used when none of the other words is in a sentence used in an interrogative sense. It is in fact the general word for interrogations.

Example.—Ĉu vi havas mian libron? = Have you my book?

(3.) Cu li estas foririnta, antaŭ ĉu vi alvenos? = Will he have gone away before you arrive?

(4.) Cu li estas foririnta, antaŭ ĉu vi alvenos? = Will he have gone away before you arrive?

When the verb following ĉu is in the imperative mood, it shows the omission of some other verb expressing "wish, desire, etc." (see paras. 200, 237 (to)).

Example.—Ĉu mi estus foririnta, antaŭ ĉu vi alvenos? = Would you have done that if I had been there?

The verb is sometimes omitted when a question is preceded by an assertion.

Example.—Ili diris al vi la veron, ĉu li ne? = They told you the truth, didn't they?
INTERROGATION. p. 58.

(i). The following examples show the use of the interrogatives kia, kial, kiam, etc.

**EXAMPLES.**—Kion ti skribis al mi? = What did you write me?
Kial vi ne satisdonis? = Why did you not satisfy?
Kiam li alvenos? = When will he come?
Kion mi povis skribi al li? = What could I write to him?
Kien li iras? = Whither are you going?
Kio estas en la ĝardeno? = Who is in the garden?
Kiujn librojn vi aĉetis? = Which books did you buy?
Kion vi komilas al mi fari? = What do you advise me to do?
Kion li komilas al mi? = What does he advise me to do?

(ii). Of the above, those ending in a consonant are invariable. Those ending in a vowel can take the accusative N, but kia and kiu are the only words which take the plural J (para. 142).

**EXAMPLES.**—Kion vi iras? = Whither are you going?
Kiajn librojn vi aĉetis? = Which books did you buy?
Kiujn librojn vi aĉetis? = Which books did you buy?
Kium mi ne povus skribi al tiu? = Whom could I not write to?
Kiom da ĉevaloj estas tie? = How many horses are there? (at that place).
Kiom da ĉevaloj estas tie? = How many horses are there? (at that place).
Kiom kostas tio? = How much does that cost?
Kiam li alvenos? = When will he come?
Kiujn librojn vi aĉetis? = Which books did you buy?
Kiujn librojn vi aĉetis? = Which books did you buy?

(iii). From kion the adjective kiom — how much is formed, and this also may be used as an interrogative.

**EXAMPLES.**—Je kiom horo vi venos? = At what o'clock (hour) will you come?
Kion vi komilas al mi fari? = What do you advise me to do?
Kiujn librojn vi aĉetis? = Which books did you buy?

(See correlative words, paras. 147—157. For further examples see paras. 64, 170. For place of interrogative see para. 91).
NEGATION (Neado).

Double negatives are not used in Esperanto, for, if employed, they would, as in English, have an affirmative meaning.

(a) Ne means not, in the word in general use to imply negation. It is placed after the noun or pronoun and precedes the verb.

Example: —Mi ne havas Ubron = I have not a book.

(b) The nine correlative words, nenio, nenie, nenel, neniel, nenies, nenio, neniom, neniu, also imply negation.

Example: —Li has no kind of experience. 

(c) Nek = nor and nek... nek = neither... nor have also a negative meaning.

Example: —Neither I nor he was there. 

36
NEGATION.

59—62.

Compound words with ne, sen, mal, have also a negative signification, and such words are often employed with a negative to express an affirmative assertion.

EXAMPLES.—La okazo ne estis neatendita = The event was not unexpected.
Lia riĉeco ne estis senlima = His fortune was not unlimited.
Li ne estis malhonesta = He was not dishonest.

60. Double Negative.—Occasionally a double negative is used to give strong force to a negation. Dr. Zamenhof, in his translation of Hamlet, Act I., Scene 5, renders "Lay your hands again upon my sword: swear by my sword, never to speak of this that you have heard." by Metu viajn manojn denoue sur ia glavon, kaj ripetu, ke vi neniam al neniu diros pri la apero de la nokto, lit. = Lay your hands again upon the sword, and repeat, that you never, to no one, will speak of the appearance of the night.

Some Esperantists do not consider this a double negative, but it undoubtedly is, according to the literal English translation; in either case it expresses admirably the strong negative force of the oath.

61. Of course, when two negatives refer to different verbs, expressed or unexpressed, this is not a double negative.

EXAMPLES.—Mi ne volis, ne al vi skribi — I did not wish, not to write to you. A ne nur ne enemulo, sed kunhatalanto li estis = He was not only not an enemy, but he was a comrade in arms (fellow combatant).

62. A double negative may be used in such an expression as "could not help," etc.

EXAMPLES.—Li ne povis ne kisi la malgrandulon = He could not help kissing the little one. Lit.:—He could not not kiss the little one.
II 63—64. AFFIRMATION.

QUESTIONS AND REPLIES

Demandoj kaj Respondoj).

63. Jes—yes is the word used to answer a question affirmatively.

EXAMPLES.—Cu vi vidis mian patron? Jes,= Did you see my father? Yes, Jes, with the conjunction ke, is also used for "it is so," as, we can certify, in part 3 means yes that it is so.

64. To give force to affirmative or negative replies one can add to ne or pa any suitable adverb, en certo—certainly, kompreneble—of course, etc., etc., or repeat the verb of the interrogation without its complement, in the same way as in English we often repeat the auxiliary of the verb.

EXAMPLES.—En certo estas la verco? = Is the bird the verco? Certainly it is the verco. Mi ne povis, = I could not, ne, I cannot, I have no. Do you want coffee? = Do you want coffee? Jes, mi deziras, Yes, I do, and pa, ne, I do not.

On vi deziras kafon? = Do you want coffee? Jes, mi deziras, Yes, I do, or, ne, mi ne deziras, No, I do not; I have (some) already.

64. (a). When the verb is omitted in the reply, the case which it governs must be used.

EXAMPLES.—Kiom kostis la ĉapelo? = What did the hat cost? Nine shillings (or, it cost nine shillings). Kien vi iras? = Where (whither) are you going? Into the garden (or, I am going into the garden). Kio pesas la kesto? = What does the chest weigh? Nineteen pounds; but, Kiom estas la pezo de la kesto? = What is the weight of the chest? Nineteen pounds.
THE ACCUSATIVE. U 65—66.

THE ACCUSATIVE (La Akuzativo).

65. Accusative when used.—The accusative is used in Esperanto:—

(1). To show the direct object of a verb.

(2). To show motion towards something (Rule 13, para. 94).

(3). To show a preposition has been omitted (Rules 8 and 14, para. 84).

The following are examples of these three uses:—

66. (1). To show the direct object of a verb.

(a). After transitive verbs the accusative is used to show the direct object.

EXAMPLES.—

Johano vidas la knabon = John sees the boy.

Georgo aĉetis bonan eevalon = George bought a good horse.

Now in either of these sentences the order of the words can be changed without altering the meaning, for La knabon vidas Johano would still mean "John sees the boy." The order of words is not important, so long as we use in our sentence the subject, the accusative object, and again, being in the accusative, to clarify the sense. But if we invert the words in English, the sense would be entirely changed (see order of words, paras. 73—93).

(b). After participles. —The accusative is also used after active participles (adjectival or adverbial) to denote the object.

EXAMPLES.—

Johano estis rigardanta la knabon, kiam mi lin vidis = John was looking at the boy, when I saw him.

Johano, vidante la knabon, donas al li pomon = John, seeing the boy, gives him an apple.

Georgo estis aĉetinta ĉeuton = George had bought a horse.

Georgo, aĉetinta ĉeuton, donas al sia frato = George, having bought a horse, gives it to his brother (para. 212 d).

24
(c). When a verb is omitted.—The accusative is also used in exclamations and in expressions in which some verb expressing " with " or " desire " is understood (see para. 64 (ii)).

EXAMPLES.—

Pesto al la tranĉilo! Mi tranĉis al mi la fingron/ = Plague on the knife! I have cut my finger!

Bonan tagon, Sinjoro = Good day, sir.

Sainton al w, sinjorino = (lit.) Salutation to you, madam. In reply to a question the accusative is used, but only if the verb in the question, which is omitted, governs the accusative, as—

Kiom kostas tiu krajono? (Gi kostas) du pencojn = Rov much does this pencil cost? (It costs) twopence.

Kiom estas la kosto detiolĉi krajono? (Estas) dupencoj = What is the price of this pencil? (It is) twopence.

67. (2). To show motion towards something.

(a). Accusative of direction.—To show direction towards which movement (physical or moral) is made the accusative is used, and this is generally called "the accusative of direction." It will be observed, however, that we can also use a preposition to show the motion, and, if such preposition in itself shows movement, its complement must be in the nominative, since all prepositions govern that case; but if the preposition does not in itself denote movement, then its complement must be in the accusative.

EXAMPLES.—Mi iras Rome (aŭ, al Rome) = I am going to Rome.

Li kuris en la ĝardenon = He ran into the garden. The preposition en does not show movement, therefore ĝardenon is in the accusative, but

Li kuris en la ĝardeno = He ran in the garden. This means he was already in the garden, and was running in it.

Sur la danan tronon vii havas rajtojn = On the Danish throne I have rights.

Tio ĉi povas tre influi sur la sukceson de nia afero = This can influence much the success of our affair.

(b). Adverbs also take the accusative of direction.

EXAMPLES.—Kien vi iras? Mi iras nenien hodiaŭ = Where (whither) are you going? I am going nowhere today.

Ĝi falis teren (or, sur la teron) = It fell to the ground (or, on to the ground; lit., earthwards).

Li iris hejmen, sed mi restis ĉi tie = He went home, but I remained at home.

40
68. To show that a preposition has been omitted.

As stated in Rule 6, para. 94, every preposition in Esperanto governs the nominative case. By Rule 14 we are told that every preposition has a defined and constant meaning, but that if we must use some preposition and the direct sense does not show what special preposition is to take, we can then either use the indefinite preposition je, or the accusative without a preposition. The following are examples under this head in which the accusative may be used:

(a). After doubtful verbs.—From the foregoing remarks it follows that if we do not know whether a verb governs the accusative or not, we can always use the accusative, if no ambiguity is occasioned thereby; otherwise some preposition should be employed instead.

For instance, we can say:—

Obeu vian patron, or, 
Obeujevia patro,
Obeu al via patro = Obey your father.
Si helpis al sia frato,
Si helpis sajn fraton = 
He helped his brother.
Li pardonis al sia filo, or, 
Li pardonis al sia filon =
He forgave his son.

But in phrases where doubt as to meaning may arise we must always use a preposition, as:—

Li pardonis al sia filon lian kulpon =
He forgave his son his fault.
Li seii ĝis la nova ĝi en la dua de marto,
Li scii ĝis pri la novaj en la duan de marto = He learnt the news on the 2nd of March.

(b). Duration or any point of time.

Examples.—

Hi restis tie kvar semajnojn (or, dum kvar semajnoj) = I remained there (during) four weeks.
La proksiman lundon (or, en la proksima lundo)
mi veturos Londonon (or, al Londono) =
Next Monday I shall go to London.
Printempon (or, en printempo)
floroj aperas =
Spring flowers appear.
Li venos diman ĉion (or, en diman ĉion) =
He will come on a Sunday. If we wish to say "He will come on Sunday," we must translate the word "next," and say,
Li venos la proksiman dman ĉion.
Similarly the accusative may be used for dates, as:—
Washington (pronounced 41 Ĉ)

"After doubtful words."—From the foregoing remarks it follows that if we do not know whether a verb governs the accusative or not, we can always use the accusative, if no ambiguity is occasioned thereby; otherwise some preposition should be employed instead.

For instance, we can say:—

Obeu vian patron, or, 
Obeujevia patro,
Obeu al via patro = Obey your father.
Si helpis al sia frato,
Si helpis sajn fraton = 
He helped his brother.
Li pardonis al sia filo, or, 
Li pardonis al sia filon =
He forgave his son.

But in phrases where doubt as to meaning may arise we must always use a preposition, as:—

Li pardonis al sia filon lian kulpon =
He forgave his son his fault.
Li seii ĝis la nova ĝi en la dua de marto,
Li scii ĝis pri la novaj en la duan de marto = He learnt the news on the 2nd of March.

(c). Duration or any point of time.

Examples.—

Hi restis tie kvar semajnojn (or, dum kvar semajnoj) = I remained there (during) four weeks.
La proksiman lundon (or, en la proksima lundo)
mi veturos Londonon (or, al Londono) =
Next Monday I shall go to London.
Printempon (or, en printempo) floroj aperas =
Spring flowers appear.
Li venos diman ĉion (or, en diman ĉion) =
He will come on a Sunday. If we wish to say "He will come on Sunday," we must translate the word "next," and say,
Li venos la proksiman dman ĉion.
Similarly the accusative may be used for dates, as:—

Washington (pronounced 41 Ĉ)
Washington was born on the 22nd of February, 1809.

La 23* de marlo = The 23rd of March, 1909.

EXAMPLES.—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sentence</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>La libroj lcostis dele silingojn (or, po del silingoj) por dekduo</td>
<td>The books cost ten shillings (or, at the rate of ten shillings) a dozen.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>La ĉ ambro estas alta del futojn (or, je dekduo futoj)</td>
<td>The room is twelve feet high.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>La kesto pezas tride funtojn (or, je tridek funtoj)</td>
<td>The chest weighs thirty pounds.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

69. General Remarks on the Accusative.

From the foregoing examples we see the important part the accusative plays in the construction of Esperanto, the clearness it gives to the meaning of a sentence, and the advantage it affords in permitting words to be placed in almost any order. The following examples will further illustrate this.

(a). Qualifying and Predicative Adjectives.—An adjective is termed "qualifying" when its noun or pronoun actually possesses the quality which the adjective denotes; and the adjective then agrees with the noun or pronoun both in case and number. But a predicative adjective, although it agrees in number, is always in the nominative (see para. 108).

EXAMPLES.—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sentence</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mi trovis la belajn rozojn (aŭ, rozojn belajn)</td>
<td>I found the beautiful roses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mi trovis la rozojn belaj=l</td>
<td>found the roses beautiful. In the first example the assertion is that beautiful roses were found; but in the second you assert only that you found, or discovered, that they were beautiful; in someone else's opinion, they might be the contrary.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b). Qualifying adverbs are invariable.

EXAMPLES.—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sentence</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Li skribis al mi tute malveran raporton pri la a/nero</td>
<td>He wrote me an entirely false statement of the matter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mtpensis, ke ŝi estas treege bela = I thought (that) she is extremely beautiful.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(c). Nouns and pronouns in apposition have also like cases and numbers.
EXAMPLE.—Vi serĉas la princon, Hamleton; la princon, Hamlet.

N.B.—Note the difference of case of two nouns in the following sentences:

Kuracisto havis du infanojn, Jilon kaj filinon; li nomis sian Jilon, Johano, kaj sian filinon, Mario.

Kiam li parolis pri ili kun mi, li ĉiam nomis sian filon Johanon, kun voĉo de amo, sed sian Jilinon Marion, antipatie =

A doctor had two children, a son and a daughter; he named his son, John, and his daughter, Mary. When he spoke to me about them, he always named his son, John, in a voice of affection, but his daughter, Mary, with antipathy.

N.B.—In this example, when the nouns (Johano and Mario) are in the nominative, they express what is predicated or said about the objects (Jilon and filinon). But when they agree in case with the objects (Jilon and filinon), they show they are nouns in apposition (see paras. 108, 109).

(iii) Proper names can be shown to be in the accusative by adding an apostrophe and N, if considered necessary, but N must be pronounced unless it is preceded by a vowel. Some writers add only when the name ends with a consonant, or simply N if it ends in a vowel; if it ends in any other vowel, they either simply add N, or coin a new name, or substitute an apostrophe for the vowel, and add ON. We think the best plan is to write the name in full, and then add the apostrophe and N.

Smith, Smith’n.
Robinson, Robinson’n.
Reeve, Reeve’n.
Stella, Stella’n.
Sara, Sara’n.
Memphis, Memphis’n.
Sargon, Sargon’n.

Of course proper names which have been converted by use into Esperanto are treated like other nouns in O, as, Londono, Londonon, Berlino, Berlinon, symbols (see para. 108, 109).
CAPITAL LETTERS (Grandaj Literoj).

10. Capital Letters (Grandaj Literoj) may be used as they are in English, but as their use varies in different languages, it is as well to follow the majority of Esperanto writers. We, therefore, advise the student to—

Use capital letters, as in English, except—

(a) For words derived from the names of places, as—La angla nacio = The English nation. Li estis franco kaj lo ĝis en Francujo = He is a Frenchman and lives in France.

(b) For the names of the days of the week and the names of the months, as—Mi alvenos lundon = I shall arrive on Monday. Li estis naskita la dua de februaro = He was (had been) born on the 2nd of February.

(c) For the pronoun "I = mi. Some authors write Ĉiujero = Mr. with a small letter, but it is more complimentary to use a capital. Do, extended use capital letters for the names of months, but most authors follow the nature of their own language, hence an often used letter is used.

1 Note that "lundo" means "on a, some Monday." If we wish to say "on Monday," meaning "next Monday," the translation would be: Mi alvenos la proksiman lundon = I shall arrive on the next Monday (see para. 68).
Punctuation (Interpunkcio).

71. Punctuation is only necessary to make clear the sense we wish to convey in writing. Happily it is not so important in Esperanto as in English, where a simple omission may make a great difference in the meaning of a sentence, and hence the verbosity of law documents in which stops are not used. Dr. Zamenhof places a comma before each interrogative or relative word, between the terms of comparison, etc.; also before "and," but only if the sense is clearly intended to be interrupted.

72. The following is what Dr. Zamenhof has written on the subject in the "Esperantisto." We give it in Esperanto, so that the student can see the punctuation for himself:

La reguloj pri la uzado de la interpunkcioj estas en sia lingvo pli-malpli tiaj samaj, kiaj en iuj aliaj lingvoj; sekve iu povus uzadi en Esperanto la interpunkciojn tiel, kiel li uzas ilin en sia nacia lingvo. Estas vere, ke en diversaj detalaj la tindo de la interpunkcioj estas malpli en diversaj lingvoj; sed ĉar la objekto ne estas tre grava, tial ni pensas, ke ne venis ankoraŭ la tempo por difini en nia lingvo severajn regulojn por tiuj ĉi detalaj. En tiuj ĉi dubaj detalaj ĉiuj povus uzadi en Esperanto la interpunkciojn tiel, kiel li uzas ilin en sia nacia lingvo, kaj nur la uzado de tiuj ĉi detalaj ĉiuj en Esperanto ellaboros por tiuj ĉi ĉiuj ĉ
them in his national language. It is true that in several details the use of stops is different in various languages, but since the matter is not very important, we think the time has not yet come to lay down in our language strict rules for these details. In those doubtful details everyone can use in Esperanto the stops he uses in his national language, and only custom, little by little, will work out for these unimportant details definite rules.
ORDER OF WORDS (Ordigo de Vortoj).

73. Since Esperanto has eliminated the defects of other languages, and embraced only the good points of each, its flexibility is great as regards the order of words in a sentence. This is principally owing to the accusative case, distinguishing clearly the object from the subject, being available for all nouns, pronouns, adjectives, participles, and even adverbs; also to the fact that prepositions and conjunctions do not interfere with the proper functions of other words. In English the accusative case is only distinguished in the pronouns he, him, she, her, etc., etc., all other words of case being irrevocable, except, perhaps, the adverbs here, when, whereas, etc., etc., which, by the bye, are often not used. It is true that English has a possessive case, which in Esperanto is applied only to the correlative group of words ending in -es, -es, kies, etc., etc. (see para. 106 (3), etc.) but even this doubtful advantage is lessened by the fact that the apostrophe is useless in speech in the plural when the word ends in S. For instance, when one says, "That is my brother's house," does one mean it belongs to one brother or more? Certainly, as written, with the apostrophe after the S, the meaning is two or more, but, as spoken, one would naturally suppose it belonged to one brother only. So, to be clear, we should have to fall back on the Esperanto mode of expression, and say, That is the house of my brothers. = Tiu estas la domo de miaj fratoj; even then Esperanto is clearer than English, for the pronoun (miaj) is a plural form, whereas in English my is the same for both numbers.
74. Owing to the above advantages, words may be arranged in almost any order in Esperanto, and yet be intelligible; but of course it is advisable they should follow one another in the natural sequence of our thoughts. The first point is, that the meaning of a sentence should be absolutely clear; and, secondly, that the sounds should be as harmonious as they can be, combined with clearness of expression. The student is advised to read the "Fundamenta Krestomatio," by Dr. Zamenhof, which will familiarize him with the construction of the language, and he will then rapidly acquire a knowledge as to the best order for words.

75. **Place of the subject and object.**—The subject is usually placed before and the object after the verb.

**EXAMPLES.**—
- Mia fratino estas libro = My sister bought a book.
- Rikardo manas kakeon = Richard is eating a cake.
- Kakeon manas Rikardo = means exactly the same, and would be quite intelligible, but the mind would not grasp the meaning so rapidly, and it would be absurd, without a reason, to place words in such an unnatural order.

76. **Position for emphasis.**—Words are often placed out of the usual order, as they are in English, to give emphasis, or for the sake of contrast.

**EXAMPLES.**—
- Z/CT mi renkontis, ne ŝin = Him I met, not her.
- Unu aferon ni scias, ke ni konas nenion = One thing we know, that we know nothing.

77. **Place of the predicate.**—The predicate, or what is said about the subject, is usually placed after the verb.

**EXAMPLES.**—
- Li estos kontenta se vi donas al li ŝilingon = He will be satisfied if you give him a shilling.
- Si fariĝus pli sana je la vetero pli varma = She would get better if the weather becomes warmer. But after the word *kidos* it is preferable to put the predicate before the verb, as:

"Kidomalsana li ŝajnas!" = How ill he looks!

"Kiel li ŝajnas malsana" would be quite right, but we see here that Esperanto ...
follows English exactly in its order of words, as if its, done in small pieces, in which the construction is quite different in other languages.

76. Place of the direct complement. — We have stated that the object is placed mostly after the verb, but if it is a pronoun, it may follow or precede it.

Examples. — Mi lin malamas, or, Mi malamas lin = I detest him. If, however, the pronoun be followed by an explanatory phrase, it is better to place it after the verb, as:— Mi verkesti lin ku li detest li. The construction is quite different in Latin, where the object precedes the verb, e.g., inveni hominem in armis. We have already seen that this rule is applicable only when there is no relation to the verb.

79. Place of the indirect complement. — The complement is said to be indirect when it is governed by a preposition (see Syntax, para. 31). It is usually placed after the verb.

Examples. — Zorgu pri tio = I take care of (about) that. Elkonduki lin al mi = Bring him to me. La domo estas konstruata de mia patro = The house is being built by my father. Mi ĝin donis al li por lia nepino = I gave it to him for his granddaughter. Of course, we can place it before the verb if we wish, just as we can in English, and as we probably should in the following phrase:— "El la dirita regulo sekvas, " — From the said rule, it follows that.

80. Place of circumstantial complements (see Syntax, para. 32). — These complements, which mark the time, place, manner, cause, etc., of an action, are usually placed first or last in a sentence.

Examples. — En printempo floroj aperas = In spring flowers appear. Nur kelke da knaboj ludadis sur la kampo = Only a few boys were playing in the field; or, Sur la kampo ludadis nur kelke da knaboj. In a sentence like the following the complement naturally is placed last, as:— "El la dirita regulo sekvas, " " — From the said rule, it follows that; or, "El la dirita regulo sekvas, " — From the said rule, it follows that. But in a sentence like the following, where there are two or more circumstantial complements, they naturally should come first in the sentence, as:— "El la dirita regulo sekvas, " — From the said rule, it follows that, or, "El la dirita regulo sekvas, " — From the said rule, it follows that. With terror, she rushed down the street.
The complements of nouns, adjectives, or participial adjectives, always follow them.

EXAMPLES.—
LA amo al (or, -por) Dio = Love to (for) God.
Mirigita de liaj vortoj, mi eliritt el la domo = Astonished at his words, I left (went out of) the house.

Place of the infinitive.—The infinitive being really a noun, takes its place, according as it is the subject, predicate, or complement. When it is the subject, it generally precedes the verb, unless one wishes to place it otherwise for the sake of emphasis.

EXAMPLES.—
Scii estas utile = Knowledge (to know) is useful.
Honte estas mensogi = It is shameful to lie.
If the predicate, it usually follows the verb, as:—
Tion fari estas agi malsakt = To do that is to act foolishly.
If the complement, it follows the word of which it is the complement, as:—
Mi tre deziras paroli kun vi = I want very much to speak with you.
Ni trinkas por senmalsati, kaj ni manĝas por senmalsati (or por satis) = We drink to allay thirst (to be without thirst), and we eat to allay hunger (to be without hunger), (to be satiated).
Mi devas iri hejmen = I must go home.
La elekto tion fari restas Se OT = The option of doing that rests with you.
Li estos tre felic Maria vin vidi morgaŭ = He will be very glad to see you to-morrow.
La deziro kontraŭi = The desire of contradicting (to contradict).

Place of the noun.—The noun is placed according as it is the subject, predicate, complement (direct, indirect, or circumstantial), (see paras. 76—80).

Place of the adjective.—The position of the adjective varies in national languages. In English it is nearly always placed before the word it qualifies, and we may say that this is generally in Esperanto. The following remarks and examples of the four classes of adjectives, "qualifying," "predicative," "possessive," and "demonstrative," will give an idea of its position, in accordance with the stress or emphasis wished to be conveyed.
(a) A **qualifying** adjective may either precede or follow the word it qualifies.

EXAMPLES.—In English 'the', 'his' etc. are usually used before nouns: The unfortunate boy lost his purse. In modern French 'le', 'son', 'sa', 'ses', etc. are usually used before nouns: Le père, son père, etc.

(b) A **predicative** adjective is usually placed after the verb, and none or pronoun, to which it relates.

EXAMPLES.—In English 'white' is a predicative adjective: The paper is white. 'Theo' is also used predicatively: They have the whole good. In modern French 'blanc' is never predicatively: Il a beaucoup mangé, il est très gras.

(c) A **possessive** adjective precedes the word to which it relates, but if we wish to speak in an affectionate strain, we can place it after the noun.

EXAMPLES.—In English 'my', 'your', 'his', etc. are usually used before nouns: My mother and my brothers and sisters gave me a present on my birthday. In modern French 'ma', 'ta', 'sa', etc. are used before nouns: Mon père, ta mère, sa sœur, etc.

(d) A **demonstrative** adjective always precedes the word to which it relates.

EXAMPLES.—In English 'that', 'this' are used before nouns: That lady is my sister. This change we reduce per what. Il est possible que les deux adjectifs n'aient pas toujours été aussi distincts.

(e) To show **emphasis**, adjectives can, as in English, be placed first in phrases.

EXAMPLES.—In English 'very', 'only', 'such', etc. are used before nouns: Very good, generous and courteous, as was expected of him. In modern French these adjectives are used before adjectives: Très mignon, généreux et aimable, comme on pouvait s'y attendre.
51—84. ORDER OF WORDS.

85. Place of the pronoun.—The place of the pronoun (personal or otherwise) is fixed according as it may be the subject or complement (direct or indirect), (see paras. 75, 78, 79). As in English, a personal pronoun, when the subject, can follow the verb in some cases.

Example.—"Ja, diris li, " ci estas verro." "Yes," said he, "it is true.""

86. Place of the verb.—The verb is, as a rule, placed after the subject, but this does not mean that it is to follow it immediately, for it can be separated by predications, complements, and adverbs.

Example.—La lingvo Esperanto, kreita de doktoro Zamenhof, estas jam uzata en la tuta mondo civilizita — The language Esperanto, created by Dr. Zamenhof, is already used in the whole civilized world. In sentences like the following it is, as in English, often placed before the subject. "Kien ni alvenos," diris mi al li, "kiam via amiko alvenos?" = Where shall we go, said I to him, when your friend arrives?"

87. Place of the participle varies as follows —

(a) When forming the compound tenses of verbs, the participle follows the auxiliary verb  esti, but not necessarily immediately after it (see (b)).

Example.—Mi estos Jininta mian leteron, antaŭ ol li alvenos = I shall have finished my letter before he arrives.

(b) In a qualifying or predicative sense they generally follow their noun or pronoun.

Example.—Pi  verda tre verda estis la frukto, sed ili adriis ke la verdo tre verda estis la frukto. — The fruit was very green, but they said that the green very green was the fruit.
The young lady reading the newspaper is very beautiful.

La konstruata domo (or, do mo konstruata,) = The house under construction (being constructed).

Ali imagis, ke mi vidas la homon kisanta la ririnon = I fancied (that) I saw the man kissing (that he is kissing) the woman.

(An adverbial participle generally precedes its noun or pronoun.)

EXAMPLES.—

Vidante dan amikon, li haltis = (On) seeing his friend, he stopped.

Leginte la libron, Si ekdormis = After reading (or having read) the book, she fell asleep (para. 212(d)).

(d). For emphasis the participle may be put first in a sentence.

EXAMPLES.—

Tedita voja ĝi, mi decidis reveni hejmen = Tired of travelling, I decided to return home.

Amataj kaj estimataj de ĉiuj, la fratoj havis multajn amikojn = Loved and esteemed by all, the brothers had many friends.

NOTE.—If qualifying and predicative participles are not placed in their natural positions, viz., after their nouns or pronouns, the sense may be entirely changed. For instance, in the following two sentences the words are the same, but the sense varies with their positions:—

Ŝi, kuranta en la ĉambron, vidis mian hundon = She saw my dog (who is) running into the room.

Ŝi vidis mian hundon kuranta en la ĉambron = She saw my dog (that he is) running into the room.

A phrase is often clearer if the conjunction ke is used instead of a predicative participle. For instance, instead of Ŝi vidis mian hundon kuranta en la ĉambron, we can say: Ŝi vidis, ke mia hundo kuras en la cambron = She saw that my dog was (is) running into the room.

88. Place of the adverb.—The adverb, as a rule, immediately precedes or follows the word to which it refers, or which it qualifies.

83
ORDER OF WORDS.

EXAMPLES.—Li rapide kuras, or, Li kuras rapide = He runs rapidly.
La virino zorge legis (or, legis zorge) laleteron = The woman read the letter carefully.
Li ĝentile demetis la iapelon = He politely took off his hat.

N.B.—In this last example it is more elegant to place the adverb, as in English, before the verb.

(a). To avoid ambiguity, care, however, must be taken not to place the adverb in a position where it might be taken to refer either to the word which precedes or the word which follows it. For instance, if an adverb be placed between two verbs, it sometimes happens that we cannot tell to which it refers, and the sense is thus materially altered.

EXAMPLE.—Li ekstreme deziris sa ĝi = He desired extremely to become wise.
Li deziris sa ĝi ekstreme = He desired to become extremely wise. In this example, if we place the adverb between the two verbs, and say Li deziris ekstreme sa ĝi, the sentence might be translated in either of the above two ways.

(b). Adverbs of comparison, such as: iom, muite, kiel, plej, pli, sufiĉe, tiel, tiom, tre, tro, are always placed before the words to which they refer.

EXAMPLES.—Li iom ĝiis kaj multe senkura ĝi = He became somewhat fatigued and much discouraged. Kiel malavare li agis, donante al sia frato tiom da mono, kiom li bezonis != How generously he acted in giving his brother as much money as he needed !
Li venos pli aŭ pli frue =~ Re will come sooner or later (lit., more or less early).
Vi agis plej sa ĝe, farante tion = You acted most wisely in doing that.
Kio ajn okazos, li estis sufiĉe sa ĝa por tion fari = At all events he was wise enough to do that.
§i tre amis sian fraton = She loved her brother very much.
Li tro manĝas = He eats too much.

(C). To give emphasis, adverbs and adverbial participles may commence a sentence.

EXAMPLES.—Ĝarmen, bele kaj kortuŝante estis vidi la birdon kuras pri sia ido = Charming, beautiful and touching it was to see the bird taking care of its offspring.
Starante kun la brakoj epletenditaj, li paroladis al la popolamaso = Standing with arms outstretched, he harangued the populace (see para. 245 (a)).
90. Place of the conjunction.—The conjunction always precedes the verb to which it refers, but separated from it by the words which logically intervene.

Example.—I, u, kio dum mi venis, diru al mi, ke mi estas tre okupata = I anyone (someone), this morning, should desire to see me, tell him (or her) I am very busy.

N.B.—Note that iu does not give the sex, therefore ĝi is rightly used; but, as in English, the sense would be clear without the words al ĝi.

91. Place of the interrogative.—In direct questions the subject usually precedes the verb.

Examples.—Do you know whether I have my book? In English, in many cases, we place the subject first; for instance, in the present tense, we often construct a question with "Do"; in the past, with "Have" or "Did"; in the future, with "Shall" or "Will," and we substitute in the present tense, wherever English uses "Can," the question word "Can," and in the past, "Could."—Do you want that pen? Did you get the book? Can I come here?

92. Place of the negative.—The negative ne = not, when it relates directly to a verb, is placed immediately before such verb, but otherwise in its natural position in the clause. The negative correlates nenia, nenial, etc., may be placed in almost any position, according to the emphasis we wish to give to the word.

Examples.—Mi ne kredis mi, my I did not see him. Do you wish that? Or do you wish that? Did you go to bed? I did not see her. Do you wish that? Do you wish that? Did you go to bed?
56

§ 22–23. ORDER OF WORDS.

wish not to meet John only, but also George. Mi volas
renkonti nur Johanon, sed ankaŭ Ŝeorgon.

93. Order very similar to English.—The foregoing remarks show that the order of words in Esperanto is very similar to the English construction of sentences, and we can hardly do wrong if we follow it nearly word for word. A slightly different order in Esperanto sometimes makes an expression more elegant, but this is generally owing to harmony of sound rather than grammatical construction.
PART II.

GRAMMAR.

14. The following is the complete grammar of Esperanto, as given by Dr. Zamenhof at page 254 of his "Fundamenta Kretoformo de la Lingvo Esperanto," which he says is "a book that should be in the hands of every earnest student who desires to acquire a correct Esperanto style." This book contains a series of Exercises, Fables, Legends, Stories, Extracts from Scientific Articles, Articles on Esperanto, Poetry, Translations from Hamlet and The Iliad, showing how well Esperanto is adapted for every kind of subject.

It will be seen that the whole grammar consists of sixteen short Rules, which can be learnt in less than an hour. The Esperanto is given alongside the translation. Remarks on the Rules, with examples, will be found by referring to the paragraphs given after each Rule.

COMPLETE GRAMMAR PLENA GRAMATIKO DE ESPERANTO.

Alphabet.

The twenty-eight letters Aa, Bb, Cc, Dd, Ee, Ff, Gg, Gĝ, Hh, Ĥĥ, Jj, Ĵĵ, Kk, Ll, Mm, Nn, Oo, Pp, Rr, Ss, Si, Tt, Uu, Ŭŭ, Vv, Zz.

N.B.—Printing offices which do not possess the letters c, ĉ, ĥ, ĵ,ŝ,ŭ, can use instead of them ch, ĝh, hh, jh, sh, u.
I. THE ARTICLE.—There is no indefinite article; there is only a definite article, *la*, alike for all sexes, cases, and numbers. N.B.—The use of the article is the same as in other languages. People to whom the use of the article presents a difficulty need not at first use it at all. (See paras. 96—102).

II. THE SUBSTANTIVE.—Substantives have the termination *o*. For the formation of the plural the termination *-j* is added. There are only two cases: nominative and accusative; the latter is obtained from the nominative by the addition of the termination *-n*. The other cases are expressed by the help of a preposition (the genitive by *de*, the dative by *al*), the ablative by *per* *a*. (See paras. 103—106).
THE ADJECTIVE.—The adjective finishes per
adjective endings. Cases n. and numbers as with the
kōlōs the substantiva. La
substantiva. The comparatives are formed by means
of the word PLI, the super-
maximum by PLEJ; the
comparative with the
conjunction of.
See paras. 107—114.

THE NUMERALS.—The
cardinal numerals (they
are not declined) are:
UNU, Dva, TBI, KVAR,
KVIN, SES, SEP, OK,
NA U, BEK, CENT, MIL.
The tens and hundreds are formed by
the simple numerals.
For the signification of ordinal numerals, the
termination of the adjective is added; for the
multi-
ple— the suffix -0BL,
for the fractional— ON,
for the collective— OP,
for the distributive— P0.
Substantival ad
numbers can be used.
See paras. 115—124.
RULES.

V.

THE PRONOUNS.—Personal pronouns: mi, vi, li, si, ĝi (referring to thing or animal), ni, vi, ili, oni; the possessive pronouns are formed by the addition of an adjective termination, substantive.

(See paras. 125–138).

VI.

THE VERB.—The verb is not changed in person or number. Forms of the verb: the present tense (the time being) takes the termination -as; the past tense (the time been, or having been) -is; the future tense -os; the Conditional mood -us; the Imperative (ordering) mood -u; the Infinitive (indefinite) mood -i.

Participles (with an adjectival or adverbial sense) Active present -anti; active past -anti; active future -ont; passive present -at; passive past -it; passive future -ot. All these participles are formed by adding the ending of the substantive to the present tense form of the verb + the Infinitive ending -i (or the adjective ending -us).
RULES.

II. Passive future verb; la proposition de la passé futur.
All forms of the passive are formed by help of a corresponding form of the verb EST and a passive participle of the required verb. The preposition with the passive is DE.
(See paras. 158—237).

VII. Adverbs—Adverbs end in E; degrees of e. gradaj de komparado comparison as with adjectives.
(See paras. 238—248).

VIII. Preposition—All prepositions of themselves require the nominative.
(See paras. 249—261).

IX. Pronunciation—Every word is read as it is written.
(See paras. 5—19).

X. Accent—The accent is always on the penultimate syllable.
(See para. 17).
XI. COMPOUND WORDS. — Compound words are formed by the simple junction of words (the chief word stands at the end); the grammatical terminations are also regarded as independent words.

(See paras. 39—50).

XII. NEGATION. — With another negative word the word NE is omitted.

(See paras. 59—62).

XIII. DIRECTION. — In order to show direction, words take the termination of the accusative.

(See para. 67).

XIV. USE OF PREPOSITIONS. — Every preposition has a defined and constant signification; but if we have to use some preposition and the direct sense does not show to us what preposition we are to use, then we use the preposition JE, which has no signification.
RULES.

VI.

Instead of the preposition which has an independent meaning, the accusative without a preposition may also be used.

See para. 95)

XV.

Foreign Words.—So-called foreign words, fremdaj, t.e., those which the majority of languages have taken from one source, are used in the Esperanto language without change, receiving only the orthography of the latter language; but with radical changes in letters and various words from one source it is better to use the fundamental word, and to form the rest from this according to the rules of the Esperanto language.

(See para. 39, 52)

XVI.

The final vowel of the substantive and the article can be omitted and replaced by an apostrophe.

(See para. 36, 57)

63
95. There are nine parts of speech in Esperanto, as found in most other languages, viz., the Article (Artikolo), Noun (Substantivo), Pronoun (Pronomo), Adjective (Adjektivo), Verb (Verbo), Adverb (Adverbio), Preposition (Prepozicio), Conjunction (Kojunkcio), Interjection (Interjekcio).

With the exception of the 158 Primary Words (see page 21), every part of speech has its distinctive termination, so the student, when he has learnt the Primary Words, knows at a glance to what part of speech every other word belongs, and, as regards a verb, he can also tell its tense or mood. If a word ends in -0, it is a noun; if in -A, an adjective; if in -E, an adverb; if in -I, -U, -AS, -IS, or -US, a verb. If it ends in -N, it is in the accusative case; if in -J, it is plural.

Examples.—Domo = a house. Eĉ = even. Felĉe = happily. Doni = give (Infinitive). Batu lin = beat him (Imperative and Accusative). Mi vidas la homojn = I see the men (Present tense and Accusative plural). Vi diris = you said (Past tense). Ni iros = we shall go (Future tense). Se ili estus bonaj = If they were good (Conditional mood and plural adjective).
There is no word in Esperanto for the Indefinite Article. It is, as in Latin, implied in the noun, if the sense in English requires it.

**Examples.**—

*Tiu estas floro* = That is a flower.

*Patrino kaj jilo* = Mother and son.

*Cu vi vidas birdon sur tiu arbo?* = Do you see a bird on that tree?

The definite article is *La* = The. It is, as in English, the same for all genders, numbers, and cases.

**Examples.**—

*La patro* = The father.

*La patrino* = The mother.

*Donu al mi la libron* = Give me the book.

*Ili estas la homantoj diligentaj* = They are the diligent scholars.

As regards its use, *La* is used very nearly as the definite article "the" in English, namely, to show that one is speaking of something known or definite, as opposed to what is indefinite.

**Examples.**—

*En la mezo de la korto mi vidis du infanojn el la apuda vilag* = In the middle of the yard I saw two children of the neighbouring village. In this sentence the yard and village are each defined by the article *la*, as they are also in English by "the." But if we omit the article the sentence runs:—

*En la mezo de korto mi vidis du infanojn el apuda vilag* = In the middle of a yard I saw two children of a neighbouring village. In this case the children might have been in any yard and been brought to any village in the neighbourhood of the speaker.

There are, however, cases in which the article is used in Esperanto, but omitted in English, and also vice versa.

(a) *It is used* before nouns denoting the totality of persons or things.
THE ARTICLE.

Examples.—La homo estas mortemaj = Man is mortal.

La homoj estas mortemaj = Men are mortal.

La medieino estas scienco kaj la pentrado arto = Medicine is a science and painting an art.

Kelkaj kuracistoj pretendas, ke lavino estas malutila al la sewo = Some doctors maintain that wine is hurtful to health.

Sen la akvo nia terylo rapide fariĝus ĝi dezerto = Without water our earth would rapidly become a desert.

La nokto estis tiel nigra, kiel la peço = The night was as dark as pitch.

La azenoj amas la kardojn = Donkeys love thistles.

La vento kauzufoj ofte teruran detruon en, kaj landoj = Wind often causes terrible ruin in some countries.

(In this case la vento means wind in general, spoken of as a whole, but “To-day we shall have wind” (meaning some wind) would be: Hodiaŭ ni havos venton). Hailo falas = Hail is falling (viz., some hail), but La hajlo estas tre malutila al la vinbero = Hail is very injurious to grapes (to the grape), means hail in general.

(b). It is not used before proper names, for its simple reason that they cannot be more definite than they are in themselves. In English it is sometimes used and sometimes not.

Examples.—Danubo = The Danube.

La glora poeto, Dante = The famous poet, Dante.

La imperiestro de Japano = The Emperor of Japan.

La bona reĝino Viktorio = The good Queen Victoria.

The article may be used sometimes where, in English, we use a possessive pronoun.

Examples.—(a) La Homer dueno de toj homoj = He was a poet in his own right.

La beko el sioj = He had a beard.

(b) It is also frequently used instead of a possessive pronoun in speaking of one’s own relations, or when there is no desire as to the person to whom the article refers.
THE ARTICLE. ¶ 100—102.

EXAMPLES.—Mi amas la patrino— I love my (the) father.
Iru al la patrino = Go to your (the) mother.
Kie estas la kuzo?— Where is your (the) cousin?
La patro staras apud la fiho = The father stands by (at the side of) his (the) son.

101. The article is almost always used before numeral adjectives showing the day, hour, month, etc., when these nouns are understood.
EXAMPLE. — Hodiau estas la dudek-sepa (tago) de Marto — To-day is the 27th of March.

(a). Its use is optional before the names of the seasons, and also before each separate noun or adjective.
EXAMPLES.—En la vintro, or, En vintro = In the winter.
En la somero, or, En somero = In the summer.
La arboj, la floroj kaj la kreskaĵoj de la ĝardeno = The trees (the) flowers and (the) plants of the garden.

(b). It is not used after ĉiuj = all, or, all the.
EXAMPLES.—Ĉiuj ne videis ĉiujn arbojn en la ĝardeno = I did not see all the trees in the garden.

N.B.—From the foregoing remarks it will be seen that the English student will have no difficulty in the use of the article, if he be careful always to use it with words defining a class or the totality of persons or things. He will get a good idea of its use if he will carefully study the first few exercises in the "Ekzercaro," or Exercises 1 to 4 in Part III.

102. Elision.—The final A of the article may be omitted in certain cases (see paras. 96 and 1016, para. 94).
THE NOUN (La Substantivo).

103. A noun (in the singular number) in all its cases, except the nominative, ends in -0. The nominative is formed by the addition of X. In the present such is -Oj, and the accusative plural is formed by adding X to these letters. Thus the root arb- is made into a noun with its numbers and cases as follows:—

arb-o = a tree (nominative, singular).
arb-on = a tree (accusative, singular).
arb-oj = trees (nominative, plural).
arb-on = trees (accusative, plural).

EXAMPLES.—
Domo = A house.
La domo = The house.
La domoj = The houses.

Rigardu la domojn = Look at the houses.

Knabo = A boy.
La knabo = The boy.
Mi vidis la knabon = I saw the boy.

Knabino = A girl.
La knabino = The girl.
Mi vidis la knabon = I saw the girl.

Note: The root arb- is divided into arb-o, arb-on, arb-oj, arb-on, and arb-oj. The root arb- is the root, or the root's subject, and the grammatical termination.

Declension of Nouns, Adjectives, and Pronouns.

104. There are not two cases in Esperanto (aside from the nominative and the accusative or objective); the latter is obtained from the nominative by adding X to the singular or plural.
Other cases are expressed by the aid of prepositions, as:—

**Nouns.**

- **Ablative**
  - In the nominative: mia bona patro = My good father.
  - In the accusative: bien bonan patron = My good father.
  - In the dative: al mia bona patro = To my good father.
  - In the genitive: de mia bona patro = Of my good father.
  - In the ablative: kun mia bona patro = With my good father.

- **Dative**
  - Al mia bona patro = To my good father.
  - De mia bona patro = From (by) my good father.
  - Per mia bona patro = With (by means of) my good father.

Note that *per* = by the instrumental ablative, meaning “by means of,” or “in company with,” but not in an instrumental sense, as it is sometimes in English, e.g., *I held him with both hands* = *Mi lin tenis per ambaŭ manoj,* not *kun ambaŭ manoj* (see p. 259 (22)).

**Plural.**

- In the plural the declension is the same, with the addition of the plural termination *j*.
  - In the nominative: miaj bona filoj = My good sons.
  - In the accusative: miajn bonajn filojn = My good sons.
  - In the genitive: de miaj bonaj filoj = Of my good sons.
  - In the dative: al miaj bonaj filoj = To my good sons.
  - In the ablative: kun miaj bonaj filoj = With my good sons.

**Examples.**

- La frato skribas, kaj la fratino legas = The brother is writing and the sister reading.
- La patro donis la librojn al sia filo = The father gave the books to his son.
- Tiu ĉi ĉiuj ukaj ringo (or, ringo el ĉiuj ukaj) estas por la infaneto = This rubber ring is for the baby.
- Mi vidis Jozefon kun lia kuzo = I saw Joseph with his cousin.
- Venu, ni atendas Vin (Cin), Savino de la mondo = Come, we await You (Thee), 0 Saviour of the world.
- Mi lin prenis per la mano = I took him by the hand.
- La dorno estas kovrita per ardezoj = The house is covered with slates.
- Mi vidis vian patron kun liaj duoj = I saw your father with his two sons.
105. Ellipsis.—The case (nominative or accusative) of words in Esperanto often depends upon the verb omitted when ellipsis occurs in a phrase, and unless we write the sentence in full, or think what the ellipsis is, we may not at first know what case to use to express our meaning. A glance at the following examples will show how easy it is to determine the case. The words in brackets show the ellipsis—

Mi konas lin pli bone, ol vi (konas lin) = I know him better than you (do, or know him).

Mi konas lin pli bone, ol vin (ol mi konas vin) = I know him better than you (than I know you).

Pelro amas Panion tiom, kiom (li amas) Johanon = Peter loves Paul as much as (he loves) John.

Pelro amas Pavlon tiom, kiom Johano (amas lin) = Peter loves Paul as much as John (loves him).

Note that in the above sentences we cannot, in English, tell the meaning until the ellipsis is supplied, whereas, in Esperanto, the meaning is at once clear from the case of the noun or pronoun (para. 112).

Li iris tien, kiel ankaŭ vi (iris) = He went there as well as you (went).

Mi vidis lin tie, kiel ankaŭ (mi vidis) vin = I saw him there as well as (I saw) you.

Mi neniam vidis tian hundon, kiel (estas) la via = I never saw such a dog as yours.

105. (a). Elision.—The final 0 of a noun may be omitted (para. 57, and Rule 16, para. 94).

106. Possession is (a) expressed by help of the proposition de.

EXAMPLES.—La domo de la patro = The father's house, or, the house of the father. In either case the possessive pronoun is omitted. La libro de mia patrino = My mother's book, or, the book of my mother.
(b). Possession is also denoted by the correlative words ending in *es*, e.g., *someone's*, somebody's, *something's*, etc. *Someone's* house, *something's* house, etc. (see para. 154).

EXAMPLES:—
1. Everyone's idea was different. *Eva ĉiuj ĉuetoj* (Whose house is that? *Kiu ĉueto estas tiu-*)
2. Nobody's house. *Kiu ne ĉueto estas* = *Cu tiu ĉueto estas neki* (His anyone's (someone's) knife? (see para. 154).

(c). An adjective is sometimes conveniently used when in English we employ an apostrophe.

EXAMPLES:—
1. One day's work. *Eva ĉiuj ĉuetoj laboro* (for, *la laboro de unu ĉueto*) = *Cu la ĉiuj ĉuetoj laboro estis en la ĉiuj ĉuetoj, kaj poste lifaris unu ĉueto laboron en la ĉiuj ĉuetoj* (see para. 154).
2. I awaited the captain's reply. *Mi atendis kapitanojn respondon* (see para. 154).

(d). In speaking of places, the English preposition "of" is not translated.

EXAMPLES:—
2. The Colony of Natal (see para. 154).

For numeral nouns, see para. 118; for participial, paras. 208, 209; for predicative, para. 109; for form of accusative with proper names, para. 69 (d); for the infinitive used as a noun, para. 100.
110. **ADJECTIVES.**

107. The Adjective always ends in -A in the singular; it is added to this to form the plural. The accusive case is formed by the addition of N to the singular or plural termination.

**Examples.**—
- Forta = Strong.
- Saĝa = Wise.
- Brava = Brave.
- Forta homo = A strong man.
- Saĝa patro = A wise father.
- Brava filo = The brave son.
- Forta homoj = Brave sons.

108. There are two kinds of adjectives, viz.:
(a) **Qualifying or attributive** (apudmetita = put adjacent), and (b) **Predicative** (predikateca).

(a). A **qualifying adjective** is one placed before or after its noun, with which it agrees both in number and case (para. 36).

**Examples.**—
- Johano havas bonan panon = John has good bread.
- Vilhelmo akrigis la tranĉilojn malakajn = William sharpened the blunt knives.

(b). A **predicative adjective**, usually placed after the verb, denotes what is said about the noun or pronoun to which it refers, or denotes their state, condition, appearance, etc. It agrees with them in number, but is never in the accusative case (para. 36).

**Examples.**—
- La pomo estas bona = The apple is good.
- Vilhelmo trovis la tranĉilojn malakajn = William found the knives blunt.

If the adjective were in this sentence in the accusative, the meaning would be quite altered, for, "Vilhelmo trovis la tranĉilojn malakajn" would mean, "William found the blunt knives," that is to say, he was looking for blunt knives, and he found them. A predicative adjective shows that ellipsis has taken place, and the omitted verb is generally esti. For instance, the elliptic is...
ADJECTIVES. 109—111.

The above sentence might be as follows:—William found that the knives were blunt.

If we elide ke and estas, the substantive takes the accusative (tranĉiloj) and the adjective remains in the nominative. Other examples are:—Zu havis kaj en liaj ĉerbono kaj en liaj ĉerbonoj, kiu estis malakaj. (Hamlet IV., 7) = We have now found to do to show yourself that you are a worthy son of your dear father (see para. 109 on ellipsis).

109. Predicative Noun.—A noun can also be predicative (see para. 35).

Examples.—La patro nomis sian Jilon Johano = The father named his son John. Now in English it is not clear whether the father gave the name of "John" to his son, or whether he made mention of his son whose name was John. In Esperanto it is clear that he gave the name, for otherwise "Johano" would be in the accusative (Johanon), so:—La patro nomis sian Johano = The father named (made mention of) his son John.

Hi nomis lin Adolfo = They called him (gave him the name of) Adolphus.

110. Nominative or Accusative.—The rule, therefore, for qualifying and predicative adjectives or nouns is:—
(a). The word will be in the accusative if the object already possesses the quality in question.
(b). The word will be in the nominative if that quality, which it did not before possess, or was not known to possess, is being given to the object.

111. Participial Adjectives.—Participles are often used in Esperanto to qualify nouns and pronouns, and they are thus in reality true adjectives. To distinguish them from other adjectives they are called "Participial Adjectives" (Partizipaj adjektivoj).

Examples.—Johano kaj George estis perditaj. = John and George were lost. Ni trovis ilin mortantajn. = We found them (who are) dying. Ni estis fininte, kiam vi alvenis. = We had finished when you arrived (see para. 209 (b)).
Comparison of Adjectives.

(a) The comparative of equality is 

Johno estas tiel forta, kiel Georgo = John is as strong as George.

(b) The comparative of superiority is pli... ol = more... than.

Johno estas pli forta, ol Georgo = John is stronger than George.

c) The comparative of inferiority is malpli... ol = less... than.

Johno estas malpli forta, ol Georgo = John is less strong (weaker) than George.

d) The other modes of expressing comparison are:

pli... kia = such, such a, such kind... as
same... kia = the same... as.

Ju pli... des pli = the more... the more.
Ju malpli... des malpli = the less... the less.

EXAMPLES. —

Tia domo, kia tiu, estas malofte vidata = Such a house as that is rarely seen.

Mia bastono estas tia sama, kia (la) via, or, mia bastono estas same, kiel (la) via = My stick is the same as yours.

Ju pli mi lin konas, des pli mi lin estimas = The more I know him the more I esteem him.

Ju malpli mi dormas, des malpli mi sentas la bezonon dormi = The less I sleep, the less I feel the want (need) to sleep.

Be careful to note that the second term in a comparison is in the nominative or accusative, according as it is the subject or complement, e.g.,

Mi amas mian fraton pli, ol mia fratino = I love my brother more than my sister (loves him).

Mia fratino estas pli malalta, ol mian fraton = My sister is shorter than my brother.
ADJECTIVES. H 112—113.

In the nominative, mas in lin being understood. But mi amas miarn fraton pli, ol mian fratinon = I love my brother more than my sister. Here fratinon is in the accusative, and its meaning is perfectly clear. In English we should have to add "than" to the first example in order to make the phrase clear. "I love my brother more than my sister does" (see para. 103).

113. Superlatives (Superlativoj).

(a) The superlative of superiority is ia pierje = the most.

(b) The superlative of inferiority is ia maipierce = the least.

The preposition ek = out of, of, is used with the superlative when it relates to numbers, or something collective, as a "group," "society," etc. But when the superlative relates to the place or position where the superiority is or was, then some other appropriate preposition is used.

EXAMPLES.—Johano estas la plej forta el la knabo = John is the strongest of the boys.

Petro estis la plej malforta el ĉiuj = Peter was the weakest of all.

Georgo estas la malplej kuragia knabo en la domo = George is the least courageous boy in the house.

Si estis la plej beta virino, kiun mi iam vidis = She was the most beautiful woman whom I ever saw.

Tiuj ĉiuj estas la plej grandaj arboj en la arbaro = These are the largest trees in the wood.

Li estis la plej bona esperantisto el la grupo (ek, samene) = He was the best esperantist of the group (club, society).

Metu la plej grandajn glasojn sur la tablon = Put the largest glasses upon the table.

Ne jetu la plej grandajn stonojn en la puton, sed la plej malgrandajn (malplej grandajn) = Do not throw the largest stones into the well, but the smallest (the least large).

(c) The superlative absolute is indicated by tre-very, or trege-exceedingly, or treo-excessively, or some other suitable adverb.

EXAMPLE.—Tiu virino estas tre malbela kaj trege grasa = That woman is very ugly and exceedingly fat.
ADJECTIVES.

114. Degrees of intensity of adjectives can also be shown by the aid of the suffixes -EG- and -ET- with or without an adverb. The suffix -EG- is stronger in its application than the adverb tre = very. For instance, take the adjective bela = beautiful, or, tine, tre bela = very beautiful, or, very fine; tre belega = magnificent, or, superb. So, the diminutive -ET- shows more diminution than the adjective malgranda = small, or, little would show when qualifying a noun. For instance, malgranda rivero = a small river, but rivereto = a brook, or, stream.

The following list shows how twelve adjectives of varying shades of intensity can be formed from the root arm- between the extremes tre varmega = broiling hot and tre malarmega = intensely cold, supposing we were speaking of the weather:

- tre varmega = Broiling hot.
- tre malvarmega = Bitterly cold.
- varmega = Hot.
- tre varma = Very warm.
- varma = Warm.
- iom varma = Warmish.
- varmeta = Mild.
- malvarmeta = Cool.
- malvarma = Cold.
- tre malvarmeta = Very cool.
- malarmeta = Coldest.
- iom malarmeta = Coolest.

The cardinal numbers are:

- (1) unu,
- (2) du,
- (3) tri,
- (4) kvar,
- (5) kvin,
- (6) ses,
- (7) sep,
- (8) ok,
- (9) naŭ,
- (10) dek,
- (100) cent,
- (1,000) mil.

Milliono (million) is a noun; root million.

- The numbers 11 to 19 are formed by simply placing (10) dek before the first nine, as:
  - (11) dek unu,
  - (12) dek du,
  - (13) dek tri,
  - (14) dek kvar,
  - (15) dek kvin,
  - (16) dek ses,
  - (17) dek sep,
  - (18) dek ok,
  - (19) dek naŭ.

- The numbers (101 to 119), or (1,001 to 1,019), are formed by the addition cent, or mil, as:
  - (101) cent unu,
  - (102) cent du,
  - (110) cent dek,
  - (116) cent dek ses,
  - (1,001) mil unu,
  - (1,006) mil ses,
  - (1,114) mil cent dek kur.

- The tens, hundreds, and thousands are formed by prefixing one of the numbers 2 to 9 before dek, cent, or mil, as:
  - (10) dek unu,
  - (20) dek du,
  - (30) dek tri,
  - (96) naŭ dek ses,
  - (121) cent dek unu,
  - (342) tri cent kvar dek du,
  - (1,021) mil dek unu,
  - (8,754) ok mil sep cent kvin dek kvar.

- The intermediate numbers (21 to 29), (31 to 39), etc., are formed by adding the required number to the root, as:
  - (21) du dek unu,
  - (22) du dek du,
  - (35) tri dek unu,
  - (97) naŭ dek ok,
  - (121) cent dek unu,
  - (523) tri cent kvar dek du,
  - (1,021) mil dek unu,
  - (8,754) ok mil sep cent kvin dek kvar.
115—116. NUMERALS.

(c). The cardinal numbers never change their form for case or number.

Examples.—In the singular absolute forms of my property,

The two children divided between themselves seven apples.
One child had three and the other had four of the apples. One took more than the other.

(f). Uno is sometimes used in the plural, and

uno then means some. It is used generally in relation with aliaj = others.

Examples.—Among her many children, some were good and others bad. He examined the apples, and found some good and others bad. Note that bonaj and malbonaj are predicative adjectives, and therefore in the nominative (see paras. 36, 108 (b)).

(g). Uno is used when our indefinite article is employed as a numeral.

Examples.—Since we have each a dictionary, take yours and leave mine.

Ordinal Numbers (Numerally ordinal).

116. Ordinal numbers, being really adjectives, are,

in Esperanto, made such in the usual way by adding

of to the cardinals, as — unu, first, du, second, triu, third, kvaru, fourth, kvinu, fifth, sesu, sixth, sepua, seventh, oka, eighth, na, ninth, deka, tenth.

(a). If the cardinal is composed of two or more numerals, it is added to the last only, as — dek-unu — eleventh, dek-du — twelfth, dek-tria — thirteenth, dek-unu — twenty-first, cent-tria — hundred and thirty-first.

N.B. — Note that the ordinal numbers are linked by hyphens.
(b) The Ordinals follow all the rules of adjectives as to case and number.

EXAMPLES.—Give him the third, and take the fourth. La kvinaj eta ĝoj de tiuj domoj estas tre altaj.

(c) The Ordinals are used in speaking of pages, hours, days, months, years, kings, etc.


In asking questions about the above, the adjective kioma is often used.

EXAMPLES.—Sur kioma paĝo vi vidis tion? = On what page did you see that? Kioman paĝon estas? = What page is it? Kiom deklo estas? = What o'clock is it? Kiun daton ni havas? = What is the date (or, day of the month)?
Multiples (Numerals suffixes).

119. Multiples are formed by the addition of the suffix \(-OBL\) to the cardinals, and then adding \(A\), \(E\), or \(O\) to mark the adjective, adverb, or noun. They can also be formed into transitive verbs by the suffix \(-IGI\), or intransitive by the suffix \(-IGI\).

**Examples.**
- Unuobla = Single.
- Unuoble = Singly.
- Duobla = Double, twofold.
- Duoble = Doubly.
- La duoblo = The double.
- Duoblegi = To double, to double.
- Duobli = To become double.
- Triobla = Triple, threefold.
- Trioble = Trebly.
- La trioblo = The treble (of).
- Trioblegi = To treble, to triple.
- Triobli = To become triple.
- Kvarobla = Fourfold, quadruple.
- Kvaroble = Quaterno.
- Kvaroblo = A quadruple.
- Kvaroblegi = To quadruple, to make fourfold.
- Kvarobli = To become quadruple.
- Sepobla = Sevenfold, septuple.
- Centoblo = A centuple.

Kvinoble sep estas tridek kvin = Five times (fivefold) 7 is 35.

Naŭoble ok estas sepdek du = Nine times (ninefold) 8 is 72.

Kvaroble kvar estas dek ses = Four times four is 16.

Dudek estas la kvaroblo de kvin = Twenty is the quadruple of five.

Duobla fadeno estas pli forta, ol unuobla = A double thread is stronger than a single thread.

Fractional Numbers (Numerals fractions).

120. Fractional numbers are formed by the addition of the suffix \(-ON\) to the cardinals, and then adding \(A\), \(E\), or \(O\) to mark the adjective, adverb, or noun, as:—
- Duona = Half, duone = By halves, duono = A half (I).
- Triona = Third, trione = By thirds, triono = A third (I).

**Examples.**
- La kvarona parto de dudek kvar estas la duono de dek du, tio estas ses = The fourth part of 24 is the half of 12, that is 6.
- Unu triono = One third.
- Tri okonoj = Three eighths (4).
- Neniam faru ion poduone = Never do anything by halves.
The Collectives (Numerals combining).

121. The collectives are formed by the addition of the suffix -OP- to the cardinals, and then adding A or E to mark adjectives or adverbs, as:——

- duopa = double, two together, duopa — by twos, in pairs, tripe = in threes, in triplets.

Example.—Duopa kaj tripa — Five together (five at a time) they threw themselves upon me.

Reiteratives (Numerals repeating).

122. Reiteratives are formed by adding the adverb foje to the cardinals, as:

- unufoje = once,
- dufoje = twice, trifoje = thrice,
- kvarfoje = four times.

Example.—Hieraŭ mi renkontis tio unufoje (or, unu fojon), sed hodiaŭ dufoje (or, du fojojn).

Note that when the substantive fojo is used, it is in the accusative, as denoting point of time (para. 68 (b)).

Distributives (Numerals distributing).

123. Distributives are marked by the preposition po placed before the cardinals, meaning at the rate of, in the proportion of.

Example.—Al iu el la laborantoj mi pagis po kvin silingoj — I paid each of the workmen at the rate of five shillings.

The reference volume ended po trijonoj (vol) so no longer on the same day as the previous volume, so there is a very big difference in their supply.

Example.—Tiu libro enhavas sesdek fojojn; tia i, se mi legos en i tago po dek kvin fojojn, mi finos la tiulan libro en kvar tagoj.

This book contains 60 pages, therefore if I (shall) read (in) each day at the rate of 15 pages, I shall finish the whole book in 4 days (see "po" in list of prepositions, para. 259 (b)).

The Time of Day (La horo).

124. There are three ways of expressing the time of day:—

(a) Tri kvaronoj de la tria = three-quarters of the 3rd hour.

(b) Tri kvaronoj de la tria = three-quarters of the 3rd hour.

(c) Tri kvaronoj de la tria = three-quarters of the 3rd hour.
NUMERALS.

(i) The 2nd (hour) and three-quarters.

(ii) One quarter before the 3rd (hour).

The last example is the only one which would be easily understood by an Englishman. Other nations use one or two of these methods, so these three were probably devised to suit all nationalities. There is, however, one way used by nearly all nations, namely, that in railway time tables, and it is to be hoped that this will come into general use.

Therefore to the question:—What time is it? we might simply say as follows:

2.00 = The second (hour), or, Two, or, The hour.

2.15 = The second quarter past, or, Two and fifteen minutes.

3.50 = The third quarter past, or, Three and fifty minutes.

10.2 = The tenth (hour) two, or, Ten and two minutes.

11.45 = The eleventh (hour) forty-five, or, Eleven and forty-five minutes.

In Italy, Belgium, etc., where the hours are numbered from one to twenty-four, this system is equally applicable, as:

4.10 p.m. in Italy—Four, Ten—The fourteenth (hour) ten.

If we used the cardinal numbers, as in English, and called 10.1, or 10.2, Ten and one, or, Ten and two, these words would also apply to 11.0, or 12.0, and to 12.1, or 12.2, etc., all the hours from 10.1 to 12.0, and 13.0 up to 24.0. Therefore, the better plan would be to use the ordinal numbers for the hour and the cardinal for the minutes, as—10:15—Ten and fifteen minutes.
There are seven classes of Pronouns:—


As, however, the last five classes are so intimately connected with other parts of speech, and as some of the personal pronouns take two classes, and some two parts of speech, it is better to treat them as correlative words (see paras. 139—157), so under the head of "Pronouns" we give only the personal and possessive.

**Personal Pronouns (personaj pronomoj).**

1. The personal pronouns are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>1st Person</th>
<th>2nd Person</th>
<th>3rd Person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>Me = I, thou = (the is rarely used)</td>
<td>Vi = you, thou = (the is rarely used)</td>
<td>Li = he, Xi = she, Ci = it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>Ni = we</td>
<td>Vi = you, ye</td>
<td>Lin = they</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>1st Person</th>
<th>2nd Person</th>
<th>3rd Person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>Min = me</td>
<td>Vi = you, thee = (thee is rarely used)</td>
<td>Li = him, Xi = her, Ci = it</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>Nin = us</td>
<td>Vi = you</td>
<td>Lin = them</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Table of Personal Pronouns**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>1st Person</th>
<th>2nd Person</th>
<th>3rd Person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>Me</td>
<td>Vi</td>
<td>Li, Xi, Ci</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>Ni</td>
<td>Vi</td>
<td>Lin</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Possessive Pronouns (possesvaj pronomoj).**

1. The possessive pronouns are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>1st Person</th>
<th>2nd Person</th>
<th>3rd Person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>Mine = my</td>
<td>Vi = your, your</td>
<td>Li, Xi = his, her, its</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>Nmine = our</td>
<td>Vi = your, your</td>
<td>Lme, Xme = their</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Relative Pronouns (relativa pronomoj).**

1. The relative pronouns are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>1st Person</th>
<th>2nd Person</th>
<th>3rd Person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>Mine = who, whose</td>
<td>Vi = whom</td>
<td>Li, Xi = which</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>Mine = who, whose</td>
<td>Vi = whom</td>
<td>Lin = whose</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Interrogative Pronouns (interojetaj pronomoj).**

1. The interrogative pronouns are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>1st Person</th>
<th>2nd Person</th>
<th>3rd Person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>What?</td>
<td>Whom?</td>
<td>Whose?</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>What?</td>
<td>Whom?</td>
<td>Whose?</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Demonstrative Pronouns (demonstrativa pronomoj).**

1. The demonstrative pronouns are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>1st Person</th>
<th>2nd Person</th>
<th>3rd Person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>This</td>
<td>That</td>
<td>These</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>These</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Collective Pronouns (kollekta pronomoj).**

1. The collective pronouns are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>1st Person</th>
<th>2nd Person</th>
<th>3rd Person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>Us</td>
<td>You</td>
<td>Them</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>Us</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Indefinite Pronouns (indefinite pronomoj).**

1. The indefinite pronouns are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>1st Person</th>
<th>2nd Person</th>
<th>3rd Person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Singular</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plural</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Conclusion:**

The study of pronouns helps in better understanding the grammatical structure of a language and in improving communication skills.
51 129—133. PRONOUNS.

Oni = one, people, they, we (like the French "on"), is an indefinite pronoun of the 3rd person, and is invariable. It may be deemed singular or plural.

Si = self, selves, oneself, is a reflexive pronoun of the 3rd person, singular or plural.

Vi, like "you" in English, represents both its singular and plural, but when it refers to more than one person, words depending on it take the plural form.

Ĝi, like "it" in English, is used to represent things, and also persons and animals when the sex does not reveal the sex.

Examples.—Mi lin amas = I love him.

Li min vius = He sees me.

Lli trovis lin kaj min en la ĝardeno = They found him and me in the garden.

Vi ne vidis nin = You did not see us.

Vi (plural) estas pli sayaj, ol Hi (estas) = You are wiser than they are.

Ŝi vidis ilin en la dormo = She saw them in the bedroom.

Oni diras, "Per mono oni povas aĉeti ĉion" = They (people) say (it is said), "With money one (or, we) can buy everything.

Mi vidis la domon, sed ĝi estis tro malgranda = I saw the house, but it was too small.

Se oni estus riea, ili' one were rich.

(a).—In words like infano = child, persona = person, individuo = individual, etc., the sex is not revealed; neither is it in the general name of an animal, as:

Leono = A lion.

Hundo = A dog.

Birdo = A bird, etc., unless we add the feminine suffix -ino. In all such cases, when we do not know the sex, we use the pronoun ĝi.

If, however, the sex is known to be masculine, we use the masculine pronoun li.

If the word has the feminine termination -ino, we use the pronoun ŝi; it would be illogical to use ĝi.

Examples.—La infano forkuris, kiam mi parolis al ĝi = The child ran away when I spoke to it.

Tiu estas bela ĉeife, ŝi trotas = That is a fine mare, she trots well.

Se iu vizitas min dum mi for estas, din al ĝi, ke ĝi revenu morga = If anyone (someone) should call upon (visit) me whilst I am away, tell him or her (it) to come again to-morrow.

127. The word mem = self or selves is sometimes used with a personal pronoun or noun to give emphasis.
PRONOUNS.

EXAMPLES.—

Mi mem ĝin ridis = I myself saw it.
Xi mem (jin trovis, or, JVY ĝin trovis mem = We found it ourselves,
"li fe)iu mem = Come yourself. Si mem parolos = She herself will speak. Li mem respondu = He himself will answer himself. La virino j venu mem = Let the women come themselves.

128. Si is a reflexive pronoun of the 3rd person, and therefore cannot refer to the presence of the 1st and 2nd persons. We cannot say Mi lavas sin, or, Xi lavas sin, or, Xi trovis sin, for "I wash myself," "We wash ourselves," "You wash yourself." We must, in each of these cases, use the pronoun which is the subject of the verb, as:

—Mi lavas min—Ni lavas nin—Vi lavas vin = I wash myself—We wash ourselves—You wash yourself

Si, therefore, is used for the 3rd person, singular or plural, when it refers to the subject of the verb. It takes the accusative termination when necessary, and then represents him, "himself, her, herself, it, itself, oneself, them, themselves"; also sometimes in poetry "him, her, it, them."

EXAMPLES.—

Li razis siin = Shaved himself. Petro razis sin = Peter shaved himself (Petro razis lin would mean Peter shaved him, viz., some other man referred to in the sentence). Petro razis sion = He shaved all his own or some other man's clothes. Petro razis min = He shaved himself (Petro razis si would mean "He and in her," viz., some other person and his or her clothes). Si razis sin = Shaved himself. Si razis sion = He shaved all his own or some other man's clothes. Si razis min = He shaved himself.

Si mem parolos = She herself will speak. Si mem respondu = He himself will answer himself.

129. The pronoun "it" is not expressed with impersonal verbs (see para. 164).
Possessive Pronouns (Pronomoj posedaj).

130. Possessive pronouns are formed by adding the adjectival a to the personal pronoun. They are essentially adjectives, and follow the adjectival rules as to the formation of the plural and the accusative.

131. They are mia = my, mine, ak = your, yours, ĝia = his, her, hers, ĝia = its, ĉia = his, her, theirs, nia = our, ours, ilia = their, theirs, sia = its, own, ĉia = its, own, kia = its, own, ĉia = its, own, kia = its, own, ĉia = its, own.

Examples.—Mia patro, via frato, lia frato, ĝia onldo, kaj iliaj onklinoj, estas en la domo = My father, your brother, his sister, her uncle, and their aunts are in the house.

132. When a possessive pronoun stands alone, as in sentences like the following, it may or may not be preceded by the article la, at the writer’s option.

Examples.—Ĝiaj infanoj estas pli grandaj, ol ĉiaj = Her children are bigger than yours.

Note in the first example that ĉiaj is in the plural because it is in opposition to ĉiaj in the singular, which is an exception to the rule, 31 (c).

133. Mia is sometimes placed after a noun to denote affection.

Examples.—Patrino mia = Mother mine, or, Mother dear.

Fratino mia = Sister dear.
134. When a possessive pronoun refers to two or more nouns, it may, as in English, be repeated or not.

EXAMPLE.—Lia patro, (lia) patrino, kaj (lia) fratino estis en la domo = His father, (his) mother, and (his) sister were in the house.

134. (a). Personal pronouns, preceded by the preposition al, are sometimes used in a possessive sense.

EXAMPLES.—Li kovris al mi la orelojn = I covered my (to myself the) ears.
Li fermis al si la okulojn = He closed his (to himself the) eyes (see also para. 100).

135. Sia, Lia, etc. Great care must be taken not to use sia, when the sense requires one of the other possessives of the 3rd person, or vice versa. Sia can only refer to the subject of the sentence in which it occurs, and being reflexive, it can never form part of the subject of a sentence, so — Li diris al ni, ke lia (not, sia) hundo jus mortis = He told us that his dog had just died. Like its root si, it is used for the 3rd person, singular or plural, and may represent "his (own), her (own), hers, its (own), their (own), theirs, or ones (own)."

Since sia, being reflexive, can never form part of the subject of a sentence, we cannot say Li kaj sia edzino iris Parizon, because li and edzino are equally subjects of the same clause. But if we substitute kun for kaj, then li becomes the sole subject, and we can correctly say, Li kun sia edzino iris Parizon, or, Li iris Parizon kun sia edzino = He went to Paris with his wife. If we use kaj we must say, Li kaj lia edzino iris Parizon = He and his wife went to Paris.

136. In the first following examples sia refers to the subject of the sentence:

Mia patrino forgesis sian libron—My mother forgot (or, has forgotten) her book.
Tiuj infanoj perdis siajn gepatrojn = Those children have lost their parents.
La hundo amas sian mastron = The dog loves its master.
Oni devas ami sian najbaron, kiel sin mem = One must love one's neighbour as oneself. N.B.—Sin is here in the accusative owing to ellipsis, the words oni devas ami after kiel being understood (see para. 105).
137. In the following three sentences the possessive pronoun does not refer to the subject of the sentence, and therefore we use ialia, sialia, ialia, or ialia, as the case may be:

Li vidis mian arnikon kaj Han edzinon = He saw my friend and his (his friend’s) wife.

Si venis al mi hiera ŭ, por ke mi redonu ialian leterojn al i» = She came to me yesterday in order that I might return her letters to her.

La reĝo amas Johanon kaj lian ialion = The king loves John and his son.

N.B.—Here the English does not show whether it is John’s son or his own son whom the king loves, but in Esperanto it is clear (it is John’s son, because it would be sian Jilon; lian Jilon is in the accusative here, because the conjunction kaj connects like cases (see para. 266).

(a) Note in the following examples how the possessive varies in accordance with the construction of the sentence.

El tiuj sialaj amikinoj, si plej amas Marion = Of all her friends (female), she loves Mary best. (Here sialaj refers to ialia).

El sialaj amikinoj, Mario estas la plej atnata = Of all her friends, Mary is the most loved. (Here sialaj refers to some woman not mentioned).

Leginte sian libron, li ekdormis = After reading his book, he fell asleep. (Here sian refers to K, understood in leginte = When he had read his book, he...).

Leginte lian libron, li ekdormis = After reading his book, he fell asleep. (Here lian refers to some man not mentioned, who might have lent him the book).

Johano, legante sian libron, venki ialis de dormo = John, while reading his book, was overcome by sleep.

138. The following are sentences more complicated, showing the advantage of Esperanto over English, or indeed over most national languages, in respect of its great clearness of expression:

Petro skribis al Paŭlo, ke li konduku al li sian hundon = Peter wrote to Paul to bring him his dog (sian refers to Paul because ial = he (Paul) becomes the subject, and ial always, as we have said, refers to the subject of its own particular clause; ial, therefore, like had been the possessive, it would have been Peter’s dog).
PRONOUNS.

From the examples given in paragraphs 128, 135, 136, and 138, we see that the reflexive pronoun si and the possessive sia always refer to the subject (noun or pronoun) of their own clause.

(b). Si and sia are likewise used when the noun or pronoun to which they refer is not expressed, but only understood.

EXAMPLES—

"Si mia patrino petis sian Jilinon, ke sia donu al sia fratino 71 libron." This sentence in English, whichever of the possessives be used, would be "My mother requested her daughter to give (that she give) to her sister her book." Now the mother is the first subject in this sentence, therefore sia Jilinon is the mother's daughter (si would mean someone else's daughter). But afterwards si (the daughter) becomes the subject, therefore sia fratino would be the daughter's sister, and sia libron the daughter's book. Whether the sister be the mother's or the daughter's sister, the first possessive (sia or si) will decide.
51 139—HI. CORRELATIVE WORDS.

CORRELATIVE WORDS.
(Korrelativa Vortoj).

139. The 45 correlative words (see table, para. 147) form a very important part in the construction of the Esperanto language. Their uses and meanings are very easily learnt and remembered, since they have been exceedingly cleverly devised on a simple and uniform plan. They are all to be found in the list of Primary Words given in Part V.

140. They consist of nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and adverbs. Most of them can be applied to denote not only one word, but often expressions which require several English words to clearly define.

141. The words in the table (para. 147) are placed in series horizontally and vertically. All the words in each of the vertical series commence with the same letter, and in the horizontal series they have the same termination. It will be seen that the letter / is the first letter in the first vertical series, and that this is a central letter in each of the other words in the series. The first letter of a word conveys an idea of its meaning, and the terminal letters following / show how that idea is applied, and consequently the full meaning of the word.
CORRELATIVE WORDS. § 111—112.

(a) The initial letters convey the following ideas:

I. that the word is "indefinite."
C. "distributive" or "collective."
K. "interrogative" or "relative."
NEN- "negative" (see = no, not, and Y added for euphony).
T. "demonstrative."

(h) The terminal letters following I denote that the idea is to be applied, in accordance with the termination, as follows:

-A that it relates to "quality" or "the kind of" (adjectival).
-AL "motive" or "reason for" (adverbial).
-AM "place" (adverbial).
-E "time" (adverbial).
-EL "person" (adverbial).
-ES "possession" (pronominal).
-OM "quantity" or "number of" (adverbial).
-U "persons" or "things specified" (pronominal).

11. The correlative words are all complete in themselves, but some of them can be used as root-words, taking grammatical terminations when required by the sense to be conveyed. Those ending in the vowels I, E, U, O, must not necessarily be presumed to be the parts of speech these letters indicate; the letters are not grammatical terminations, they simply show, as before stated, how the idea conveyed in the preceding letter is to
be applied. Those ending in a vowel all take the accusative $N$, and those ending in $A$ and $U$ also take the plural $J$.

143. **The demonstrative pronouns**, $\text{tio} = \text{that}$ (thing), $\text{tiu} = \text{that one, the former}$, and sometimes $\text{cio}$, are followed by the separate word $\text{ci} = \text{nearest}$, to express the demonstrative pronoun “this.” $\text{ci}$ is invariable, but $\text{tio}$ and $\text{tiu}$ can be inflected as before stated. Thus $\text{tio} = \text{that}$ (thing), $\text{tiu ci} = \text{this}$ (thing) (lit., “that here”), $\text{tien ci}$ (accusative) = this (thing). $\text{tiuj = that one, the former}$, $\text{tiu ci} = \text{this one, the latter}$. $\text{tiu = that one}$, $\text{tiu ci} = \text{this one, the former}$. $\text{tiu = that one, the former}$, $\text{tiu ci} = \text{this one, the latter}$. Occasionally $\text{ci}$ is placed first, as $:\text{ci tiu = this one}$ (lit., “here that”). $\text{cio ci = all this}$.

144. **The adverb**, $\text{tie = there}$, is also followed by $\text{ci}$ to denote “here.” Thus $\text{tie = there}$, $\text{tie ci = here}$, $\text{tien}$ (accusative) = thither, $\text{tien ci = hither}$. Occasionally $\text{ci}$ is placed first, as $\text{ci tie = here, hereat}$.

145. **The interrogative or relative series** (viz., those commencing with $K$) may be followed by the word $\text{ajn = ever}$, as $\text{kia ajn = whatever kind of}$, $\text{kial ajn = whatever reason}$, $\text{kian ajn = whenever}$, $\text{kie ajn = wherever}$, $\text{kiel ajn = however}$, $\text{kies ajn = whosoever}$, $\text{kio ajn = whatever}$, $\text{kion ajn = however much}$, $\text{kio kion ajn = whoever}$, $\text{kio kion ajn = whichever}$.

Some writers use $\text{ajn}$ after other correlatives, but Dr. Zamenhof uses it himself only after the series $\text{kia}$, $\text{kial}$, etc. However, he does not say it is wrong to extend its use, for when asked the question whether it could be employed after the series $\text{ia}$, $\text{iad}$, etc., he replied that it could, because, in Esperanto, any word could be combined with any other.

146. **Grammatical terminations** and **suffixes** may be added to the correlatives if required, thus making them nouns, adjectives, verbs, adverbs, etc.,
as shown in the following examples. The hyphens are given to show the construction of the words, so should not be used in writing, except where ci occurs, as shown in brackets in the following examples:

\[\begin{align*}
\text{Čiam-a} & = \text{Everlasting, continual.} \\
\text{Čiam-e} & = \text{Everlasting, forever.} \\
\text{Čie-a} & = \text{Of everywhere.} \\
\text{Či-tie-a} & = \text{Of here.} \\
\text{Tie-a} & = \text{Of there.} \\
\text{Či-tie-ulo} & = \text{A man of this place.} \\
\text{Tie-ulo} & = \text{A man of that place.} \\
\text{Kioma} & = \text{Of what quantity.} \\
\text{Kioma horo estas?} & = \text{What time is it?} \\
\text{Neni-igi} & = \text{To reduce to nothing, destroy completely.} \\
\text{Neni-iği} & = \text{To become nothing, to vanish.} \\
\text{Tiam-a} & = \text{Of then, of that time.} \\
\text{Tiam-ulo} & = \text{A man of that time, a contemporary.} \\
\text{La kial-o} & = \text{The why and wherefore, the reason (cause).} \\
\text{Tiel-e} & = \text{In that way.}
\end{align*}\]
### Table of Correlative Words

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Quality</th>
<th>Indefinite</th>
<th>Distributive, General or Collective</th>
<th>Interrogative and Relative</th>
<th>Negative</th>
<th>Demonstrative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Kind of (adjectival)</td>
<td>IA</td>
<td>ČIA</td>
<td>KIA</td>
<td>NENIA</td>
<td>TIA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>some (any) kind of (any)</td>
<td>every kind of each, every (any sort of)</td>
<td>what kind of? of what kind? what at! ...... as</td>
<td>no kind of no, no such of no kind (not any kind)</td>
<td>such kind of such a of that kind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Motive</td>
<td>IAL</td>
<td>ČIAL</td>
<td>KIAL</td>
<td>NENIAL</td>
<td>TIAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reason for (adverbal)</td>
<td>for (some) reason (any) or cause</td>
<td>for every reason for all reasons</td>
<td>for what reason why? wherefore</td>
<td>for no (reason) cause</td>
<td>for that reason for such a reason therefore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time</td>
<td>IAM</td>
<td>ČIAM</td>
<td>KIAM</td>
<td>NENIAM</td>
<td>TIAM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(adverbial)</td>
<td>at (some) (any) time ever once</td>
<td>always every time for all time ever (at any time)</td>
<td>at what time? when</td>
<td>at no time never</td>
<td>at that time at such time then</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Place</td>
<td>IE</td>
<td>ČIE</td>
<td>KIE</td>
<td>NENIE</td>
<td>TIE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(adverbial)</td>
<td>in (some) (any) place somewhere, (anywhere)</td>
<td>everywhere in every place (anywhere)</td>
<td>in what place where</td>
<td>in no place nowhere (not anywhere)</td>
<td>in that place there yonder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manner (adverbial)</td>
<td>IEL</td>
<td>ČIEL</td>
<td>KIEL</td>
<td>NENIEL</td>
<td>TIEL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in some way (in any manner) somehow (anyhow)</td>
<td>(in) every manner (in) every way all ways</td>
<td>in what manner how? how? how? how? in no (manner) (way) nohow by no means not at all</td>
<td>in such a manner</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Possession (pronominal)</th>
<th>IES</th>
<th>ČIES</th>
<th>KIES</th>
<th>NENIES</th>
<th>TIES</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>somebody's (anybody's) (anyone's)</td>
<td>everyone's each one's</td>
<td>whose</td>
<td>no one's nobody's</td>
<td>that one's such a one's</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Thing (not specified; substential or pronominal)</th>
<th>IO</th>
<th>ČIO</th>
<th>KIO</th>
<th>NENIO</th>
<th>TIO</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>something (anything)</td>
<td>everything all things all</td>
<td>what (thing) which that which</td>
<td>nothing not anything</td>
<td>that (thing)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Quantity (adverbial)</th>
<th>IOM</th>
<th>ČIOM</th>
<th>KIOM</th>
<th>NENIOM</th>
<th>TIOM</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>some quantity somewhat rather, some a little (any)</td>
<td>every quantity all, the whole all of it</td>
<td>what quantity how much how many</td>
<td>no quantity none none at all</td>
<td>that quantity so much as many</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Individuality</th>
<th>IU</th>
<th>ČIU</th>
<th>KIU</th>
<th>NENIU</th>
<th>TIU</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>some one (anyone)</td>
<td>each one, each Čiu j=all, all the... everybody</td>
<td>who, he who which, that what one</td>
<td>no one nobody</td>
<td>that one the former</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Examples of the Use of Correlative Words.

148. In the following examples (paras. 149—159) we have taken the correlative words in the table in the nine horizontal series, since in this way we can best show how some of the words are used in pairs.

149. Series ending in A (quality, kind of), adjectival.

\[ \text{In} = \text{some sort of}, \text{some (any kind of, any), } a, \text{an.} \]
\[ \text{Cia} = \text{every kind of, every (any sort of).} \]
\[ \text{Kia} = \text{what a! what kind of? of what kind, ...as} \]
\[ \text{Nenia} = \text{no, no such, no kind of, of no kind (not any kind of).} \]
\[ \text{Tia} = \text{such a, such kind of, of that kind.} \]
\[ \text{Tia...kia} = \text{such ...as.} \]

Examples—On vi ne havas iun libron, kiu klerigos tion? = Have you not some book which will explain that?
\[ \text{Mi havas iun ideon kiel giu fari} = \text{I have some (or, an) idea how to do it.} \]
\[ \text{Ekster cia dabo} = \text{Beyond any (every sort of) doubt.} \]
\[ \text{Tiaj frazoj trovigas en cij libroj} = \text{Such (kind of) phrases are found in all kinds (sorts) of (or, any) books.} \]
\[ \text{Ni necias, kiel ili farisaj tioj, kioj ili estas} = \text{We do not know how they became what (such as) they are.} \]
\[ \text{Nenia antaiga sperto estas necesa} = \text{No (kind of) previous experience is necessary.} \]
\[ \text{Tiaj virinoj oni ciam estimas} = \text{Such a woman one always esteems.} \]
\[ \text{Mi donis al li la libron tian, kia gi estis} = \text{I gave him the book such as it was.} \]
\[ \text{Kia ajon li havas? = How old (what kind of age) is he?} \]
\[ \text{Kia estas la vetero? = How (what kind) is the weather?} \]
\[ \text{Komencante de kia ajn momento=Beginning at any (whatever) moment.} \]
\[ \text{Kia bela domo? = What a beautiful house!} \]
\[ \text{Kioj estas la kondicoj? = What are the stipulations (or terms)?} \]
\[ \text{Li estas fercoj, ni ne estas tiroj=They are proud, we are not so.} \]
\[ \text{Si ekscens ion tiun, kion ni mem komence ne povis kompreni=She began to feel something such as she herself at first could not understand.} \]
CORRELATIVE WORDS. ¶ 149—151.

Jas mi elscis iajn aferejn, kiuj ne plenas al mi—I have just learnt some things that do not please me (that I do not like).
Jen estas la monumento tia, kian oni gin priskribis=Here is the monument such as they described it.
Via ajo estas tia sama, kiel tiu de via frato=Your age is the same as your brother's.
N.B.—Do not confuse the series ending in \( A \) with that ending in \( U \).

**Examples.**—Kian libron vi bezonas?=What (sort of) book do you want? Kien libron vi bezonas?=What (or which) book do you want? Tia homo=Such a man, that sort of man. Tiu homo=That man. Cinj libroj=All (kinds of) books. Cinj libroj=All (or, all the) books. Mi gin preno, kia ajn gi estas=I shall take it whatever (sort of thing) it is.

150. **Series ending in AL** (motive, reason for), adverbial.

- **Tal** = for some reason or cause (for any reason).
- **Cial** = for all reasons, for every reason (for any cause).
- **Kial** = why? wherefore, for what reason.
- **Nenial** = for no reason, or cause.
- **Tial** = therefore, for that reason.

**Examples.**—Tal li subite forlasis Londonon=For some reason he suddenly left London.
Cial tio estas la plej bona=For every reason that is the best.
Kial vi ne respondis?=Why did you not answer?
Li nenial enu skribi al mi=He for no reason ceased writing to me.
Si neniam volis sekri miun konvilon, tial mi forlasis giu=She never would follow my advice, therefore I forsook her.
Mi ne povus imagi kiel ajn li gin faris=I cannot imagine why ever he did it.

151. **Series ending in AM** (time), adverbial.

- **Tam** = ever, some time (any time), once, one day, once upon a time.
- **Ciam** = always, for all time, ever (at any time).
- **Kiam** = when, at what time, as (relating to time).
- **Neniam** = never, at no time.
- **Tiam** = then, at that time.

**Examples**—Se iam mi reven=If ever I come (shall come). Tiu homi ĉi, ĉar iam morgaŭ estos tro malfrue=Come to-day, for any time to-morrow will be too late.
151—152. CORRELATIVE WORDS.

Čiam skribu legible = Always write legibly.
En tiuj okazoj ĉiam mankas io = On such occasions something is always wanting.
Kiam vi skribis tiel? = When did you write like that (thus)?
Kiam la pastro venas, diru al li la veron = When the priest comes (shall come), tell him the truth.
Tiam, kiam mi estis rica, mi ne estis felika, or, Kiam mi estis rica, tiam mi ne estis felika = At that time when (or, when) I was rich I was not happy, or, When I was rich then I was not happy, or the sentence might be simply Kiam mi estis rica, mi ne estis felika = When I was rich I was not happy.
Mi neniam skribas longajn letterojn = I never write long letters.
Mi neniam ausdis tion = I never heard that.
Sendu lin al mi, kiam aŭ li venos = Send him to me whenever he comes.
Kiam aŭ li venos? = Whenever will he come?

N.B.—Kiam is used after tiam, and any word denoting "time" except antaŭ = before, when at is generally used, but kiam is used occasionally after antaŭ (see para. 259 (3)).

Examples.—Unutage, kiam = One day, when. Tagon, kiam = On a day, when. Tu ĵus kiam = As soon as, immediately when. Jus kiam = Just as (when). Samtempe, kiam = At the same time, when. De l’tempo kiam = From the time when, since. Post l’ol kiam = After. Antaŭ ol li venis = Before he came.

152. Series ending in E (place), adverbial.
Je = somewhere (anywhere), in some (any) place.
Eie = everywhere, in every place, in all places (anywhere).
Kie = where, in what place.
Nenie = nowhere, in no place.
Tie = there, yonder, in that place. Tie ĉi = here, in this place.

Examples.—Mi ne poris trovi miun libron je en la ĉambro = I could not find my book anywhere in the room.
Ĉu vi metis ĝin tie? = Did you put it anywhere (somewhere)?
Ĉie mi trovis amikojn = Everywhere I found friends.
Tiu oni povas aĉeti tie = That can be bought (one can buy) anywhere (everywhere).
Kiea vi iras? = Where are you going?
Mi iras neniu = I am going nowhere.
CORRELATIVE WORDS. ¶ 152—154.

Kie estas la poŝtigicejo? = Where is the post office?
Gie estas tie, kie staras tiu domo = It is there where that house stands.
Kien vi iras?= Whither are you going?
Mi iras tie = I am going thither.
On vi estas tie ci?= Are you here?
Li venas tie ci = He is coming here.
Kie ajn li estas?= Wherever is he?
Kie ajn li estas, ti ne estas tie ci = Wherever he is, he is not here.

153. Series in EL (manner), adverbial.
Iol = somehow (anyhow), some way, in any manner.
Kieli = in every way, in every manner, all ways.
Neniel = how, in what manner, like, as.
Kiel = how, in what manner, like, as.
Neniel = no how, in no manner, not at all, by no means.
Kiel = thus, in that manner, like (that), so, as...
Kiel...kiel (in comparison) = as...as.

Examples.—Iol ti ĉiel sukcesas = Somehow he succeeds in every way.
Mi havis nenian ideon, kiel ĝia fari = I had no idea how to do it.
Kiel vi furtas?= How do you do? or, How are you?
Tia homo, kiel vi = Such a man as you.
Si neniel povis liu kompreni tiel longe, kiel ĝia lingvo francesa paroli = She could nohow (or, not at all) understand him as long as he spoke in the French language.
Same kiel la predento estas donita al ĝia homo, tiel la instinkto estas donita al la besto = Just as reason has been given to man, so instinct has been given to beasts.
Kiel eble plej baldaj = As soon as possible (lit., as possible, soonest).
Kaj tiel plu (often written k.t.p.) = And so on, and so forth.
Li estas tiel forta, kiel vi = He is as strong as you.
Kielaj malmulte = However little.

154. Series ending in ES (possession), pronominal.
Ies = somebody’s, someone’s (anyone’s, anybody’s).
Cies = everyone’s, each one’s.
Kies = whose.
Nenies = no one’s, nobody’s.
Ties = such a one’s, that one’s.
Correlative Words.

Examples.—Cies dero estas nenies = Anybody's (everybody's) duty is nobody's.
   Ies perdo ne estas iam ica gajno = Someone's loss is not always somebody's gain.
   Cies ilio estas divers = Everyone's idea was different.
   Kies libro estas ten ci ? = Whose book is this?
   Kies plumon ri uzas ? = Whose pen are you using?
   La domo, kies tegmen/on tiudas, aparantas al mia patro =
   The house whose roof you see belongs to my father.
   El kies cinj pajo, oni poras konkludi, ke il estas lacaj =
   From all of whose steps we can conclude that they are tired.
   Tiu libro estas tre malpura, kies ajn i gi estas = That book is very dirty, whosoever it is.
   Ties opinio ne multe valoras = Such a one's opinion is not worth much.
   Mi neniam sekras ties konsilou = I never take (follow) such a one's advice
   N.B.—Be careful not to use kies for " of which," when it
does not mean possession. We cannot say La afero kies ni
parolis for " The affair of which we spoke "; we must say
La afero, pri kio ni parolis.

155. Series ending in 0 (thing (not specified)
indefinite), substantival or pronominal.
   lo = something (anything).
   clo = everything, all things, all.
   kio = what (thing), which, that which.
   nenio = nothing, not any thing.
   tio = that (thing).  Tio ci = this (thing).

Examples.—Kio estas tio, kion ri skribas = What is that
(or, that which) you are writing?
   Lo esta sub la tablo, sed mi ne poris vidi iom tie = Something
was under the table, but I could not see anything (something)
there.
   Li vidis iom, kion li tre amis = He saw something he liked
very much.
   Estas tempo por cio = There is a time for everything.
   Cio tio ci montras, ke ... = All this shows that ...
   Cio, kion mi haras, estas (la) via = All I have is yours.
   Kio estis tio ci, kion mi vidis? = What is this that I see?
   Nenio estas prota = Nothing is ready.
   Mi ne montras traves = I found nothing.
   Tio haras malbonan odoron, kio ajn i gi estas = It (that) has a
bad smell, whatever it is.
   Li ne diris e c een corno pri cio tio ci (or, cio ci) al in = He
did not say even one word about all this to anyone.
CORRELATIVE WORDS. ¶ 156—157.

156. **Series ending in OM** (quantity), adverbial.

- **iom** = somewhat, some quantity, rather, a little, some.
- **ciom** = all, all of it, the whole, every quantity.
- **kiom** = how much, how many, what quantity.
- **neniom** = none, none at all, no quantity.
- **tiom** = so much, so many, as much, as many, that quantity.

**tiom**...**kiom** = as much (many)...as.

**Examples.**—*La vetero estas iom pli varma* = The weather is somewhat (a little) warmer.

- *Jen estas sukero, pren ĉiom da ĝi, sed ne pren ĉion* = Here is sugar, take some of it, but do not take all (the whole of it).
- *Kiom da ĉevaloj vi havas?* = How many horses have you?
- *Mi havas nenion* = I have none (none at all).
- *Tiom pli bone* = So much the better.
- *Tiom estas malfacile memori* = So much is difficult to remember.

- *Donu al mi tiom da akro, kiom da vino* = Give me as much water as wine.
- *Kiom vi scias* = As far (much) as you know.
- *Kiom olde* = As far (much) (many) as possible.
- *Kiom ajn da teo tiu ĉeesto povas enhavi, tiu ĉi povas enhavi duoble* = Whatever quantity (however much) of tea that chest will (can) hold, this one will hold twice as much.

157. **Series ending in U** (persons or specified things), pronominal.

- **iu** = someone (anyone).
- **ciu** = everyone, each one. **ciu** = all, all (of) the...
- **kiu** = who, he who, which, that, what one.
- **neniu** = nobody, no one.
- **tiu** = that (one), the former. **tiu** = this one, the latter.

**Examples.**—*Iu estas tie* = Someone is there.

- *Mi ne vidis iun* = I did not see anyone (someone).
- *Ĉiu ĉeesto havas siajn devojn* = Each age has its duties.
- *Si legis ĉiun libron, kiu ĉi povis ricevi* = She read every book she could get.
- *Ĉiu estas en la ĝardeno?* = Who is in the garden?
- *Mi konis ĉiun vinon, ĉiun mi renkontis* = I knew every man whom I met.
Mi legis ĉiujn librojn, kiujn vi pruntas al mi = I read all the books that you lent to me.

Tiu ĉi estas friska, sed tiu ĉi estas pli friska = That bread is new, but this is newer.

Tiu, kiu havas la harojn nigrajn = He who has the black hair.

Neniu estas tie, tial mi ŝatis nenion = No one was there, therefore I saw nobody.

Tiu homo, kiu aja li estas, ne estas malaperulo = That man, whoever he is, is not a fool.

Si farojis elzino de la bankiero, kiu li konis pli bone, ol ĉiun alian = She became wife of a certain (someone, a) banker, whom she knew better than anyone (every one) else.

Ĉiu vorto povas esti kombinata kun ĉiun alian = Any (each) word can be combined with any (each) other word.

Li pli sincere malp risking je li, ol kiu aja el ĉiuj parencoj = He was more sincerely sorry for him than any of his relations.

La ĉiulo povas en ĉiulo tempo (ĉiam) ĉiulo ĉiulo = The gun can be (will be able to be) loaded at any time.

Li ne permesos al ĉiu aja tion fari = He will not allow anyone (whatever) to do that.

158. General Remarks.—The foregoing remarks on the correlative words show the importance of a correct knowledge of their true meanings. Twenty or more of them will be found in nearly every page of the "Krestomatio." Note the following difference in meaning of those ending in :-

(a). -AL and -EL. It will be noticed that the series AL represent phrases in English commencing with "for," as:— "for some reason," "for every reason," etc.; whereas in the series EL the phrases commence with "in," as:— "in some way," "in every way." Bear in mind that -AL relates to motive, and -EL to manner. Note the difference of meaning in tial and tiel when followed by ke. Tial, ke = for the reason that, forasmuch as, because that. Tiel, ke = in such a manner that, so that. Some beginners seem to think that kial and kiel have no difference in meaning, which is equivalent to using "why" and "how" indiscriminately. Kial li faras tion? = Why (for what reason) is he doing that? Kiel li faras tion? = How (in what way) is he doing that?

(b). -O and -U. The series O is rarely used in the plural; it relates to things which are not mentioned by name or referred to by a personal pronoun. Examples.—Ĉio estas
What is that? Klu estas tlo = Who is that? Tiu estas mia frato, kiu promenadas kun sia edzo = That is my brother who is walking with his wife. Tlo estas, kion mi bezonis = That is what I wanted. Tlo, kio kreskas en mia giardeno, estas arbo = That which is growing in my garden is a tree. Tiu arbo, kio kreskas en mia giardeno, estas kverko = That tree, which is growing in my garden, is an oak.

Tlo is sometimes used for “it,” relating to both persons and things, as:—Tio (or, ĝi) estas mi, kiu vi vidis = It was I who saw him. Tio estas ponto = It (that) is a bridge.

(c). IA, IAL, etc. ĈIA, ĈIAL, etc. In the table of Correlative Words on pages 94, 95, it will be noticed that all the words in the columns commencing with I and Ĉ are shown (in brackets) to have the meaning of “any.” This is owing to a peculiarity in the English language by which, in some phrases, the word “any” carries the meaning of “some,” but in others “every.” The primary meaning of the “I” series gives the idea of “some,” and that of the “Ĉ” series of “every,” so we must be careful to note this distinction in translating “any” into Esperanto. Note the difference in the two phrases “Anyone can do that” and “Someone can do that”; in the former we mean “everyone,” but in the latter “someone one person.” So we say Ĉiu povas tion fari = Anyone can do that. Lu povas tion fari = Someone can do that. If, however, we make the phrase interrogative, negative, or conditional, then “any” does not give the idea of “every,” so we use lu, e.g., Ĉu lu povas tion fari? = Can anyone do that? Mi ne konas lun, kiu povas tion fari = I do not know anyone who can do that; or, Mi konas nenion, kiu povas tion fari = I know no one who can do that. Se lu povus tion fari, ĝi mirigus min = If anyone could do that he (or, she) would astonish me. Note here that lu does not show the sex, therefore we use the neuter pronoun ĝi.

(d). The “K” series, followed by ĉi, may also be used, as shown in the examples in para. 152, to give a stronger force to the word “any,” as:—Donu al mi lan libro, kian ĉi vi havas = Give me any book (whatever) you have. Mi vidas lin, kiun ĉi miiras Londonon = I see him whenever I go to London. Kion ĉi mi diris, tio estas nigrava = Anything (whatever) he said was unimportant, or, Whatever he said did not matter.
THE VERB (La Verbo).

159. There are no irregular verbs in Esperanto. Every verb is conjugated exactly the same.

160. The following are the grammatical terminations of all verbs, from which it will be seen that there are only three tenses (see paras. 214—236), three moods (see paras. 171—202), and six participles (see paras. 203—213).

TENSES.
-AS, Present, as: Mi faras = I do, or, make.
-IS, Past, " Vi faris = you did, or, made.
-OS, Future, " Ilī faros = they will do, or, make.

CONDITIONAL, or US MOOD.
-US, as: Se mi farus = if I did, or, should (or, would) do, or, were to do, or, make.

IMPERATIVE, or U MOOD.
-U, as: Diru al li, ke li tion faru = tell him to do that (lit., that he do that).

NI faru tion = let us do that.

INFinitive MOOD.
-I, as: Fari = to do, or, to make.

104
PARTICIPLES.

-ANTA, Active, Present, as: **Faranta** = doing.
  **Farante** (adv.) = in (when, or other prep.) doing.

-INTA, Past, as: **Farinta** = having done.
  **Farinte** (adv.) = in having done.

-ONTA, Future, as: **Faronta** = (being) about to do.
  **Faronte** (adv.) = on being about to do.

-ATA, Passive, Present, as: **Farata** = being done, or, done.
  **Farate** (adv.) = on being done.

-ITA, Past, as: **Farita** = been done, or, having been done.
  **Farite** (adv.) = on having been done.

-OTA, Future, as: **Farota** = (being) about to be done.
  **Farote** (adv.) = on being about to be done.

N.B.—For examples of the noun-participles see para. 209.

**CLASSES OF VERBS.**

There are two classes of verbs—transitive and intransitive.

Transitive Verbs (*transitivaj verboj*).

161. A transitive verb has two forms or voices, the active and the passive.
(a). A verb is in the active voice when the subject is acting upon the object. The object then, being governed by the verb, must be in the accusative case; as:—*Johano batis la hundon* = *John beat the dog.* Here *Johano* is the subject acting upon *hundon,* the object; therefore *hundon* is in the accusative.

(b). A transitive verb is in the passive voice when the subject is acted upon; as:—*La hundo estis batata de Johano* = *The dog was (being) beaten by John.* The preposition “by” or “with,” preceding the complement of a verb in the passive voice, is *de* or *per.* *De* is used for the agent, and *per* for the means or manner, as:—*La domo konstruita de mia patro estas kovrita per ardeojo* = *The house built by my father is (having been) covered with slates.*

Intransitive Verbs (*netransitiva verbo*).

162. An intransitive verb expresses an action confined to the actor, as:—*Johano dormas* = *John sleeps,* or, *is sleeping.* Intransitive verbs have therefore no object and no passive voice.

Auxiliary Verb (*helpa verbo*).

163. There is but one auxiliary verb in Esperanto, *estis* = *to be.* This verb is used to form the passive voice, and also all the compound tenses of the active voice. The verb *havis* = *to have* is in no sense an auxiliary, but an ordinary active verb denoting ownership, and governing the accusative case, as:—*Mi havas libro* = *I have a book.*

In English we frequently use the verb “*to be*” when some other verb would more exactly describe the state or position of an object. In Esperanto the following verbs are often used when we employ “*to be*,” viz., *kusis* = *to lie; sidis* = *to situate; sin trovis* = *to find oneself; trovis* = *to be found; staris* = *to stand; fartis,* or, *statis* = *to be (well or ill).*
Examples.—La krajono kulas (estas) sur la tablo.—The pencil is (lies) on the table. Sur la kameno staris (estis) feria baltroro, en kiu sin trovis (estis) bolanta akro; tra la fenestro, kiu sin trovis (estis) ajnul la porto, la vapore iris sur la korto.—On the hearth was (stood) an iron kettle, in which was (found itself) boiling water; through the window, which was near the door, steam went out into (on to) the yard. Kiel furtos (or, sutas) vi tu ro?—How is your cough?

Impersonal Use of Verbs.

164. Verbs used impersonally (senpersone) express a fact or action without indicating any person as the subject or actor. They are used only in English in the third person singular, preceded by “it,” expressed or implied, but in Esperanto they are entirely impersonal. The following are cases of their impersonal use:—

(a). Verbs which relate to the weather.

Examples.—Plivus = It rains. Pluros = It will rain. Fulnis= It lightened. Necjus= It would snow. Hajlis = It hailed.

(b). Verbs which are generally used with the subject expressed, but occasionally without.

Examples.—Okaza = It happens. Sajus = It will seem. Propreria al mi trovi = It was my fortune to find... (lit., it succeeded to me to find).

(c). The verb esti = to be, when used with an adjective-adverb, or passive participle-adverb.

Examples.—Estas pli bone forkuri = It is better to run away. Estas dirite, ke... = It is said that...

(d). In the compound tenses the participle takes the adverbial form, since there is no noun or pronoun with which it can agree (see para. 246).

Examples.—Se estas plurante hieri, mi ne estas porintaj eliri = If it had (should have) rained yesterday, we should not have been able to go out. Mi tranĉigos la keron, kiam estas plurante = I shall get the grass cut, when it has (will have) rained. (Tranĉigi = to get cut, see para. 237 (k) (2)).

107
Reflexive Verbs (refleksivaj verboj).

165. Reflexive verbs show the action of the subject on itself. They are used only when the subject really acts on itself, and not, as in many other languages, on other occasions. To be certain that one can repeat the personal pronoun, ask yourself whether you can do the act on another person. For instance, you yourself can talk, or dream, or speak, but you cannot talk, dream, or speak another person. You can, however, wash, shave, or dress either yourself or another; therefore verbs used reflexively with a personal pronoun must be in the active voice (see para. 128 on the use of the reflexive pronoun si, and para. 170, conjugation of a reflexive verb).

Examples.—Mi larmi niu = I wash myself. Li laris sin = He washed himself. Vi razo vii = You will shave yourself. Ii vestis sin = They dressed themselves.

166. When there are more subjects than one, and the act goes from one to another of the subjects, the word reciprocal, or the expression unu en alian, may be used. With the latter the personal pronoun is generally not repeated.

Examples.—Ili batis sin reciproke, or, Ili batis unu en alian = They beat one another. Ili jetis terbatojn al la kapo unu de la alia = They threw clods (lumps of earth) at one another’s heads.

167. CONJUGATION OF ESTI.

The following are the simple tenses and moods of esti, by the aid of which all the compound tenses in the active voice and all the tenses in the passive voice of every verb in Esperanto are formed. The compound tenses of esti, such as mi estas estanta = I am being, etc., are very rarely used.
verbs.

infinitive mood.

Esti = to be.

Participles.

Present, Estanta = being.
Past, Estinta = been, or, having been.
Future, Estonta = about to be, or, going to be.

Note that participles take the plural J and accusative N if required (see para. 207); also the adverbial E (see para. 209 (c)).

(indicative) mood.

present.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Singular.} & \quad \text{Plural.} \\
\text{I} & \quad \{ \text{I} \} \\
\text{We} & \quad \{ \text{We} \} \\
\text{He} & \quad \{ \text{He} \} \\
\text{She} & \quad \{ \text{She} \} \\
\text{They} & \quad \{ \text{They} \}
\end{align*}
\]

N.B.—The pronoun ci = thou is rarely used.

Past.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Singular.} & \quad \text{Plural.} \\
\text{I} & \quad \{ \text{I} \} \\
\text{We} & \quad \{ \text{We} \} \\
\text{He} & \quad \{ \text{He} \} \\
\text{She} & \quad \{ \text{She} \} \\
\text{They} & \quad \{ \text{They} \}
\end{align*}
\]

Future.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Singular.} & \quad \text{Plural.} \\
\text{I} & \quad \{ \text{I} \} \\
\text{We} & \quad \{ \text{We} \} \\
\text{He} & \quad \{ \text{He} \} \\
\text{She} & \quad \{ \text{She} \} \\
\text{They} & \quad \{ \text{They} \}
\end{align*}
\]

I 167.
The conditional or US mood has no tenses (see para. 192). We can show its meaning best by using the conjunction se, which frequently introduces it.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Plural</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(Se) Mi</td>
<td>(Se) Mi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; &quot;</td>
<td>&quot; &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Li, etc.</td>
<td>Li, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ni</td>
<td>Ni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI</td>
<td>VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>II</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Employed se as a conjunction.

The imperative or U mood has no tenses.

The following is its form and meaning in a chief proposition (see para. 199).

Singular.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mi estu</th>
<th>Estu</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mi, et</td>
<td>Estu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Li, Li, etc.</td>
<td>Estu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ni estu</td>
<td>Estu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI</td>
<td>Estu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>Estu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mi estu</th>
<th>Estu</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mi, et</td>
<td>Estu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Li, Li, etc.</td>
<td>Estu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ni estu</td>
<td>Estu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI</td>
<td>Estu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>Estu</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following is its meaning in a dependent proposition, which is usually introduced by the conjunction ke = that (para. 200).

Plural. Sing.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(Ke) Mi</th>
<th>(Ke) Mi</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>&quot; &quot;</td>
<td>&quot; &quot;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Li, etc.</td>
<td>Li, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ni</td>
<td>Ni</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI</td>
<td>VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>II</td>
<td>II</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Employed ke as a conjunction.
168. CONJUGATION OF AN ACTIVE VERB.

The conjugation of the compound forms is given in para. 169, but those in the active voice should never be used when the simple forms sufficiently convey the meaning.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Simple    Present, *Ten* = To hold.
Compound  "        Esti tenanta = To be holding.
           "        Past,    Esti teninta = To have held.
           "        Future, Esti tenonta = To be about (or, going), to hold.

PARTICIPLES.

Present, Tenanta = Holding.
Past,      Teninta = Having held.
Future,   Tenonta = About (or, going) to hold.

(INDUCTIVE) MOOD.

Present (Simple).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>MI</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Vi (or, ci)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Li, dh, dh</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MTA (or, ye)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

N.B.—ci = thou is rarely used. Vi = you is used, as in English, for both singular and plural; but when vi is plural, the participle in compound tenses takes the plural J.

If the action is continuous, add the suffix -AD, as mi tenadas = I keep on holding, or, do hold (habitually).
VERBS.

Past (Simple).

Mi, vi, etc., tenis = I, you, etc., held, have (or, had) held, was holding, did hold.

Future (Simple).

Mi, vi, etc., tenos = I, you, etc., shall hold, or, shall be holding.

CONDITIONAL MOOD (OR "US" MOOD).

The translation of this mood into English depends upon the context, viz., whether we use the auxiliaries "should," "would," "were," "had," or simply the English past tense. It is frequently introduced by the conjunction se = if (see paras. 190—194).

(Se) mi tenus = (If) I held, or, should hold, or, should be holding, or, were to hold, or, had held.

IMPERATIVE MOOD (OR "U" MOOD).

Singular.  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mi tenu</th>
<th>= Let me hold.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tenu</td>
<td>= Hold.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Li, ši, ĝi, tenu</td>
<td>= Let him, her, it hold.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ni tenu</td>
<td>= Let us hold.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Plural.  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mi tenu</th>
<th>= Let them hold.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tenu</td>
<td>= Hold.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(Ke) mi tenu = (That) I may, might, should hold

Sing.  

| "vi (or, at) tenu | =, you (or, thou) do. do. |
| "li tenu =, he do. do. |
| "ni tenu =, we do. do. |
| "vi tenu =, you (or, ye) do. do. |
| "ili tenu =, they do. do. |

Plural.  

(See remarks on the Imperative mood, paras. 195—202.)
### CONJUCAITION OF THE COMPOUND FORMS OF ACTIVE AND PASSIVE VOICES.

169. The following shows the compound tenses in the active and passive voices, and the compound forms of the conditional and imperative moods:

For the three persons of the plural add $J$ to the participle (see paras. 173, 174, 235, 236).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tense</th>
<th>Active Voice</th>
<th>Passive Voice</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>$\text{Mi esta\ tenanta}$</td>
<td>$\text{I am holding}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\text{I am (being) held}$</td>
<td>$\text{I am held}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>$\text{Mi estis tenanta}$</td>
<td>$\text{I was holding}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\text{I was (being) held}$</td>
<td>$\text{I was held}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>$\text{Mi estos tenanta}$</td>
<td>$\text{I shall be holding}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\text{I shall be (being) held}$</td>
<td>$\text{I shall be held}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>$\text{Mi esta\ teninta}$</td>
<td>$\text{I have held}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\text{I have been, or, was held}$</td>
<td>$\text{I had held}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>$\text{Mi estis teninta}$</td>
<td>$\text{I had been held, or, was held}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\text{I had been held, or, was held}$</td>
<td>$\text{I had been held}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>$\text{Mi estos teninta}$</td>
<td>$\text{I shall have held}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\text{I shall have been held}$</td>
<td>$\text{I shall have been held}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present</td>
<td>$\text{Mi esta\ tenonta}$</td>
<td>$\text{I am about (or, going) to hold}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\text{I am about (or, going) to be held}$</td>
<td>$\text{I am about to be held}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past</td>
<td>$\text{Mi estis tenonta}$</td>
<td>$\text{I was about (or, going) to hold}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\text{I was about (or, going) to be held}$</td>
<td>$\text{I was about to be held}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>$\text{Mi estos tenonta}$</td>
<td>$\text{I shall be about to hold}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\text{I shall be about to be held}$</td>
<td>$\text{I shall be about to be held}$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
§ 160. VERBS.

CONDITIONAL, OR "US" MOOD.

Active Voice (Compound Form) and the Passive Voice.

Se mi estus tenanta = If I should be, or, were, holding.

   "   tenata = "   be, or, were (being)
        held, or, if I be
        held.

   "   teninta = "   have held, or, if I
        had held.

   "   tenita = "   have been held, or, if
        I had been, or,
        were, held.

   "   tenonta = "   be, or, were, about
        to hold, or, if I
        were to hold.

   "   tenota = "   be about to be held, or,
        if I were to be held.

N.B.—In the active voice use the simple form instead of the present and past participle, unless the compound form is necessary to emphasize the meaning. For instance, in the sentence "He would not have struck me if you had held him," we use the past participle to show the anteriority, but we need not use it for the first clause; so we say:—

Li ne frapus min, se vi estus teninta lin. If we use the simple form, Li ne frapus min, se vi tenus lin, it would be read:—"He would not strike me if you held him," unless the context clearly showed the action was completed. We could, however, use the adverb antaiie instead of the compound form, and say:—Li ne frapus min, se vi antaiie tenus

lin = He would not have struck me if you had held him (lit., if you beforehand held him) (see para. 226 (a) and remarks on the Conditional mood, paras. 190—194).
VERBS.

IMPERATIVE, OR "U" MOOD.

Active Voice (Compound Form) and the Passive Voice.

(Por ke) mi estu tenanta = (In order that) I may be holding.

" tenata = (In order that) I may be held.

" teninta = (In order that) I may have held, or, might hold.

" tenita = (In order that) I may have been held, or, might be held.

" tenonta = (In order that) I may be about to hold.

" tenota = (In order that) I may be about to be held.

(See remarks on the Imperative mood, paras. 195—202).

170. CONJUGATION OF A REFLEXIVE VERB.

(INDEFINITE MOOD).

Present (Simple).

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Singular} & : \\
\text{Mi lavas min} & = \text{I wash myself.} \\
\text{Vi lavas vin} & = \text{You wash yourself.} \\
\text{Li, ši, ģi, lavas sin} & = \text{He, she, it washes himself, herself, itself.}
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{Plural} & : \\
\text{Mi lavas nin} & = \text{We wash ourselves.} \\
\text{Vi lavas vin} & = \text{You, ye wash yourselves.} \\
\text{Ili lavas sin} & = \text{They wash themselves.}
\end{align*}
\]
Present (Compound) with the Three Participles.

Il ne estas lavantaj sin = They are not washing themselves.
Ču ni estas lavintaj nin? = Have we washed ourselves?
Mi estas lavonta min = I am about (or, going) to wash myself.

Past (Simple).

Si ne lavis sin = She did not wash herself.
Ču ni lavis nin? = Did we wash ourselves?
Ču ili ne lavis sin? = Did they not wash themselves?

Past (Compound), with the Three Participles.

Kiam vi estis lavantaj vin? = When were you washing yourselves?
Ni estis lavintaj nin = We had washed ourselves.
Kiam li estis lavonta sin? = When was he about (or, going) to wash himself?

Future (Simple).

Ču ni lavos nin? = Shall we wash ourselves?
Li ne lavos sin = He will not wash himself.

Future (Compound), with the Three Participles.

Si estos lavanta sin = She will be washing herself.
Kiam li estos lavinta sin? = When will he have washed himself?
Mi estos lavanta min = I shall be about (or, going) to wash myself.
CONDITIONAL, OR "US" MOOD (Simple Form).

Se li lavus sin = If he should wash himself.
Ču li lavus sin, se...? = Would she wash herself, if...?

Conditional (Compound), with the Three Participles.

Se ni estus lavantaj nin klam... = If we should be washing ourselves when...
Ču ili estus lavintaj sin, se... = Would they have washed themselves if...?
Se li estus lavonta sin klam .. = If he should be about to wash himself when...

IMPERATIVE, OR "U" MOOD.

Chief Form (Simple).

Singular.

Mi lavu min = Let me wash myself.
Lavu vin = Wash yourself.
Ne lavu vin = Do not wash yourself.
Li lavu sin = Let him wash himself.
Li ne lavu sin = Let him not wash himself.

Plural.

Ni lavu nin = Let us wash ourselves.
Ni ne lavu nin = Let us not wash ourselves.
Lavu vin = Wash yourselves.
Ne lavu vin = Do not wash yourselves.
Ili lavu sin = Let them wash themselves.
Ili ne lavu sin = Let them not wash themselves.

MOODS (Modoj).

171. (a). The moods in Esperanto differ from those in English. They are three in number, the Conditional, Imperative, and Infinitive. Dr. Zamenhof

117
makes no mention of any other mood. In Rule 6 (see para. 91) he mentions only the three tenses:—

**Present**, ending in -IS, **Past**, in -IS, **Future**, in -OS; the **Conditional** (kondiĉa) mood in -US, the **Imperative** (ordona) mood in -U, and the **Infinitive** (sendiĉa) mood in -I; the three **Active** Participles:— Present, -INT, Past, -INT, Future, -OVT, and the three **Passive** Participles:— Present, -IT, Past, -IT, Future, -OT. These twelve forms serve amply to represent all the various tenses and moods in English. However, to make the forms of the verb clearer to the student accustomed to the use of our indicative mood, we have called the tenses -IS, -IS, -OS, by that name.

(b) **There is no Subjunctive mood**, and it is not required. This mood has been defined as one governed by conjunctions, but since conjunctions have no bearing on any mood in Esperanto, it is clear that a mood, under the name of "subjunctive," is not required (see remarks on ke, para. 198).

The **English Subjunctive**, in the **Present** and **Perfect**, is represented by the Esperanto **Imperative**, and in the **Imperfect**, **Future**, and **Future Perfect**, by the Esperanto **Conditional** mood. The auxiliaries "may" and "might" of the English Subjunctive are often rendered by the aid of such verbs as prerez, por, or some word expressing possibility, as ĉle (see vera. 237 (m)).

172. The **mood** to be used in Esperanto is determined solely by the meaning the speaker wishes to convey, and as Esperanto is a purely logical language, we must be careful not to pedantically copy our own, but use the logical mood and tense required by the ideas we wish to convey. If therefore we translate English literally into Esperanto, we may, in some points, be misunderstood by a foreigner, although our translation might be perfectly clear to an
VERBS (Moods).  § 172—175.

Englishman. For instance, our verbs in the present and past tenses of the Indicative and Subjunctive moods have the same inflection in the first person singular and in the three persons of the plural. In Esperanto there is no such ambiguity. In such a phrase as "If they were rich, they would be happy" we must be careful to use the proper mood. Both the first and second propositions are conditional or suppositive, therefore in Esperanto the Conditional mood is logically employed, as:—

Se ili estus riĉaj, ili estus felicaj = If they were rich, they would be happy. There is nothing of the past in the first proposition, the idea to be conveyed is of something that has not occurred, but which might occur.

THE INFINITIVE MOOD (Sendifina Modo).

173. The Infinitive mood in the active voice is formed by adding -I to the root of the verb for the simple tense, and by the auxiliary verb esti = to be with one of the active participles -ANTA, -INTA, -ONTA of the verb for the compound tenses, as:—

Present (simple), skribi = To write.

Past (compound), esti skribanta = To be writing (lit., to be being-writing).

Future (compound), esti skribinta = To have written (lit., to be having-written).

174. The passive voice is formed by the verb esti and one of the passive participles, -ATA, -ITA, -OTA.

Present, esti skribata = To be written (lit., to be being-written).

Past, esti skribita = To have been written (lit., to be having-been-written).

Future, esti skribita = To be about to be written.

175. The Infinitive mood expresses the state of action denoted by the verb.

119
176. In Esperanto the infinitive is almost always used without a preposition, whereas in English the preposition “to” nearly always precedes the verb.

Examples.—Mi volas terni dansi = I wish to learn to dance. Li devigis min kuri = He compelled me to run. Mi hostas esti lündata de li = I am ashamed to be praised by him. Mi devas peni atingi tion reculoton = I must try to attain that result.

177. The only prepositions that can be used before the infinitive are:—(a). Por = To, or, in order to. (b). Anstataŭ = Instead of. (c). Antaŭ ol = Before.

178. Por is used before the infinitive, when in English for the word “to” we could substitute the words “in order to” or “for to”; or, in some cases, when we could use “for” or “of” with a participle instead of the infinitive (para. 259 (21)).

Examples.—La plej bonaj metodoj por rieiri gis... = The best methods to (in order to) obtain it (or, for, or, of obtaining it)... Mi havas tion por diri al vi = I have something to (for to) say to you. Kion vi havas ankoraŭ por skribi? = What have you still to (for to) write? La tempo por legi = The time to read (for reading). Tio estas malfacila por kompreni = That is difficult to (for to) understand.

179. Anstataŭ and Antaŭ ol are used before the infinitive, when in English we use the participle.

Examples.—Anstataŭ triki = Instead of drinking. Anstataŭ agi honeste, li farigis kielisto = Instead of acting honestly, he became a thief. Antaŭ ol manigi = Before eating. Antaŭ ol foriri, ili surmitis la ĉapelojn = Before going away, they put on their (the) hats.

180. As in English, the infinitive is used:—

(a). As the subject when the act demonstrated is general.

Examples.—Erari estas homo = To err is human. Bone peni kaj bone agi maldas por viri bone kaj felice = To think well and to act well suffice for living well and happily.
VERBS (MOODS). ¶ 180—184.

(b) As the complement to explain an idea.

**Examples.** — Vi sues agi; biu se agas, tie se viras = To live is to act; he who acts not, lives not. Li eosis kuris = He ceased to run (running, or, from running).

181. The infinitive, used thus as the subject, resembles a noun, but, of course, never takes the article before it. The qualifying word, used as its predicate, takes the adverbial -E. The infinitive, when used as the subject, can always be changed into the noun by substituting -O or -ADO for -I; the noun then takes the article, since it is used in a general sense (see 99 (a)).

**Examples.** — Sei estas utile = To know (or, to have knowledge) is useful; or, Li seio estas utile = Knowledge is useful. Lra eases agrabla okupo, or, La bigodo eases agrabla okupo = Reading is an agreeable occupation.

182. The infinitive, or its noun, is used for the gerund, or a gerundial phrase in English.

**Examples.** — Promenadi estas enige, or, La promenado estas enige = Walking is healthy. Instrui infanajj diligentaj (or, La instruindo al infanajj diligentaj) estas agrabla okupo = Teaching diligent children is an agreeable occupation.

183. Occasionally another mood, a participle, or the suffix -EBLA is used for our infinitive (para. 275 (e)).

**Examples.** — Vi hone faris, ke vi venis (or, venante) = You did well to come (that you came). Diru do al li, ke li al mi respondu = Tell him, then, to answer me. Estos pli siga, se ni ve putilos domen = It will be wiser not to walk (go on foot) home (lit., if we shall not walk). Estas malfacile rest-kontuha sindoumo pli pleza, al li = It would be difficult to meet with more complete devotion than his. Si ejeinis (este) forgesinta, ke si estas maljumulo = She seemed to have forgotten that she was an old woman.

184. Sometimes the infinitive is used when we use another mood or the participle.

**Examples.** — Mi prenos minia glikajo kaj iros glitii = I shall take my skates and go skating. Mi ecos kanti, se vi farudas tion da bruo = I shall cease singing if you go on making so much noise. Mi kredis videi epon = I thought I saw a ship.
185. In the following examples it will be seen that the infinitive (present or past) is used in Esperanto after a noun, adjective, or participle, when in English a participial form is usually employed, as:—

La desiro morti=The desire of dying (to die). La geo esti
venkinta=The joy of having conquered. Tro laus marst=
Too tired for walking. Lerta paroli=Clever in speaking. Bona por manš=Good for eating.

186. As stated in para. 171 (a), the indicative is not an Esperanto mood, but we use the name in order to more clearly explain to the English student the present, past, and future tenses of Esperanto verbs.

The Indicative mood, in the Active Voice, has three terminations, viz., -IS, for the Present, -IS for the Past, and -OS for the Future simple tenses. For the Compound tenses the auxiliary verb esti=to be, with one of the three Active participles, -ANTA, -INTA, -ONTA of the verb, is used.

187. The Passive Voice is formed by the auxiliary esti with one of the Passive participles -ATA, -ITA, -OTA.

188. By the Indicative mood we express something as actually true, either affirmatively, or negatively, or interrogatively. It is therefore the mood of certainty.

Examples.—La patro venas=Father comes, or, is coming. Patrino venis=Mother came, has come, or, did come. Kiam min frato venas, mi forios=When my brother comes (shall come), we will go away. Se li estas malena, mi senkulpigas liin=If he is ill, I excuse him. Li estis juste rekompenca=He had been justly rewarded. Oni devas pardonii al li=One must pardon him. Li estis amata de ciuj=He was (being) loved by all. Mi estas vestita de du horoj=I have been dressed for two hours (lit., I am having-been-dressed from two hours).
189. **The Indicative** is therefore obligatory in Esperanto after verbs, adjectives, participles, and nouns expressing in a positive manner what one thinks or feels about an act presented as certain.

**Examples.** — *Mi esperas, ke li venos hodiaŭ = I hope that he will come to-day.*  
*Si ne estas certa, ĉu Petro sukcesis = She is not sure whether Peter succeeded (or, has succeeded).*  
*Mi ne dubas, ke li venos = I do not doubt that he will come.*  
*Mi timas, ke la respondon alvenos, dum mi estas promenado = I fear that the answer will arrive whilst I am (shall be) taking a walk.*  
*Mi timas, ke li venos, kaj aliaj dektoj estas ĝardenon.*  
*I fear that he will come, and possibly (perhaps) damage (or, may damage) the garden.*  
*Mi ne dubas, ke ĉi estas certaj mi alvenos = I do not doubt that she will be (will have been) dressed when I arrive.*  
*Ĉi vi opinias, ke li estas ĉiuj rekomenditaj? = Do you think that he has been justly rewarded?*

**THE CONDITIONAL MOOD (Kondicia Modo).**

190. **In the Active Voice** the Conditional mood is formed by adding -US to the root of the verb for the simple form, and by ESTUS and one of the participles -ANTA, -INTA, -ONTA for the compound forms. These compound forms are not often used.

191. **In the Passive Voice** it is formed by ESTUS and one of the participles -ATA, -ITA, -OTA.

192. It shows that the matter spoken of is conditional, namely, that it depends on supposition; that an act had not taken place (past), and was not taking place (present), but that it might happen if something else actually occurred. In English the pluperfect, future, and future perfect tenses of the subjunctive mood represent the Conditional mood in Esperanto.

193. After the conjunction “if,” expressing a supposition, both the chief and dependent propositions are in the Conditional mood in Esperanto, when the act is conditional.
193—195. VERBS (MOODS).

Examples.—Se li estus riĉa, li havus multajn amikojn = If he were rich, he would have many friends. Se vi volus, vi estus felikas = If you wished, you would be happy. Se ni estus avertita, ni estus defendintaj vivus = If we had been (should have been) warned, we should have defended you. Se li foriris, li riskus, ke la patrino ne trovus tiun = If he went (should go) away he would risk that his (the) mother would not find him.

193. (a). Note the various ways in which estus may be translated with the present and past passive participles in the following two sentences:—

1. Se li estus sendata Berlinon, li estus detigita la sia edzinon hejme. (If he should be sent to Berlin he would be compelled to leave his wife at home.)

2. Se li estus sendita Berlinon, li estus detigita la sia edzinon hejme. (If he had been sent to Berlin he would have been compelled to leave his wife at home.)

194. As in other languages, the conditional is used in Esperanto to attenuate or soften an expression that would be harsh or imperative, if the verb were in the indicative; in fact, such attenuation implies some unexpressed condition.

Example.—Mi volas, ke tiu laboro estu finita hodiaŭ respera = I should like that work (to be) finished this evening. Here the condition might be, “if you possibly can do it” (see para. 202 as to estu, Imperative mood, for the Infinitive).

THE IMPERATIVE MOOD (Ordana Modo).

195. In the Active Voice the Imperative (or "U") mood is formed by adding -U to the root of the verb, and by estu and one of the participles -ANTA, -INTA, or -ONTA for the compound forms; but the latter are very rarely used.

196. **In the Passive Voice** it is formed by *estu* and one of the participles *-AT*A, *-ITA*, or *-OTA*.

197. **The Imperative mood implies** order (*ordono*), purpose (*celo*), entreaty (*peto*), wish (*volo*), obligation (*devo*), fitness (*konveno*), necessity (*neceso*), merit (*merito*), intention (*intenco*), etc.

198. **The Imperative is used** not only in a chief but also in a dependent proposition, and in the latter case it is usually introduced by the conjunction *ke* = *that*; but it must be borne in mind that conjunctions have no more influence in the Imperative than they have in other moods (paras. 171, 263), although when *ke* is followed by the imperative we translate the phrase into English either by some tense of the subjunctive mood, or, perhaps, more frequently, by the infinitive.

199. **In a chief proposition** it is used to command or entreat, and when the verb of a chief proposition is in the Imperative, the verb of the dependent proposition is also in that mood.

**Examples.**—*Venu tien ĉi* = *Come here.* *Donu al mi tiun libro* = *Give me that book.* *Li venus tien ĉi tuj* = *Let him come here at once.* *Ni iru Parizo morgu* = *Let us go to Paris to-morrow.* *Do ne maltrankvulo riĉ or; *Vi do ne maltrankvulo!* *pri la afero* = *Do not then trouble yourself about the matter.* *Ordonu, ke li venu* = *Order him to come (that he come).* *Diru al ĝi, ke ĝi foriru* = *Tell her to go away (that she go away).* *A tempted, ke vi ne falu* = *Take care not to fall (or, lest you fall).* *Ni ne toleru, ke li tiamaniere kontraŭstaru al ni* = *Let us not suffer him in that way to oppose us (or, Let us not tolerate that he oppose us in that manner).* *Ni zorgu, ke li neniu poru difteti* = *Let us take care that he can damage nothing.* *Diru al li, ke mi desiras, ke li estu silenta* = *Tell him that I desire him to be silent (that he be silent).* For other examples see para. 237 (m).

200. **In a dependent proposition** the Imperative is also used when the verb in the chief proposition,
although not in the Imperative, implies order, entreaty, wish, etc., as mentioned in para. 197. And also after such verbs as, to advise, invite, write, etc., etc., when the idea to be conveyed is in the nature of an order, wish, etc. (paras. 58 (a), 237 (m) (3)).

Examples.—Mi ordonis al li, ke li donu al mi la libron = I ordered him to give me the book. Mi petas, ke vi sendu al mi la hundon = I beg you to send me the dog. Li ne postulis, ke mi fermu la fenestron = He did not require me to shut the window. Mi rolas, ke vi skribu al via frato = I wish you to write to your brother. Estas neces, ke ni tiau nru = It is necessary that we go thither. Vi meritas, ke oni pendigu vin = You deserve to be hanged (that they hang you). Mi bezonas, ke li venu = I want him to come (I have need that he come). Mi ne rolas, ke li venu = I did not wish him to come (that he should come). Si konsilis, ke mi ne sendu la leteron = She advised me not to send the letter (she advised “do not send the letter”). Mi lin tien ĉi ĉi ĉi ĉe, ke li klariyu la aferon = I invited him here to explain (that he might explain) the matter. Mi skribis, ke mi ne venu hodiaŭ = They wrote to me not to come to-day (They wrote that I should not come to-day, or, They wrote “do not come to-day”).

201. The expression por ke = in order that, to the end that, so that, etc., always is followed by the imperative, because this expression implies “order.”

Examples.—Por ke vi poru pagi tian ĉi ĉalton, estas neces, ke vi kunportu sufiĉe grandan sumon da monon = In order to be able to pay (in order that you may be able to pay) this debt it is necessary for you to bring (that you bring) a sufficiently large sum of money. Por ke vi estu elkitita, ci bezonas latia kun ekstema energio = In order to be elected (that you may have been elected), you need to fight with extreme energy. Por ke oni rekompencu vin, konvenas, ke vi tio ĉi meritu = In order that they may reward you, it is fitting that you merit it. Mi rolas ĉi tiu fari, por ke vi estu kontenta je mi = I wish to do everything to satisfy you (so that you may be satisfied with me). Responde al mi antaŭ morgaŭ, por ke mi sciu, kion mi devos diri al li = Answer me before to-morrow, so that I may know what I must (shall have to) say to him. Mi rolas, ke li estu ordonata atendi man alvenon = I wish that he may be ordered to await my arrival, or, I wish him to be ordered to await my arrival.
201. (a). **The compound forms** of the imperative in the active voice are very rarely used, but it is possible they may be occasionally required to give exactitude to an expression.

**Examples.**—Mi deziras, ke li estu min atendanta en la stacidomo je la dua horo morgaŭ postoapplyne = I desire that he be awaiting me in the station at 2 o'clock to-morrow afternoon. 

Estas necesse, ke li estu fininta sian laboron, je la tria horo = It is necessary that he have finished his work at 3 o'clock. 

Mi ne volas, ke li estu fininta sian laboron, kiam mi alvenos, sed ke li estu finanta gin = I do not wish that he shall have finished his work when I (shall) come, but that he be about to finish it.

202. From the examples given of the use of the Imperative mood, we see that in Esperanto the verb in a dependent proposition is almost always preceded by the conjunction ke = that, and that the English rendering generally puts the verb in the infinitive, the conjunction being omitted, or if it be retained, that the verb is in the subjunctive mood. It is not generally advisable to translate this infinitive rendering literally into Esperanto, except when the actor of the first verb is also the actor of the second.

**Examples.**—Mi volas lin ridi morgaŭ = I wish to see him to-morrow. 

La lernisto deziris rekompensi la knabon = The schoolmaster desired to reward the boy. 

Mi bezonas forte labori, se ni deziras fini la falŭdon kieliai respre = We shall need to work hard if we wish to finish the mowing this evening.

**The Participles (Participoj).**

There are three forms of the participle, viz.:- The changeable or adjectival in -A, the unchangeable or adverbial in -E, and the substantival in -0.

203. **In the active voice** the adjectival is formed by adding -ANTA, -INTA, -ONTA to the root of the verb, as:—

Present, **skribanta** = Writing (lit., being writing). 
Past, **skribinta** = Having written. 
Future, **skribanta** = About to write.
204. **In the passive voice** by adding -ATA, -ITA, -OTA, as:

- Present, Skribata = Written, or, being written.
- Past, Skribita = Been written, or, having been written.
- Future, Skribota = About (or, going) to be written.

205. **The active participles**, preceded by the auxiliary verb esti = to be, in its various moods and tenses, form the compound tenses of the active voice.

206. **The passive participles**, with the verb esti, form all the moods and tenses in the passive voice.

207. **Participles**, like adjectives, agree in number and case with the nouns or pronouns to which they refer.

**Examples**—Ni estas vidinta la viron = We have seen the man. Si vidis la viron batantajn sian edzon = She saw the men beating her husband. Ni vidis krimojn elfarajn ĉiutage sur la stratoj = We see crimes being perpetrated daily in the streets.

208. **All the participles** can be used as adjectives, and also as nouns and adverbs, by substituting -O for -A for a noun, and -E for -A for an adverb. The words still retain the signification of the tense of the participle. Participles and participial adverbs in the active voice govern the accusative.

209. **Examples in the active voice.**

(a). **Participial nouns**, as—La leganto = The reader (person now reading). La leginto = The reader (person who has been reading). La legonto = The reader (person about to read).

**Examples**—La leganto havas bonan vocon, sed la leginto havis pli bonan; mi kredas, tamen, ke la legonto havos la plej bonan vocon el ĉiuj = The (present) reader has a good voice, but the (previous) reader had a better; I believe, however, that the (coming) reader will have the best voice of all. Tiu ĉi idea okupis la grandan pensaniston ĝis la fino de lia vivo = This idea occupied the great thinker up to the end of his life.
(b). **Participial adjectives** agree with their nouns in number and case, but in number only when *predicative* (see remarks on adjectives, paras. 36, 108, 110, also para. 87 (d)).

**Examples.** — *La mortanta homo vidis mortitan virinon sur la apuda lito.* The dying man saw a dead woman in the next bed. *Sipalii kaj ŝajnis kiel virino mortontis.* She grew pale and appeared like a woman about to die. In the above sentences participial nouns might be used, when the translation in English would be word for word the same, as : — *La mortanta vidis mortitanon sur la apuda lito.* *Sipalii kaj ŝajnis kiel mortontino.* This shows the wonderful flexibility of Esperanto!

(c). **Participial adverbs** are invariable.

**Examples.** — *Legante ni lernas.* In reading we learn. *Fininte sian laboron, li iris domen.* Having finished his work, he went home. *Aĉetoj librojn, li petas, ke mi ŝunutu al li tri šilingoj.* Being about to buy a book, he begs me to lend him (that I lend him) three shillings.

210. **Examples in the passive voice.**

(a). **Participial nouns,** as : — *La dirato* = The person being spoken of, or, the person in question. *La dirito* = The aforesaid (person). *La dirito* = The person about to be spoken of.

**Examples.** — *La pentigitina nun aperis sur la elponto.* The woman about to be hanged now appeared on the scaffold. *La batito tute meritis la penon, kiu la batito donis al li.* The beaten one quite deserved the punishment that the beater gave him.

(b). **Participial adjectives and adverbs.** *La konstruata domo* = The house under construction. *La konstruita domo* = The (actually) constructed house. *La konstruota domo* = The house (about) to be constructed. *Konstruota* does not show obligation to construct, but simply that it is intended to build the house, and that it will be eventually built.
210—212. **Verbs (Participles).**

**Examples.**—*Li venis al mi tute ne atendite* = He came to me quite unexpectedly. *Ne estas atendite ke li venos* = It is not expected (being expected) that he will come. *La domo estas vendita morgaŭ* = The house is to be sold to-morrow.

**N.B.**—Note that when the subject is not expressed, the participle takes the adverbial form (see para. 245).

211. **Relation of the participle to the subject.**

—(a). When a participle, relating to the subject of a sentence, but not qualifying it, expresses the circumstances, manner, time, occasion, etc., of an act, it takes the adverbial form.

**Examples.**—*Promeneante sur la strato, mi falis* = (While) walking in the street, I fell. *Tvorinte ponon, mi gin manĝis* = Having found an apple, I ate it (see para. 245 (a)).

(b). If, however, the participle does not relate to the subject of the sentence, we must either change the construction so as to make the participial portion of the sentence relate to the subject, or use another mood with a conjunction, adverb, etc.

For instance, we can say in English, "The enemy having run away, we crossed the bridge," but we cannot translate this literally into Esperanto, because "having run away" does not relate to those who crossed the bridge; therefore it would be wrong to say *La malamikoj forkuris, ni traveris la ponton.* So we must change the construction as "Having put to flight (made to run away) the enemy, we crossed the bridge" = *Forkurigis la malamikojn, ni traveris la ponton.*

Or, the best construction would be:—"After the enemy ran away, we crossed the bridge" = *Post kapin la malamikoj forkuris, ni traveris la ponton.* In the sentence "Swimming in the lake, the man saw a large swan" it is not clear whether the man or the swan was swimming, but in Esperanto there is no ambiguity. *Najdonante sur la lago, la homo vidis grandan cignon.* Here the participle, *nejdonante*, relates to the man, the subject of *vidis*. If we wish it to relate to the swan, we make it agree with *cignon*, and say, *Najdonante sur la lago*, etc. But it would be better to alter the order, *La homo vidis grandan cignon najdonante sur la lago.*

212. **Participial expressions** with prepositions.

(a). **Without** can be rendered by the negative *ne* and an adverbial participle.

139
VERBS (PARTICIPILES). - § 212—213.

Examples.—Le aleni, non avertite mini: he arrived without (not) having warned me. Mi or posse bom vi juri, ne estat tensa submuta: I shall not be able to do this without (not) being supported. Mi iru al la danje, no tinunte la morton: Let us go to (the) danger without (not) fearing death.

(b). For can be rendered by ke=that (or, pro tio, ke) and the indicative.

Examples.—Mi esta al vichuka, ke i avertie mini: I am thankful to you for having (that you) warned me. Pardon mi, ke mi ted fari: Pardon me for so doing. Pardon al mini pro tio, ke mi ted fari: Pardon me for having done so (that I so did).

(c). Of, by por and the infinitive.

Example.—Mi peprast por vinco porstarnit de la pro-
jetto: I reflected on a means of turning him from his project.

(d). After, by an adverbial past participle.

Example.—"Kion mi fari?" li diris, eblenton sileto: "What shall we do?" he said, after sitting (having sat) for a moment in silence.

(e). Before, by antau of, and the infinitive.

Example.—Li balis antau de labori: He played before working.

213. The participle for the adjective.

(a). Be careful not to use the participle terminations -INT.1, -INT.1 for simple adjectives that have a form of their own. Some English words ending in "ing" and "ed," are both participles and simple adjectives; the same word being used for both, but of course with different meanings, for the participle denotes action of some kind, whilst the adjective denotes quality, state, etc.

(b). Most of such words have, in Esperanto, an adjective as well as a participial form, and we must be careful to use the right one in accordance with the sense.

Examples.—Laboresta and Labour = Working. Car-
vanta and carves = Charming. Interesanta and interes-
stant = Interesting. Samdomanta and sated = Satisfying. Konstanti-
sta = and konstanta = Satisfied: pleased, content.

131
(c). Observe the difference in meaning of the following:—

Rigardu tiun homon, laborantan sur la kampo! = Look at that man, working in the field! Rigardu tiun homem laboran (better, tiun laboriston) sur la kampo! = Look at that working man in the field! In the first sentence laborantan, the participle, denotes the action of the man; in the second, laboran, the adjective, denotes his state, condition, etc. Si estas carmanda via per sia kantado = She is charming us with her singing. Si estas carma, kiom si kantas = She is charming when she sings. It would be better, instead of using the participle carmanda, to say, Si carmes via per sia kantado.

Mi ne estas kontentigita per tiuj respektaj respondoj = I have not been satisfied with his replies. Mi ne estas kontenta je li = I am not pleased with him. Mi vidis tiun interesantan sian infanodon per interesan rakonton = I saw him interesting his child with an interesting story.

THE TENSES (La Tempoj).

The Tenses, Active Voice.

214. The Tenses indicate the time of action, and its state of completeness or incompleteness. They are either simple or compound. The simple tenses are formed by adding -AS, -IS or -OS to the root of the verb, and the terminations remain the same for all persons and numbers. The compound tenses are formed by the auxiliary verb esti = to be, and one of the participles of the verb which must agree in number with its subject. Esti is conjugated in exactly the same way as all other verbs.

215. The three Tenses used in Esperanto are the Present, Past, and Future. The Past tense represents also the tenses we call "imperfect," "perfect," and "pluperfect."

216. Duration of action of the verb.—(a). In English, to express the continueance of an action, the present participle of a transitive verb is used after the verb "to be" in all the moods and tenses—as "I am loving," or "I was (have been, shall be, should be) loving"; imperative, "Be thou loving." These
forms can be represented in Esperanto word for word as they are in English, if great exactness of time be necessary, viz., by the compound forms, mi estas (estis, estos, estus) amanta, or, estu amanta.

(a). To show that an action is continuous or habitual, the suffix -AD- may be added to the verb (see remarks on suffix -AD-, para. 270 (1)).

Examples.—Si buinda fi tuta tapo = She keeps on singing the whole day. La birdoj flugas de arbo al arbo = The birds were (kept on) flying from tree to tree.

(b). The commencement of an action, or a sudden action, is shown by adding the prefix EK-.

Examples.—Si ekkantas = She began to sing. La lamo brilis = The light shone. La lamo ekbrilis = The light flashed (see remarks on prefix EK-, para. 288).

217. Emphatic form of verb.—In English this form consists of the verb, preceded by “do” or “did,” and is confined to the present and past tenses of the indicative and subjunctive moods, and the imperative mood of the active voice, as:—”I do love,” “He does love,” “I did love,” “Do love.” This form in Esperanto can be represented by the adverb Ja = indeed.

Examples.—Mi ja tiu amas = I do love him. Mi ja tid amis sian = I did so love her.

The Present.

218. The Present tense (simple) ends in -AS. It is used not only to express what is happening at the moment, but what happens in all time, or what is understood to be present.

Examples.—Mi kuras = I run, or am running. La vera eĉam venkas = Truth always conquers. La autorodiras en sia verkto, ke... = The author says in his book that... Kion vi vidas? = Whom do you see? Mi vidas nenion = I see nobody. Mi foriras, ĉar mi patri mi atendas = I am going away, for my father awaits (or expects) me. Mi ĉiama havigdas tre frue = I always get up (rise) very early. Neion oni faras en pondo = One does nothing without trouble.
219. The Present in place of the Past or Future.—In Esperanto, as in other languages, the Present is often used for the Past or Future, to give vividness to an expression.

Examples.—Mi haltis, perdaante la spiron, kiam subite, mi aŭdas post mi vocon = I stopped, losing breath, when suddenly I heard (hear) behind me a voice. Hodnur pluan je virn, ni estas morpna la akiro de la tombo = To-day full of life, to-morrow we shall be (are) the prey (acquisition) of the tomb.

220. Esperanto logically always employs the Present, even in a phrase relating to what has past, if the action is present relatively to the time in question.

Example.—Ĉiuj, kiuj ŝiu vidis por ĝia penso, ke ili vidis la patrmonon = All who saw her could think that they saw (see) her (the) mother. In this sentence, what did they think? Their thought was, “We see her mother,” not “We saw her mother.” The sight was present to them, hence ili vidis.

221. Present in place of the Past.—If it is a question of the truth of all time, or of a fact existing at the moment of speaking, we generally use the Past tense, but in Esperanto the Present is always employed.

Examples.—Ni ekcis, ke vi estas en Londono ek tagoj = We learnt that you were (are) in London for eight days. Ni kredis, ke vi estis kurecisto = We believed that you were (are) a doctor. Li instruis niĉ, ke ĉiuj oni devus esti indulgita = He taught us that one must always be forbearing (merciful).

222. The Present tense (compound) is formed by the auxiliary esti—to be and one of the three participles, -ANT.A, -INT.A, -ONT.A. The compound tenses are seldom used in Esperanto, and their use is to be avoided if the simple tenses sufficiently make clear the meaning we wish to convey. Their use, therefore, is confined to giving exactitude to the time of an action or to an idea (see para. 169).
Examples.—Li estas vojaĝanta = He is travelling. The simple form, Li vojaĝas, might mean that he is travelling generally, but possibly not at this moment on his way to any place. If, therefore, we wish to convey that he is actually on his way to some place, we use the compound form. "Kiam li abloĝ estus forfugonon, li zunanlas forle = When bees are about to fly away, they (are accustomed to) hum loudly (strongly) (see para. 216 (a)). Esti skribanta = To be writing.

The Past.

223. The Past tense (simple) ends in -IS. It expresses something that has passed. It is used for the three tenses in English; the past, imperfect, and perfect; and sometimes for the pluperfect, if its use does not cause ambiguity.

Examples.—Mi skribis = I wrote, I was writing, or, I have written. Li venis auta du horoj = He came two hours ago. Pluris hieraŭ = It rained yesterday. Se li estis malbona, li ne povis veni = If he was ill, he could not come. Ĉu vi lin vidis? Did you see (or, have you seen) him? Li forzis, auta ĉi mi alvenis = He had left before I arrived. Mi promeņis hieraŭ, kaj rekonvis via amiko = I took a walk (or, I was walking, better promenadis) yesterday, and met your friend.

224. The Past tense (compound) is formed by the auxiliary verb esti = to be and one of the three participles, -ANTA, -INTA, -ONTA. This form should not be used when the simple form suffices to convey the required meaning. It is therefore employed only when we wish to give more exactitude to an expression than the simple form conveys, as regards the state of the subject at the time of the principal action (see paras. 169, 226 (a)).

Examples.—Kiam li estis finiĝinta via laboro, li iris hejmen = When he had finished his work, he went home. Mi estis skribanta letteron, kiam okazis terremo = I was writing a letter when an earthquake took place. "Li interkoncentis kaj estis eniroanta la landon, sed en okazo, kio liin mathelpra = They mutually agreed, and were about to enter the country, but something happened which prevented them.
225. To show that something has just happened, or is very soon going to happen, the word *jus* = *just*, or *tuj* = *immediately*, is often used.

Examples.—Mi *jus* vidis tre belan pentrajon. I have just seen a very beautiful picture. *Ni estis tuj fortunaj, kiun ekpluris.* We were on the point of (or, just) going out when it began to rain.

226. The past tense of *esti* (*estis*) and the past participle (*INTA*) of the verb correspond with the pluperfect in English. It denotes an action that was completed at a time now past. As before stated, it need not be employed when the simple past tense in -IS sufficiently expresses the meaning wished to be conveyed.

Examples.—*Kiam ĉi estis rakontita ĉiion, kio okazis, ĉi ekploris.* When she had related everything that happened, she began to weep. Here, in English, we should probably say “everything that had happened,” but “ĉion, kio ĉi estis okazinta” is unnecessary in Esperanto, as the meaning is quite clear with “okazis.” *Li ne estis paroliinta de ekrendoj, kiam mi diris al li “Silenti!”* = He had not spoken for two seconds when I said to him, “Be silent!”

226 (a). The adverb *antaŭe* — *beforehand* (or, *jam antaŭe*) is sometimes used with the past and future simple tenses, or with the simple forms of the Conditional or Imperative mood, instead of the compound tenses or forms (see Part III., Exercise 8).

Examples.—*Kiam vi eniris en la ĉambro, la ĉiastaj ĵam antaŭe foriris* (or, *antaŭe foriris*). When you entered the room, the guests had departed (lit., already beforehand departed). *Kiam vi venos al mi, mi ĵam antaŭe ŝinos* (or, *antaŭe ŝinos*). When you have (will) come to me, I shall have finished the work. *Li ne nekvis la libron, se vi antaŭe ne donus* (or, *antaŭe ne donus*). If you beforehand did not have bought the book unless you had given him the money (lit., if you beforehand should not give him the money).

The Future.

227. The Future (simple) ends in -OS. The future (compound) is formed by the auxiliary *esti* and one of the three participles, -ANTA, -INTA,
-ONTA, but the compound form should be used only when we wish to express anteriority, that is to say, action taking place previous to that of the principal action.

228. The future denotes an action yet to take place.

Example. — La petro venos post du tagoy = Father will come in two days. Cu ri prunos el mi la libran? = Will you lend me the book? Kiam li avenos? = When will he arrive? Li venos la toand prokaman = He will come next Monday.

229. If we wish to mark a near future, we can use with the verb the adverbs tuj = immediately, balda = soon, tre balda = very soon.

Example. — Li tuj avenos = He will arrive immediately. Li tre balda esta ti ci = He will very soon be here.

230. The future compound with the present participle is used when we wish to mark that an action will be going on at some particular time in the future.

Example. — Je la deka horo morga ti matene, mi estos returanta Parizom = At 10 o'clock to-morrow morning I shall be travelling to Paris.

231. The future compound with the past participle is used when we wish to mark that an action will be finished at some particular time in the future (see para. 226 (a).

Example. — Mi estos fianta miin laboron je la sest horo morga ti vesper = I shall have finished my work at six o'clock to-morrow evening.

232. The future for the present indicative or subjunctive. — Be careful not to imitate English in using the indicative or subjunctive for the future.

Example. — Se pluor, li ne reno = If it rain, he will not come. Kion ri faros, kiam mi estos en la tomo? = What will you do when I am in the grave? Mi skrivo la letteron dum ri riposo = I shall write the letter whilst you are resting. Si skrivo al mi, ki si estos ti ci morga = She wrote to us that she would (will) be here to-morrow (she wrote what? not "that she would," but "that she will," so the future is the correct tense).
The Tenses, Passive Voice.

233. The tenses of the passive voice are formed by the simple tenses of the auxiliary verb esti and the passive participles -AT.A, -IT.A, -OT.A. All the tenses are therefore compound. As with the active participles, J is added to the three persons of the plural in all the tenses.

234. The signification of the tenses is the same as in the active voice, except, of course, that the subject of a passive verb is acted upon. Since esti is the only auxiliary verb used in Esperanto, it represents the two English auxiliaries, "to be" and "to have"; we must, therefore, translate it accordingly.

235. Care must be taken in the use of these participles. For instance, the participles of skribi = to write used alone mean—

Present, Skribata = Written, or, being written (action going on).
Past, Skribita = Written, or, been written (action completed) (lit., having been written).
Future, Skribota = About to be, or, going to be, written (action about to occur).

236. The various tenses of the verb esti show the time of the action, and the three participles the state of the subject at that time. Note carefully the various shades of meaning in the following examples:—

La pordego estas fermata, car la ludon estas ludata = The gate is being shut, for the game is about to be played.
La pordego estas fermita, car la ludon estas ludita = The gate is (or, has been) shut, for the game is being played.
La pordego estis fermita, dum la ludon estis ludita = The gate was (or, had been) shut whilst the game was being played.
Kiam estos pendigita la homo? = When will the man be (being) hanged?
La estas pendigita moraĝi, sed oni diras, ke li ne estos pendigita ĝis mardo = He was to have been (was about to be)
hanged to-morrow, but they say he will not be hanged till Tuesday.

Kaj kiam li estas pentligita, kie li estas enterigita? = And when he is (has been) hanged, where is he to be buried? (lit., and when he shall have been hanged, where will he be about to be buried?). Note that after the interrogative kiam the English present tense is future in Esperanto, as: — Kiam li venos? = When is he coming? or, When will he come?

Espero estis kapitita kaj enmetita en kajon, sed kiam la porteto de la kajo estis malfermata, gi forflugis = A sparrow was (or, had been) caught and put into a cage, but when the door of the cage was being opened it flew away.

N.B.—In the above sentence we see that the sparrow was (estis) first in the state of having been caught (kapitita); then in the state of having been put (enmetita) into a cage; then that the door was in the state of being opened (malfermata), and that during this action the bird flec away (forflugis).

(For examples of the passive conditional mood see para. 193).

(For examples of the rare use of the passive imperative mood see para. 201).

THE USE OF CERTAIN VERBS.

Devi.

Devi = to be obliged to, to have to, means to be physically or morally obliged to do something, as: — Vi devas tion fari = You must (have to, are to) do that. If, however, the action is not immediate, the future tense is used for "must," as: — Vi devos tion fari morgau = You must (will have to) do that to-morrow.

In its Conditional form devi may be used, like other verbs, to soften an expression, and then it can be translated by "ought," as: — Vi ne devus tion fari = You ought not to (should not) do that. Here devus is used instead of the more peremptory form, devas; Vi ne devas tion fari would mean You must not (are not to) do that (see para. 194, also paras. 237 (o), (p), on "should," "must," "ought").

Examples.— Mi devas rim fortiri, ĉar oni atendas min = I must (have to) leave you, for they are waiting for me.

Mi devas fari tion nervu? = Must I (am I to) do that at once?
ESPERANTO VERBS.

If 237 (a).

Cu mi devas veni morpreni? = Must I (shall I have to, am I to) come to-morrow? Mi devas skribi letteron = I had (have had) to write a letter. Li devas min viidi kodinu, sed li ne povas veni = He was to see me to-day, but he cannot come. Mi devis vidi min hienu, sed li ne povis veni = They were to have seen me yesterday, but they could not come. Li evis kolera hienu, par li devis tri terajon = He was angry yesterday, because he was obliged to (had to) go to school. Sed por tio ci mi devos atendi ion da tempo = But for this I shall have to (I must) wait some time. Se mi liu vidus, mi devus paroli kun ti = If I saw him, I should have to speak to him. Se mi liu vidus, mi estus devinta paroli kun ti = If I had seen him, I should have been obliged (have had) to speak to him. La eko de ciu estus, mi devus ezi, bonfaradi = The aim of everyone is, or ought to (should) be, to do good. Li devus kolki kaj arangi siaj faktoj = He ought to (should) collect and arrange his facts. Tiuj insektoj ne devus muniigi en la mondo = Such insects ought not to be born into the world. Kiam vi estus tie, vi devus vidi la kastelon = When you are there, you ought to see the castle. Kiam vi estus tie, vi devus vidi (or, vi estus devinta vidi) la kastelon = When you were there, you ought to have seen the castle. Mi ne devus sin tutu aneksulti = I ought not to listen to her at all.

From these examples we see that the following is the meaning of devi in its moods and tenses. The compound forms should not be used unless absolutely necessary to render the meaning clear.

Present.
Vi devus (paroli) = You must, have to, are to (speak).

Past.
Mi devis (paroli) = I had to, have had to (speak); or, I was to (speak, or, have spoken).
Mi estus devinta (paroli) = I have been obliged to (speak).

Future.
Mi devos (paroli) = I shall have to, I am to, I must (speak).

Conditional.
Mi devus (paroli), se .. = I should have to, or, be obliged to (speak), if...
Mi estus devinta (paroli), or, Mi estus devinta (paroli), se .. = I should have had to, or, have been obliged to (speak), if...
Conditional (softer sense).

*I dérus (vidi) = You ought to, or, you should (see, or, have seen).

*I dérus (est ividita), or, *I estus dérinta (vidi) = You ought to have, or, you should have (been).

N.B.—Do not use *deri for “were to,” when no obligation is implied. Note the difference in meaning in the following sentences:—Se ili venos, mi vidus ilin = If they were to come (if they came), I would see them. *Mi devia veni la lastan semajnon, sed mi nehelpus ilin = They were to (have) come last week, but something prevented them.

Also do not use *deri for “am to,” “was to,” etc., when these words do not express “obligation,” but “purpose” or “intention.” For instance, “Are you to speak at the meeting?” may mean either (1) “Do you intend to (shall you) speak?” or, (2) “Have you to (must you) speak?” So we translate: (1) *Ca ri intencas paroli (*Ca ri parolos) òt la kuareno? or, (2) *Ca ri devus paroli òt la kuareno? In such a phrase as “You are to do that” the obligation is clear, so we say *I devus tiu fari.

**Kuši.**

237. (b). *Kuši* = to lie, to be situated, is sometimes used to denote anything in a state of rest, or in a recumbent position. It has, therefore, also the meaning of “to be.”

**Examples.**—La krajono *kušas* sur la libro = The pencil lies (is) on the book. *La libroj kušas sur la bento* = The books are (lie) on the shelf.

**Koni and Scii.**

237. (c). *Koni* and *scii* are used in the same sense as the French verbs *connaitre* and *savoir.*

*Koni* means to know, to be acquainted with, to know a person, or, thing.

**Examples.**—*Mi konas vian fraton* = I know your brother. *Li konas la hundo, sed li ne konas gian pombanton* = He knows the dog, but he does not know its owner.

N.B.—It is never followed by the conjunction *KE;* *mi konus, ke,* is wrong. *Mi scias, ke ri.* = I know that you...

*Scii* means to know, to be aware of, to know something is or was happening etc.

N.B.—It is never used of persons.
Lasi.

237. (d). Lasi, like the English verb "to leave," has various meanings.

(1) To let remain, as: — Li basis la libron sur la tabelo — He left the book on the table.

(2) To leave in a place, not to take with one, as: — Li basis simon al la domo = He left his wife in the house. Lasis simon bastemon tie ci = Leave your stick here.

(3) To lose restraint upon something, as: — Li basis falsi la libron = He let the book fall.

(4) To leave in a certain state, as: — Li basis min en la plej grando embarraso = He left me in the greatest embarrassment. Li basis la domon tre malpura = He left the house very dirty.

(5) To leave to the care of someone, as: — La jugeo basis la infanojn al la petro = The judge left the children to the father.

(6) To have remaining at death, to leave behind one, as: — Kiam li mortis, li basis (as, post basis) gambaro vinis, liu li testamento al diversaj bonfragaj institucioj = When he died, he left great wealth, which he left to various charitable institutions (note that to "leave," "bequeath," is "lasi."ements).

(7) Lasi, followed by the preposition en, means to "leave in," or to "let into," according as the complement is in the nominative or accusative, e.g.: — Mi basis la hundo en la domo = I left the dog in the house. Mi basis la hundo en la domo = I let the dog into the house.

(8) In the "Krestomatio," page 23, it is used in the sense to "leave off," "cease," as: — Alkandre basis simo prelaboro pri batutoj kaj petis de li pemo = Alexander left off talking of battle, and asked them for bread.

(9) Lasi, followed by an infinitive, means to "let," or "allow," as: — Lasi al mi giu fari = Let me do it, or, Leave it to me to do. In the "Krestomatio," page 23, we find it used in the sense "allow to be," as: — Ninio volis lass ofi rimarki, ki li micron volis = No one wished to let it be noticed that he saw (sees) nothing.

(10) Allasi = to admit (own the truth), as: — Li allasis, ke li estas malpura = He admitted he was (is) wrong.
ESPERANTO VERBS. ¶ 237 (d—I).

(11). Delavi = to allow to leave, as:—Li delavi lin de la domo = He let him leave the house.
(12). Enhavi (like lavi en) = to let go in, as:—Enhavi min ! = Let me in!
(13). Fodavi = to abandon, as:—Li forlasis sian poston = He abandoned his post.
(14). Preteravi = to let pass, as:—Li preteravi la okzon = He let the opportunity pass, or, He missed the opportunity. 
(15). Tradavi = to allow to pass through, as:—Li tradavis la hoomon tra la porbo = He let the man pass through the door.

Kiam si atingis la porbojn, ili si tradavis = When she reached the gate, they let her through.

**Pesi and Pezi.**

237. (e). Pesi = to weigh, to examine by balance (transitive).

Pesi = to weigh, to have weight (intransitive).

Peso = the weighing, the act of weighing.

Pezo = the weight, or, heaviness of a thing.

Pesilo = the scales, or, the weighing machine.

Pezilo = a (metal) weight.

From the above words we see that the roots pes- and pez- both signify “weight,” and care must be taken to use the words in their transitive or intransitive sense.

**Examples.**—Tiu ĉi tabuloj estas granda pezo; mi kredas ke ĉi tiuj ĉi tabuloj estas pli ol cent okdek funtoj = These tables are a great weight. I believe that their weight is more than a hundred and eighty pounds. 
Tiu kerto estas tre peza; mi estus certa ke ĝi pezas pli ol cent okdek funtojn; mi unua ĉi tabulo, kiu diras mi ĉi tabulo peson = That chest is very weighty (heavy); I am certain that it weighs at least ninety pounds; put it on the scales (weighing machine), bring the weights, weigh it, and tell me the exact weight.

**Povi.**

237. (f). Povi = to be able. Used as an auxiliary verb, povi has several significations in its various tenses, which at first sight may appear somewhat contradictory to English ideas. For instance, the
The beginner may say "How can 'can' be both present and future, or 'could' both past and conditional?" The examples given below will answer the question.

**Present,** Mi povas = I am able to, I can.

**Past,** Mi povis = I have been (or, was) able to, I could.

**Future,** Mi povos = I shall be able to, I can.

**Future,** Mi estos povinta = We shall have been able to.

**Conditional,** Mi povus = I should (or, would) be able to, or, I could, or, I might.

**Conditional,** Li estos povinta = He would have been able to, or, He could have.

**Examples.**—Cu vi poras tioni fieri? Yes, mi povas = Are you able to (can you) do that? Yes, I can. Mi ne povos vidii la arbon, kion vi monteis = I cannot see the tree which you point out. Mi poris firi tior, kion vi velis = I was (have been) able to do what you wished. Mi ne poris firi tior, kion vi postulis = I was not (have not been) able to do (I could not do) what you required. Mi poros tioni fieri morprii = I shall be able to (I can) do that to-morrow. Se vi poras veni marllos, mi poros vin vidii = If you should be able to (if you could) come on a Tuesday, I could see you. Mi poration fieri morprii, etc. = I could (should be able to) do that to-morrow if... Cu li estos porinta plenani la laborajon, kion vi liu velas morprii? = Will he have been able to complete the work when you (will) see him to-morrow? Se vi venus hieraŭ, mi estos povinta vin vidii = If you had come yesterday, I could have seen you. Li porus veni, se li velus = He might (would be able to) come if he wished (see paras. 237 (b), (mi)).

**Sidi.**

237. (a). Sidi = to sit, to be sitting. Sidi has sometimes the signification "to be" in some defined place.

**Examples.**—En la ŝambro sidis nur kele du homoj = In the room were (sat) only a few (some) men. La kuicriko sidas en la kuirejo = The cook is (sits) in the kitchen. En la kuicriko sidas la kuicriko = In the candlestick was (sat) a burning candle.

**Sin trovi.**

237. (b). Sin trovi = to find oneself. This expression (or, troviĝi = to be found, to find oneself, to be,
ENGLISH VERBS. ¶ 237 (h—j).

or, to be situated) is often used for the English verb "to be."

**Examples.**—Sur la arbo sin trovis multe da Pirdoj = On the tree were (found themselves) many birds.  
Super la tero trovitis aer = Over the earth is air.

**Česi, Daüri, Pasi, Fini, Komenci.**

237. (i). In English the following verbs are used in both a transitive and intransitive sense: — Česi = to cease; daüri = to last, to continue; pasi = to pass; fini = to finish; komenci = to commence. In Esperanto Česi, daüri, pasi are intransitive; so, to make them transitive, we must add 1GI. On the other hand, fini and komenci are transitive; therefore, to make them intransitive, we must add 1GI (para. 280).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Transitive</th>
<th>Intransitive</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Česiči</td>
<td>ĸi stariis ĸamcon = ĸeas that noise.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Li daürigis siaj Rakonton = He continued his story.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Li pasigis du horoj en la hudo = He passed two hours in the booth.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Li ľasis ĸian Loboron = He finished his work.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ŝi komencis siaj vojaĝoj morton = She will commence her journey to-morrow.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>La pluro ĸesiis = The rain ceased.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>La vatrajo daüris unu horon = The storm lasted an hour.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>La tempo passing rapide = Time passes rapidly.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>La monato ĵaipo morton = The month will finish to-morrow.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>La semajno komenciis hieraŭ = The week commenced yesterday.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Do, Did.**

237 (j). The English verb "to do" is represented as follows:—

(1). In the sense of to "perform," "make," "commit," "execute," etc., it is represented by fari or agi.
 Examples.—Ne fari tio=Don’t do that. Batante la knabon, li fari (or, apa) na[n]prase=He did wrong in beating the boy. La ĉambriestro fari tio, kion mi ordonis=The chambermaid did what I ordered.

(2). In interrogation and negation it is represented by the present and past tenses (pars. 58, 63, 64).

 Examples.—Ĉu vi venos, ke li venos?=Do you think that he will come? Ĉu vi liu vidis hieraŭ?=Did you see him yesterday? Mi ne konsolin=I do not know him.

(3). As an emphatic auxiliary, it may be represented by the adverb ĵa=indeed, in fort (para. 217).

 Example.—Mi ĵa esperas, ke li venos=I do hope he will come.

(4). As an inquiry after health.

 Example.—Kiel vi jaras? or, Kiel ĉi tiu viro?=How do you do? or, How are you?

(5). To “do” in the sense of “to cheat” by trompi or froponi. In the sense of “to suffice” by sufiĉi.

 Examples.—Li froponi min=He did (cheated) me. Tio sufiĉas=That will do.

(6). Followed by prepositions, it must be translated in accordance with the sense of the phrase.

 Examples:

 To do away with (abolish)=menigi, (destroy)=estroi. business=konstrui, fari uzocon kun. for, or away with (murder, kill)=mortigi. into (translate)=translok. to, well (prosper)=prosperi. to, up (arrange)=numigi, (tie up)=knubigi, (repair)=ripiri. with (make use of)=fari uzon el. without (dispense with)=forbazi, ne uzoni.

 Cet.

 237. (k). The English verb to “get” must be translated in accordance with its numerous meanings. For instance:—
(1). To "get" in the sense of to "become" may be rendered by \( \text{gi} \) = to become, or the suffix -\( \text{gi} \).

**Examples.**—\( \text{dzgi} \) = To get married (man). \( \text{dzgini} \) = To get married (woman). \( \text{izgi} \) = To get up. \( \text{elijkzgi} \) = To get near. \( \text{lozgi} \) = To get tired. \( \text{tizgi} \) = To get boreal. \( \text{ba \& tizgi} \) = Are you getting ready? \( \text{mi malzitizgi} \) = I am getting hungry. \( \text{mi kitiini} \) je tlo = I am getting accustomed (used) to that. \( \text{malzamzgitizgi} \) (or, \( \text{izzi malzamzgi} \)) = It is getting dark. \( \text{la tizgi \& malzamzgi} \) = The days are getting shorter. \( \text{la iztigzgi} \) = The children got into bed (lit., lay down). \( \text{la vesperzamzgi malzamzgitizgi} \) = The dinner is getting cold; but \( \text{malzamzgitizgi} \) = to get (or catch) a cold.

(2). To "get," in the sense of to "make," to "cause," is rendered by \( \text{gi} \) = to make, or the suffix -\( \text{gi} \)- added to a verb; or by \( \text{tasi} \) = to leave, let.

**Examples.**—\( \text{iz \& zgi \& \& vinci \& a \& m\& d\& c\& c} \) = Get her to come to our dance. \( \text{mi tranzi \& do kerzou noz\&} \) = I shall get the grass cut tomorrow. \( \text{li b\& is feri a \& v\& z\& i\& v\& o\& n\& \& i} \) = He got a dress made for her.

(3). To "get," in the sense of to "have got," or to "possess," is not translated.

**Examples.**—\( \text{mi \& \& h\& \& \& o\& r\& \& i\& \& n\& \&} \) (or, \( \text{os\& \& d\& \& o\& \& r\& \& a\& \& \& v\& \& e\& \& o\& \& j\& \& \&} \)) = I have got two horses. \( \text{ki\& \& m\& \& i \& \& v\& \& \& a\& \& \& n\& \& i\& \& \&} \) = What have you got?

(1). To "get," in the sense of to "procure," "fetch," is rendered by \( \text{havgi} \), or \( \text{venig} \).

**Examples.**—\( \text{mi havgi \& \& al \& v\& \& i\& \& m\& \& i\& \& n\& \&} \) = I shall get as much as I can. \( \text{venig al \& v\& \& t\& \& i\& \& \& c\& \& s\& \& o\& \& n\& \&} \) = Get me a carriage. \( \text{venig la k\& \& a\& \& k\& \& \& n\& \& \& c\& \& \& c\& \& \& s\& \& \& o\& \& n\& \&} \) = Send for (get) the doctor.

(5). "Get" is translated in various other ways according to its meaning. Note the following examples:

\( \text{avezi \&} \) = To get to, to arrive at.
\( \text{al\& \& on\& \& o\& \& k\& \& a\& \& n\& \&} \) = Get my horse.
\( \text{al\& \& po\& \& e\& \& \& t\& \& \& u\& \& a\& \& r\& \& \& d\& \& o\& \& n\& \& \&} \) = Get me the mustard.
\( \text{mi ritzi v\& \& e\& \& n\& \& l\& \& e\& \& t\& \& \& e\& \& n\& \&} \) = I got your letter.
(6). To "get," followed by prepositions, etc., must be translated in accordance with the sense of the phrase.

**Examples:**

To get across = transiri.
- along, forward = antaŭiri.
- at (attain, reach) = atingi.
- back (something lent) = reveni, (to a place) = reveni.
- down = eliri, malsuperiri.
- off (be acquitted) = sakiri, (escape) = forki,
  (a horse or coach) = eliri.
- dirty = malpvreiri.
- on (a horse or coach) = superiri, (in learning) = progresi, (in business) = prosperi.
- on with (continue) = daŭiri.
- out (of doors) = eliri, (publish) = eldoni, or, eliri.
- over (across) = transiri, (surmount) = renki.
- ready = preroiri (trans.), preiri (intrans.).
- round (coax, allure) = logi, allogi, (persuade) = koninki.
- up (rise) = levi, (ascend) = superiri.

**Can and Could.**

237. (l). "Can" and "could" are translated by poviri = to be able, except when "can" has the permissive sense of "may" (see para. 237 (m) (3)).

**Examples.** Mi ne povis li tiu vidi nuntempe = I cannot see him at present. Li ne povis iri hieren = He could not go yesterday. Li povis iri hodiaŭ, se li volis = He could (would be able to) go today, if he would.

For other examples of "can" and "could," see poviri, para. 237 (f).

**May and Might.**

237. (m). These verbs are used as (1) auxiliaries in the English Subjunctive mood, but they also express (2) wish, (3) permission, (4) possibility, (5) power or ability.

(1). When used as **auxiliary** verbs, they can be expressed by the Esperanto Imperative mood.
ENGLISH VERBS.

Examples. — *Li rapidas, por ke li ondo ĝustatempe* = He hastens that he may arrive in time. *Li kuris rapide, por ke li ne malsupre la vagonon* = He runs quickly that he might not miss the train.

(2). When they express "wish," the Esperanto Imperative is also used.

Examples. — *Li estu feliz! = May you be happy! Vi

diĉiro estu gluckrigita! = May your wish be realized! Ĉi tio vin bona! = May Heaven bless you! Dio volu vin bona! = May God bless you! Neŭn eldikin vinu felizan! = May nothing mar your happiness! Ĉu bono estu vin! = May every blessing be yours!

In the above examples ellipsis takes place both in Esperanto and English, some such words as *mi diru, ke...* I wish that... being omitted (para. 66 (c)). *Ke vi prosperu,
estas miu fervora diĉiro! = That you may succeed, is my fervent desire! Ke li vinu, estas miu ĉieuzma propo! = That he might live, was my daily prayer! Mi mortu, se mi ion montrus! = May I die, if I am lying at all!

(3). When they express "permission," some word denoting this must be used, or the imperative may be used, the verb expressing permission being omitted (para. 58 (a)). The English verb "can" is sometimes employed to express the permissive sense of "may"; in that case it is better to avoid the use of *povi = to be able.*

Examples. — *Ĉu vi permisas (or, ĉu vi volis), ke mi parolu kun vi? or, Ĉu mi parolu kun vi? = May (can) I speak to you? (lit., Do you permit that I speak to you?) Ĉu vi volis (or, *ĉu estas permisite*), ke mi vidu la kastelon? or, Ĉu mi vidu la kastelon? = May (can) I see the castle? *Mi permisas, ke vi tiu fama, se vi volis, or, Vi tiu famo, se vi volis = You may (I permit that you) do that, if you like. Se mi estas permisita tion diri (or, se estas permisite, ke mi tion diru) = If I might (were permitted to) say so (that).

(4). When they express "possibility," some word showing that the action is more or less a matter of doubt must be used, as *eblo = possibly, kredible = probably, etc.*
ENGLISH VERBS.

EXAMPLES.—Elle il venus = He may come, or, Maybe (possibly) he will come. Elle il tranço la fignor, se vi dono = He may (possibly he will) cut his finger, if you (will) give him a knife. Elle il venus, se vi lin invitons = He might (possibly he would) come, if you invited (were to invite) him. Se vi tien rive, elle (kredible) vi lin rive = If you went (were to go) there, you might (possibly, probably would) see him.

Note that the possibility of something happening varies with the adverb used. "May" rendered by elle throws greater doubt on the contingency than kredible.

(5). When they express "power," or "ability," povi = to be able can be used.

EXAMPLE.—La mal-nuo povus konsili at kompilaj = The illness may lead to complications. Li povas tion fari, se li multe volus (or, estus volunt) = He might (could) have done that, if he had wished to do it.

Shall and Will.

237. (n). These verbs are used in English to denote:

(1). Futurity.
(2). Determination or will.
(3). Power, or ability to perform an action.

As they are sometimes misplaced, it would be well for the student, not thoroughly conversant with their proper use, to consult some good English Grammar.

(1). Futurity. As the auxiliary for the Future tense, "shall," in direct speech, is generally used for the first person, and "will" for the second and third persons, as "I, or we, shall go," "He, you, or they will go," except in interrogation, when "shall" is generally used for the second person, as "Shall you go?" But in indirect speech "shall" is used for all three persons, as, "He says he shall come," "You say you shall write." In any of these cases they are translated by the future in -es.
(2). Determination or Will. When the meaning is not futurity, but self-determination on the part of the speaker, then, in direct speech, "will" is used for the first person, and "shall" for the second and third persons, as, "I will do it, you cannot stop me." "You shall not kill that bird." "Thou shalt not steal." But in indirect speech "will" is used for all the persons, as, "He says he will go" (it is his determination to go). "You say you will try it" (you are determined to try it). In none of these cases must the Esperanto future be used, but the imperative, or some word expressing "will" or "determination."

(3). Power, or Ability, or Advisability, as:—"But will he do it?" (Is he able to do it?) "Shall I do it?" (Is it advisable to do it?)

X.B.—In some cases it is difficult to tell in which of the above three senses "shall" or "will" is used, unless the context makes it clear; so, in writing, we have to underline the words, or, in speaking, to emphasize them strongly when they mean "determination." Note carefully their meaning in the following sentences. The number prefixed to each example denotes the heading under which it comes.

Examples.—(1). Mi revenos, kiam ili foriro= I shall come back when they go away. (2). Mi invenos gin fari, en vi kunvenon= I shall find the words (intend to) do it whether you consent or not. (1). Vii mortign tian birdon, se vi ekte petos= You will kill that bird if you shoot straight. (2). Mi ne permemos, ke vi mortign tian birdon= You shall not (I do not allow you to) kill that bird. (1). Mi scis, ke vi gin faros= I know that you will do it. (2). Mi scis, ke vi jros gin faros, se vi volas, ke vi scis I know you can do it if you will.

Note the difference in meaning of "shall" and "will" in the following sentences:—I shall not see you to-morrow unless you come early. If "shall" be used, it means that something will prevent the speaker from seeing the
individual; the speaker may be out, or engaged; therefore, since the reason is unimportant, we can translate the sentence, as in English, by the future, as:—

(1). *Mi ne vidis vin morpfi, se vi ne (or, excepte se vi) venas done.* But if "will" be used, determination on the part of the speaker is implied; nothing prevents him; he could see you if he wished, but he will not (won't). Therefore, in Esperanto, we must express this determination, and say (2). *Mi ne rolas (or, mi ne intencos) vin vidii morpfi, excepte se vi venas done = I will not (I do not intend to) see you to-morrow unless you come early.* (1). *Mi ne mortas sola = I shall not die alone. (2). Mi ne rolas (or, mi verte ne intencos) morti sola = I will not (I certainly do not intend to) die alone. (1). *Cu vidos (or, certos) tie ci morpfi? = Will you be here to-morrow? (1). Jes, mi celas = Yes, I will. Note that "will" here repeats the verb in the question, and is used instead of "shall." (1). Li diras, ke li venos, sed (1) ci li venos? or, (2) ci li volos veni? or, (3) ci li poros veni? He says he will come, but will he? Here the words "but will he?" must be translated in accordance with the sense to be conveyed, viz.—(1) will something prevent him? (2) will he have the will? (3) will he have the power?

If a person says to himself "shall I do that?" it can be translated by the future, *Cu mi tia faus*? = Is it best to do that? or, *Cu rolas la plej bone tio faru? = Is it best to do that? or, Cu rolas proste, mjec, k.e. = Will it be expedient, wise, etc., or, *Cu decas, ke mi tia faru? = Will it be proper (right) to do that? If, however, the phrase is used as a question to another person, it would be rendered "Cu vi rolas (or, deziras), ke mi tia faru? or, *Cu mi faus tio? = Shall I (do you wish me to) do that? (1). Cu vi venos? = Shall you go? (2). Cu vi rolas pri? = Will you go? (3). Cu vi faros, ke mi iru? or, *Cu mi iru? = Shall I go?" (paras. 58 (a), 237 (a) (3). "Will I go" is bad English, and untranslatable!

**Should and Would.**

237. (a). "Should" and "would" follow the rules of "shall" and "will" when employed in parallel circumstances. They express—

(1). **Supposition**, or a future that is doubtful, conditional, or merely supposed (para. 192), as "I should do it if I knew how."
ENGLISH VERBS. ¶ 237 (o–p).

(2). Duty or obligation (para. 237 (n)) as "He should not do that."

(3). Determination, as "Nothing could influence him, he would do it."

(4). The softening of an expression (para. 191), as "Would you object to do that?"

(5). The future in indirect speech (para. 232), as "She said she would (will) come."

(6). Would, when it signifies custom or habit, is sometimes translated by adding the suffix -AD- to the verb.

The following sentences will show how these various meanings may be expressed in Esperanto. The number before each example shows under which class of meanings it comes.

Examples.—(1). Mi jins faras, se vi nun permesas. I should do it if you would permit me. (1). Li min frapas, se li ne finas. He would strike me if he were not afraid. (3). Li insidias min far, spite en, kion mi povas diri. He would do it in spite of all I could say. (4). Cu ri donas al mi tian libron? Would you give me that book? (1). Se ri vidus Johnson morgaŭ (2) ri donus diri al li, ke li ne aĉetas tian donon. If you should see John to-morrow, you should tell him not to buy that house. (5). Si diris al mi, ke si venos. She told me that she would (will) come. (1). Mi sonete subjektis, ke ili venos. I had a slight suspicion that they would come. (6). Hi ofte rajdatis tra la arbaroj, kie la branĉoj malsupre ludis ilian alerejon, kaj la birdoj kankulis inter la fruktoj. They would often ride through the woods, where the branches would touch their shoulders, and the birds would sing amid the fresh leaves.

Must, Ought.

237. (p). "Must" and "Have to" always signify physical or moral obligation, and are stronger terms than "ought," which implies moral obligation or duty. Compare "You must (have to, are to) go" with "You ought to go." The former can be rendered by
devi, and the latter, "ought," by decas, or some word implying moral obligation. Devi is also used for "ought" in the Conditional mood; devus, in this case, being the softened form of the Conditional mood (see para. 194). Care must be taken not to translate "must" when it signifies "have to" or "am to" by havi or esti (see para. 237 (a) on devi).

Examples.—Li devus labora = He must (has to) work. Mi devus havi tiam libron = I must have that book. Gjo, kio trovijs en tiu el libro, devus esti regardeita kiel deviga por ĉiuj = Everything which is in this book must be regarded as obligatory for all. La "Fundamento de Esperanto" devas resta sevece notashbla = The "Fundamento de Esperanto" must remain strictly unalterable (untouchable). Ĉi tiu ĉi, kiel ĉi devus plori = It was to her as if she must (would have to) weep. Vi ne devus tiron fari, or, Ne devas, ke vi tion faru = You ought not to (it is not proper, right that you should) do that. Vi devus viziti (Devas, ke vi viziti) li patron = You ought to see (it is proper that you should see) your father. Li ne devus forgeti (or, esti forgiatinta) = He ought not to have forgotten. Devas, ke mi ajporta minju servon al la reĝo = I ought to offer my services to the king. Kiam vi devus visi la homon = When must you (will you have to) see the man? Mi devus iki tien hieraŭ, sed li malbonis, tial nun mi devus atendi ĝis morgon = I ought to have seen him yesterday, but he fell ill, so now I must wait till to-morrow.

N.B.—Note, in the last example, that the adverb hieraŭ = yesterday, clearly shows the action is past; it is therefore unnecessary to use the past infinitive esti vizita.
ADVERBS (Adverboj).

238. Adverbs in Esperanto are more widely used than in any other language, since the root of every word can be made into an adverb by adding an adverbial termination E, and not the root only, as innumerable adverbs are formed by adding E to grammatical terminations and suffixes. This facility enables the Esperantist to express in one word, to an unlimited extent, what often takes two, three, or more words to adequately express in other languages, as:

—Tiamaniere = In such a manner.
—Iatene = In the morning.
—Vespere = In the evening.

239. An adverb answers to a preposition accompanied by a complement.

Example.—Li parolas sa ĝe = "He speaks wisely," has the same signification as Li parolas kun sageco = He speaks with wisdom.

240. Adverbs are used to modify the meaning of verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs.

Examples.—Li agas bone = He acts well. Tiu ĉi estas tre granda domo = This is a very large house. Li skribas tre ĉeesto = He writes extremely well.

N.B.—When an adverb seems to qualify a preposition, it really qualifies an adverbial phrase, as:—

into ĉi tiu hek = Much before the hour.

241. Position.—Adverbs, as a rule, immediately precede or follow the words which they modify (see para. 88).

242. There are two classes of adverbs in Esperanto, which for the sake of distinction we will call (a) "Primary," and (b) "Grammatical."

155
Primary adverbs are all to be found in the list of primary words in Part V. They have no distinctive termination.

Grammatical adverbs are those which are formed by adding E to the root, grammatical termination, or suffix. Some are formed by adding E to a primary word.

A list of adverbs will be found at page 100.

243. No influence on case.—Adverbs exercise no influence on the case of nouns, adjectives, or pronouns. If such be in the accusative, it is by the influence of the adverb. For example:

Mi amas Johanon tie! varme kiel mian fraton =
I love John as warmly as my brother.

Here kiel exercises no influence on mian fraton, for both mian fraton and Johonon are governed by the verb amas. Therefore the meaning is that the speaker loves my brother and John equally warmly. It shows that kiel exercises no influence on the case, can place mian fraton in the nominative, as:

Mi amas Johanon tie! varme kiel mia fraton =
I love John as warmly as my brother (does). Here the question, "as my brother does what?" and the answer is "loves John." In English we are obliged to add "does" or "loves him," but in Esperanto the meaning is quite clear from the case of the noun (see also paras. 247 and 105).

244. Adverb or preposition.—When a preposition has no complement, noun or pronoun, the preposition then takes the adverbial termination E. For instance, in the phrase mi staras apud li (I am standing by him) and li is a preposition name it is followed by its complement li. But if li is omitted, we must alter the sentence, as:

Li staras apude = He is standing by (here).
Subject not expressed.—When, in a sentence in Esperanto, there is no noun or pronoun which the adjective can qualify (as in case of verbs in the infinitive, or used impersonally), the adverb is used in Esperanto in place of the adjective.

Examples.—Menigi vehicle kio (not kio) = To lie is shameful. Time venas, kio = It is necessary that. Kio ĉi tie estas = What is this? Kio ĉi tie estus = What would this be? Kio ĉi tie estus formas = What would this form?

Adverbs. (a). Participle-Adverbs. —In Esperanto, when the participle relates to the subject (para. 211), but does not qualify it, then the participle takes the adverbial form. For impersonal use see para. 164 (d).

Examples.—Legante, ni lernas—In reading we learn. Starante sur la supro de la turo, li povis vidigi la preĝejon = Standing on the top of the hill, he could see the church. Estante furiosa, ŝi ne volis paroli al sia filo = Being angry, she would not speak to her nephew. Malfermante la fenestro, li vidis la amason sur la strato = Having opened (or, after opening) the window, he saw the crowd in (on) the street. Ekrigante la librojn, ŝi ĵetas sur la takilon = Having glanced (or, after glancing) at the book, she put it on the table. Datante de la lemejestro, la knabo kruĝis = Having been beaten by the schoolmaster, the boy howled terribly.

Adverbs of quantity, like other words signifying quantity, have always their complement introduced by the preposition da.

Examples.—Kio da ĝi = Some (or, a little) of it. Kio da mondo = How many. Kio da ĉapelo = A few women. Kio da fruloj = How many brothers have you? Kio da homoj = How many people are there? Kio da ĉi tio = How much is this? Kio da ĉi tio estas = How much is this?

It is not expected that... = It is not expected that...

Estas tele, varma, malvarma = It is fine, warm, cold.

Ne estas atendate, ke... = It is not expected that...

156. Subject not expressed.—When, in a sentence in Esperanto, there is no noun or pronoun which the adjective can qualify (as in case of verbs in the infinitive, or used impersonally), the adverb is used in Esperanto in place of the adjective.

Examples.—Menigi vehicle kio (not kio) = To lie is shameful. Time venas, kio = It is necessary that. Kio ĉi tie estas = What is this? Kio ĉi tie estus = What would this be? Kio ĉi tie estus formas = What would this form?

Adverbs. (a). Participle-Adverbs. —In Esperanto, when the participle relates to the subject (para. 211), but does not qualify it, then the participle takes the adverbial form. For impersonal use see para. 164 (d).

Examples.—Legante, ni lernas—In reading we learn. Starante sur la supro de la turo, li povis vidigi la preĝejon = Standing on the top of the hill, he could see the church. Estante furiosa, ŝi ne volis paroli al sia filo = Being angry, she would not speak to her nephew. Malfermante la fenestro, li vidis la amason sur la strato = Having opened (or, after opening) the window, he saw the crowd in (on) the street. Ekrigante la librojn, ŝi ĵetas sur la takilon = Having glanced (or, after glancing) at the book, she put it on the table. Datante de la lemejestro, la knabo kruĝis = Having been beaten by the schoolmaster, the boy howled terribly.

Adverbs of quantity, like other words signifying quantity, have always their complement introduced by the preposition da.

Examples.—Kio da ĝi = Some (or, a little) of it. Kio da mondo = How many. Kio da ĉapelo = A few women. Kio da fruloj = How many brothers have you? Kio da homoj = How many people are there? Kio da ĉi tio = How much is this? Kio da ĉi tio estas = How much is this?
246. (a). Expressions such as "more and more," "at most," etc., are thus rendered:—

Pli-malpli, pli aŭ malpli, plie aŭ malpleje = More or less.

Pli = More and more, moreover.

Malpleje = Least of all.

Pli-aŭ = At (the) most, usually.

Malpleje-aŭ = At (the) least.

Pli = In excess, too many.

Malpleje = (at) least, least.

Troe = In excess, too many.

EXAMPLES.—

Unu porno pli-aŭ malpleje ne sigi = More or less does not signify.

Plie, mi devas dirid'A, ke... = Moreover, I must tell you that...

Ni estas kvin pli-aŭ kaj ili sept malpleje = We shall be five at most and they seven at least.

En la kesto mi trovis du librojn troe = In the box I found two books too many (in excess).

247. Grammatical adverbs and the accusative case.—Adverbs exercise no influence on the case of nouns, adjectives, or pronouns (see para. 243), but adverbially, participles of active verbs are followed by the accusative if used without a preposition (see para. 243). As regards other grammatical adverbs, the following remarks are taken from "Esperantujoj," by Paul Fruinier:

"Derived adverbs are often used as prepositions (with a substantive complement). Mr. Kofman says, in his preface to Kain:*-

Konferme malnovajn titolojn = Accordcement with old titles,

Rilate vortojn = In regard to words,

Essepte lian biografion = With the exception of his biography,

etc., etc. Why, in such expressions, is the accusative used after the adverb? M. de Beaufront says:—

"(a). Adverbs used as prepositions, like same, same, touching, on, according to, are followed by the accusative.

Pli = too much, excess.

Pli-aŭ = at (the) most, usually.

Troe = too many, excess.

Malpleje = least, least.

Ex. — Unu pli-aŭ du libroj = One too many books.

Pli-aŭ = At (the) most, usually.
ADVERBS. 11 247—248.

Verbs

koncerni = concern, tuŝi = touch, supozi = suppose, offendi = offend, excepti = except. These

prepositions take, therefore, as a direct complement, a noun or pronoun that follows them.

109.

It is only when the prepositional forms "koncernante," "supoziante," etc., are used, distinct terms of a verb, and have

the appearance of adverbs (by their terminations) that is for the forms "rilate, konforme, kompare," etc.,

the accusative is used after them. For the forms "escepte, rilate, koncerne, kompare," etc.,

the accusative is substituted for the nominative with a preposition, as

"rilate al tio," = "rilate tion" = "with regard to that;" "kon-

forme al tio," = "konforme tion" = "in accordance with that;"

Thus the explanation appears least objectionable.

(c). With reference to the foregoing remarks from the "Esperanta Sintakso," we may add that it is

optional either to use the accusative after such

verbs as "konforme, rilate, escepte," etc., or to add

a suitable preposition with the complement in the

nominative, as "konforme al, kun, en, je;" "rilate al;" "escepte de (or, kun en escepto de) — will the examples

(see para. 254 (a)).

248. Comparatives and superlatives.—These

are marked in the same way as adjectives (see para.

112—114).

Examples.—"Pli rapide, olbone = More quickly than well.

Malpli forte, ol kutime = Weaker (less strong) than customary.

Eliaj dolce, ĉieli eble (or, kieli eble plej dolce) = As sweetly as possible.

Si kantas la plej bone el ciuj = She sings best of all.

Escepte siaj = He acted very wisely.

N.B.—Note that "konformante" is predicative (see para.

209 (5).)

248. (a). Adverbs and adjectives.—Be careful

not to use the adjective for the adverb.

Examples.—Li furas rapide — He runs rapidly.

Pleuris al mort (or, hunas-pregnaj kunaj) — More heavily.

Eliaj en behejaj el jenaj al olitone = The new boy walking

that he was (is) walking more slowly than usual.

"Eliaj = Note that "eliaj" is predicate (see para. 39 B.)
ADVERBS.

LIST OF ADVERBS.

248. (b). The following list of adverbs contains all those found amongst the primary words and are formed from them, also a number of useful grammatical adverbs.

Adiaŭ = Adieu, farewell, good-bye.

EXAMPLE.—Li diris al si adiaŭ, kaj foriris-

Af ranke = Post-free.
Af rankite = Post-paid.
Ajn = Ever.

Ajn is generally used after the correlative words beginning with K, as kia, kiam, etc, (see table of correlative words, para. 147). It then answers to words ending in " ever," but, unlike English, it is never joined to the preceding word (para. 149). EXAMPLES.—Kia ajn = Whatever kind of, kia ajn = However, kio ajn = Whatever, kio ajn = However much. Kiu ajn = Whoever, kiu ajn = However, whichever, whichsoever.

Aliloke = Elsewhere.
Alivorte = In other words.
Almenaŭŭ = At least.

EXAMPLE.—Donu al mi almenaŭŭ la duonon de tiu biscvifon = Give me at least the half of that biscuit.

Alvenante = On arrival.
Ambaŭ = Both, one and the other (pronoun).

EXAMPLES.—Ili ambaŭ kuris al la stacidomo= They both ran to the station. La ambaŭ = The two, both.

Ankaŭ = Also, too.

EXAMPLES.—Li ankaŭ venis al mi, kaj mi likas ĝin. Kies ajn = Whosesoever.

Ankoraj = Yet, still. (See remarks on jam). EXAMPLES.—Oni ne satis ankoraj ĝis tiu tempo. Mi ne volis ĝin ankoraj ĝis tiu tempo. 160
Antaŭe — Formally, previously, beforehand, in front.

Aparte — Aside, apart, separately, specially.

Apena — Hardly, scarcely.

EXAMPLE — J. ĝi apenati pensas tion = hardly think that (or, so).

Baldaŭ — Soon.

EXAMPLE — Ĝi esperas, ke li venos baldaŭ = I hope he will (may) come soon.

Bis — Once more, again, more.

EXAMPLE — Bis! = Encore!

Bonstate — In good condition.

Ĉi — The nearest (tio = that, tio ĉi = this), (tiu = that, the minor, ĉi ĉi = this, the latter), (tie = there), (tien = thither), (ĉio = all, ĉi ĉio = all this) (para. 143).

EXAMPLE — Bonstate ĉi tie estas boniĝo. = There is a good place here.

Ĉiel — For all means, for every reason (para. 159).

EXAMPLE — Ĝiel ne estus ĉi tie — For every reason that is the best.

Ĉiam — Always, ever (para. 151).

EXAMPLE — Ĝi ĉiam dankevis, kiam li venis = He always thanked when he came.

Ĉiam — Perpetually, continually.

EXAMPLE — Ĝi ploras ĉiam (para. 149).

Ĉiel — In every (manner) way, all ways (para. 153).

EXAMPLE — Ĝi ĉiel nova — In every (manner) new — All new.

Ĉiam — For every reason, all ways (para. 154).

EXAMPLE — Ĝi ĉiam nova — All new (para. 154).

Ĉiam — For every reason, all ways (para. 154).

EXAMPLE — Ĝi ĉiam nova — All new (para. 154).

Ĉiel — In every (manner) way, all ways (para. 153).

EXAMPLE — Ĝi ĉiel nova — In every (manner) new — All new.

Ĉiam — Always, ever (para. 151).

EXAMPLE — Ĝi ĉiam dankevis, kiam li venis = He always thanked when he came.

Ĉiam — Perpetually, continually.

EXAMPLE — Ĝi ploras ĉiam (para. 149).

Ĉiel — In every (manner) way, all ways (para. 153).

EXAMPLE — Ĝi ĉiel nova — In every (manner) new — All new.

Ĉiam — For every reason, all ways (para. 154).

EXAMPLE — Ĝi ĉiam nova — All new (para. 154).

Ĉiel — In every (manner) way, all ways (para. 153).

EXAMPLE — Ĝi ĉiel nova — In every (manner) new — All new.

Ĉiam — Always, ever (para. 151).

EXAMPLE — Ĝi ĉiam dankevis, kiam li venis = He always thanked when he came.

Ĉiam — Perpetually, continually.

EXAMPLE — Ĝi ploras ĉiam (para. 149).

Ĉiel — In every (manner) way, all ways (para. 153).

EXAMPLE — Ĝi ĉiel nova — In every (manner) new — All new.

Ĉiam — For every reason, all ways (para. 154).

EXAMPLE — Ĝi ĉiam nova — All new (para. 154).

Ĉiel — In every (manner) way, all ways (para. 153).

EXAMPLE — Ĝi ĉiel nova — In every (manner) new — All new.

Ĉiam — Always, ever (para. 151).

EXAMPLE — Ĝi ĉiam dankevis, kiam li venis = He always thanked when he came.

Ĉiam — Perpetually, continually.

EXAMPLE — Ĝi ploras ĉiam (para. 149).

Ĉiel — In every (manner) way, all ways (para. 153).

EXAMPLE — Ĝi ĉiel nova — In every (manner) new — All new.

Ĉiam — For every reason, all ways (para. 154).

EXAMPLE — Ĝi ĉiam nova — All new (para. 154).

Ĉiel — In every (manner) way, all ways (para. 153).

EXAMPLE — Ĝi ĉiel nova — In every (manner) new — All new.

Ĉiam — Always, ever (para. 151).

EXAMPLE — Ĝi ĉiam dankevis, kiam li venis = He always thanked when he came.

Ĉiam — Perpetually, continually.

EXAMPLE — Ĝi ploras ĉiam (para. 149).

Ĉiel — In every (manner) way, all ways (para. 153).

EXAMPLE — Ĝi ĉiel nova — In every (manner) new — All new.

Ĉiam — For every reason, all ways (para. 154).

EXAMPLE — Ĝi ĉiam nova — All new (para. 154).

Ĉiel — In every (manner) way, all ways (para. 153).

EXAMPLE — Ĝi ĉiel nova — In every (manner) new — All new.

Ĉiam — Always, ever (para. 151).

EXAMPLE — Ĝi ĉiam dankevis, kiam li venis = He always thanked when he came.

Ĉiam — Perpetually, continually.

EXAMPLE — Ĝi ploras ĉiam (para. 149).

Ĉiel — In every (manner) way, all ways (para. 153).

EXAMPLE — Ĝi ĉiel nova — In every (manner) new — All new.

Ĉiam — For every reason, all ways (para. 154).

EXAMPLE — Ĝi ĉiam nova — All new (para. 154).

Ĉiel — In every (manner) way, all ways (para. 153).

EXAMPLE — Ĝi ĉiel nova — In every (manner) new — All new.

Ĉiam — Always, ever (para. 151).

EXAMPLE — Ĝi ĉiam dankevis, kiam li venis = He always thanked when he came.

Ĉiam — Perpetually, continually.

EXAMPLE — Ĝi ploras ĉiam (para. 149).

Ĉiel — In every (manner) way, all ways (para. 153).

EXAMPLE — Ĝi ĉiel nova — In every (manner) new — All new.

Ĉiam — For every reason, all ways (para. 154).

EXAMPLE — Ĝi ĉiam nova — All new (para. 154).

Ĉiel — In every (manner) way, all ways (para. 153).

EXAMPLE — Ĝi ĉiel nova — In every (manner) new — All new.

Ĉiam — Always, ever (para. 151).

EXAMPLE — Ĝi ĉiam dankevis, kiam li venis = He always thanked when he came.

Ĉiam — Perpetually, continually.

EXAMPLE — Ĝi ploras ĉiam (para. 149).

Ĉiel — In every (manner) way, all ways (para. 153).

EXAMPLE — Ĝi ĉiel nova — In every (manner) new — All new.

Ĉiam — For every reason, all ways (para. 154).

EXAMPLE — Ĝi ĉiam nova — All new (para. 154).

Ĉiel — In every (manner) way, all ways (para. 153).

EXAMPLE — Ĝi ĉiel nova — In every (manner) new — All new.
ADVERBS.

Ĉiufoje kiam, or, čiu fojon kiam, or, kiam ajn = whenever.

Ĉiujare = Yearly, annually, every year.

Ĝionate = Monthly, every month.

ĜiU3emajne = Weekly, every (each) week.

Ĝiiltage = Daily.

La tage = By the day, Tage-

Nokte = By night.

Gil = Whether.

An interrogative adverb used at the beginning of a direct question; it has no English equivalent. In indirect questions it again = "whether." Gil simply shows that the sentence is interrogative, and therefore, to translate it, must look back to the sense of the word and to its subject, as to in phrase the interrogative will = "do", "does", "did", " have", " has", " get", " will", " shall", " may", " were", " should", " would", " can", etc., etc.


Bu —whether (also a conjunction) is used in indirect questions, when we generally use "whether".

EXAMPLE.—Diru a, mi, ĉu li venos = Tell me if (whether) he will come.

Cu .. Cu = Whether .. whether.

EXAMPLE.—Cu li venos, ĉu li venos, Pa ĵ eno foriro = Whether he comes (will come) (or) whether he does not (will not come), Paul will depart.

Dekstre = On the right.

Maldekstren = To the left.

Due = Secondly.

Dum = While, whilst, as (also a preposition and conjunctious word).

Eble = Possibly, perhaps.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adverbs</th>
<th>Page 218 (3)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>• ECH = Even.</td>
<td>EXAMPLE.— Li ee pensis, A-f... = He even thought that...</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E = Even.</td>
<td>Eĉ la infanoj insultis min— Even the children abused me.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Efektive = In fact, really.</td>
<td>EXAMPLE.— Ĝi en ĉi tiu ĵaro ne ĉu estas releva. = In this year it is not relevant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ekstere = Outwardly.</td>
<td>EXAMPLE.— Ĝi ne estas scia ke li estas ĝia libro. = She doesn't know that he is her book.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interne = Inwardly, internally, within, inside.</td>
<td>EXAMPLE.— Ĝi estas interna ĵena kiu estas interna ĵena. = She is an internal girl who is an internal girl.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entute = All the whole, as a whole.</td>
<td>EXAMPLE.— Ĝi estis tute oktobre. = It was all October.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Facile = Easily.</td>
<td>EXAMPLE.— Ĝi estis facile oktobre. = It was easily October.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Malfacile = With difficulty.</td>
<td>EXAMPLE.— Ĝi ne estis malfacile oktobre. = It was not difficult October.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fine = In conclusion, lastly.</td>
<td>EXAMPLE.— Ĝi estis fine oktobre. = It was fine October.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For = Away, forth.</td>
<td>EXAMPLE.— Ĝi estis for oktobre. = It was for October.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forme = In shape, in form.</td>
<td>EXAMPLE.— Ĝi estis formen oktobre. = It was formed October.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calope = Quickly.</td>
<td>EXAMPLE.— Ĝi estis calope oktobre. = It was quickly October.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grandnombre = A great number.</td>
<td>EXAMPLE.— Ĝi estis grandnombre oktobre. = It was a great number October.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jishodia = Up to date.</td>
<td>EXAMPLE.— Ĝi estis jishodia oktobre. = It was up to date October.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cisnune = To now, hitherto.</td>
<td>EXAMPLE.— Ĝi estis cisnune oktobre. = It was to now October.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sissate = Till satiety (is reached).</td>
<td>EXAMPLE.— Ĝi estis sissate oktobre. = It was till satiety October.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ĵtastatempe = Opportunely, to time.</td>
<td>EXAMPLE.— Ĝi estis Ĵtastatempe oktobre. = It was opportunely October.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kiera = Yesterday.</td>
<td>EXAMPLE.— Mi lin vidis hieraŭ = I saw him yesterday.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antaŭ hieraŭ = The day before yesterday.</td>
<td>EXAMPLE.— Ĝi estis antaŭ hieraŭ oktobre. = It was the day before yesterday October.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lieraŭ matene = Yesterday morning.</td>
<td>EXAMPLE.— Ĝi estis lieraŭ matene oktobre. = It was yesterday morning October.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jodiaŭ = To-day.</td>
<td>EXAMPLE.— Ĝi estis jodiaŭ oktobre. = It was to-day October.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iarn ĵorno = This (to-day) evening.</td>
<td>EXAMPLE.— Ĝi estis iarn ĵorno oktobre. = It was this evening October.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>am = All some (any) time, once, ever (para. 151).</td>
<td>EXAMPLE.— Ĝi estis am oktobre. = It was some time October.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Somewhere, anywhere (para. 155).</td>
<td>EXAMPLE.— Ĝi estis am oktobre. = It was some time October.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1) = Somewhere, anywhere (para. 155).</td>
<td>EXAMPLE.— Ĝi estis am oktobre. = It was some time October.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(2) = Somewhere, anywhere (para. 155).</td>
<td>EXAMPLE.— Ĝi estis am oktobre. = It was some time October.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(3) = Somewhere, anywhere (para. 155).</td>
<td>EXAMPLE.— Ĝi estis am oktobre. = It was some time October.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LEI — **Somehow, some way, some manner, anyhow, in any way** (para. 153).

Example: — *Id ĝi sukcesas en la ial* — *Somehow lie succeeds in everything.*

IOM — **Somewhat, some quantity, a little, some** (para. 156).

Example: — *La vetero estas iom pli varm* — *The weather is somewhat (a little) warmer.*

LOMETE — **A very little, in a very slight degree.**

Example: — *Gi estis iomete pli granda, ol kula* = *li was slightly larger than a gnat.*

INTENCE — **Intentionally, on purpose.**

IA = In fact, indeed.

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, ĝi estis varma* — *Yes, it was warm.*

Example: — *Ja, Ľ
ADVERBS. 31 248 (i).

Ju pli des pli = The more...the more (para. 112).
EXAMPLE: - Je pli mi line konas, des pli mi line amas. = The more I know him, the more I love him.

Ju pli des malpli = The more...the less.
EXAMPLE: - Je pli mi I in ridas, des malpli mi pla al »»» = The more I see him, the less he pleases me.

Ju malpli des pli = The less...the less.
EXAMPLE: - Ju malpli mi donnas, des malpli mi sentas la bezonon dormi— = The less I sleep, the less I feel the need (to sleep).

Ju malpli des pli = The less...the more.
EXAMPLE: - Ju malpli mi trinkas, des pli mi mangos = The less I drink, the more I eat.

Jus = Just, at the moment.
EXAMPLES: - Mi jus vidis sin = I have just seen her.
- Mi jus ne pora* diri al vi ke li estas = I cannot at the moment tell you his name.

Ka »»» or ka »»» = In secret.
Kelkfoje = Sometimes.
Kiel = Just, at the moment.
EXAMPLES: - Mi a »»» detos de ri tiun libron, kiel ane estas = I will buy from you that book whatever it may (shall) be.
Kelly ai — Wherever, wherever (para. 145).

Kiel ajn — However, however (para. 145).

Kiel = How, in what manner, like, (in comparison = ...as).

Kiel a — However, in whatever manner (para. 145).

Kiom = How much, as much as, as far as (para. 196).

Kompreno = Comprehensible, comprehensible.

Kompatriota = Fellow countryman.

Kompreninda = Of course.

Kondicion = Conditionally, on condition.

Konforma = Conformably, in accordance.

Kontinba = By intent.

Kontente = Contentedly. Malsukontente = Dismally.
**Kontentige** = Satisfactorily, in a satisfactory manner.

**Kontraŭe** = On the contrary, opposite to, vice versa.

**Kredible** = Likely, probably.

**Kune** = Together with, along with. **Malkune** = Separately.

**Kune kun** = Together with, along with.

**Kvazaŭ** = As if, as though, as it were (also conjunction).

**EXAMPLES.** — Li starts, kvazaŭ li vidis fantomon = He stood as though he saw (should see) a phantom.

**Laŭlonge** = In length, lengthwise.

**Laŭte** = Loudly, in a loud voice. **Mallaŭte** = Softly, in a soft voice.

**Lente** = Cleverly. **Mallente** = Awkwardly.

**Longe** = Long, long time. **Mallonge** = Briefly, shortly.

**Larĝe** = In breadth, broadways, transversely.

**Mem** — Self, selves, very (pronoun) (para. 127).

**Morgaŭ** = To-morrow. **Morgaŭ postmorgaŭ** = The day after to-morrow.
ADVERBS.

Multe pli multe da = Many more of.

Ne = No, not, nay.

Exemple = Is it desirable before? Do you wish to answer? So, no, yes answer. No, I have (not particularly) one remarks no objection, para. 59.

Ne tute = Not entirely, not altogether, not quite.

Exemple = Li ne tute tre neimplique en las, ads rice. He was not altogether wrong in what he said.

Ne dube; Sendube = No doubt; without doubt, undeniably.

Nek = Nie (para. 59).

Exemple = Li ne phile al mi. Nek al mi mâi. I don't like him. But I either (also).

Nek = Neller, neor (para. 59).

Exemple = Nek li ne or os ne Neller li az I can't see there.

Nonial = For no reason (reason) (para. 150).

Exemple = Kiam li kek deb el ne. For sp reason he wasn't going to see me.

Noniam = Never (para. 151).

Exemple = Mi ne devia reni al mi = I don't see her.

Nonie = Nachows, in no place (para. 152).

Exemple = Nachows, neor jek pace sema fandce sema pace se neor jek pace sema fandce sema pace he is so far that nobody understands her.

Noniel = Neither, by no means, in no way (para. 153).

Exemple = Li neor jek pace dompera ne = He can not go in no way (at all) understand her.

Nonien = Each, nothing, nothing at all, no quantity (para. 156).

Exemple = Li neor jek pace reger neor = He has nothing at all.

Nepre = Unfailingly, certainly, surely, infallibly.

Exemple = Ti jek pace nepre jek pace = The book certainly belongs to me.


**Directional Adverbs**

- **Norden** = Northwards, to the north
- **Süden** = Southwards, to the south
- **Osten** = Eastwards, to the east
- **Westen** = Westwards

**Time Adverbs**

- **Hun** = Now
- **Nun** = At present

**Examples**

- **Mi nun foriras** = I am now going out
- **Mi ne poi-as nun lin ridt** = I cannot see him now
- **Mi estas okupata nune** = I am busy at present

**Examples**

- **Li haras nur du cevalojn** = He has but (only) two horses

**Note**

- Care should be taken to place *nur* in such a position in a sentence so as to convey the required meaning of the phrase. It is best generally to place it before the word to which it specially refers (see para. 88).

**Other Adverbs**

- **Pace** = In peace, peacefully
- **Pagar** = In payment
- **Parkere** = By heart
- **Parole** = Verbally, by word of mouth
- **Scribe** = In writing

**Examples**

- **Mi trapasis la arbaron piedire** = I traversed the wood on foot
- **La plej bela el ciuj** = The finest of all

**Formal Adverbs**

- **(la) Plej** = (the) Most (for superlatives), most (para. 113)

**Examples**

- **Vi agis plej sa ĝe** = You acted most wisely in doing that
ADVERBS.

Plaje - Most, mostly, omnily, of and.
Examples. - Si (the) plaje, di ja (for) (we) - Mostly (comparative).

Plajure - With pleasure.
Examples. - Li vini plajure en esperanto - He came with pleasure.

Pi - (for the comparative), rather (para. 119).
Examples. - Li kresis pli ol esperanto - He grew more than esperanto.

Ple - Further, moreover.
Pli - Further, farther, more. - Na pli - No longer.
Examples. - Li ne faros pli nun = He will not go any longer.

Ple = Furthermore.
Podone = Half, by halves.
Poste = After, afterward.
Prima = Especially, particularly.
Preskaŭ = Almost, nearly, well-nigh.

Examples. - Li ne faros nun = He will not go any longer.

Pripensinte = On the contrary.
Proksime = Near.
Malproksime = Far off.
Proksimume = Approximately.
Prunte = On loan.

Examples. - Mi preuis la monon prunte = I took the money on loan.

Rapide = Rapidly, quickly, soon. - Malrapide = Slowly.
Rapidire = With speed, by swifthood.

110
ave = Enchantingly, delightfully.
ave = Again, in return.
heit = Straightforwardly, directly.
heitave = Backwards.
heitave = Topsy-turvy, upset.
heitave = Back.
heitave = Simultaneously.
heitave = Consequently, therefore.
heitave = In writing.
weit = In a wild state.
weit = In a tame state.
weit = In the same time, simultaneously.
weit = Beneath, below, under, underneath.
weit = Enough, sufficiently.
weit = Up.
weit = Upwards.
weit = From above.
weit = On one's knees, kneeling.
weit = By (with) surprise.
weit = Therefore, accordingly, for that (such) reason.
weit = In this (such) manner, thus.
weit = Will anyone be there?
weit = Are you going thither (there)?
Tiel $\vdash$ or, $\check{t}i$ $\vdash$ Here.

Tien $\check{c}i$, or, $\check{c}i$ tien $\vdash$ Hither, here (para. 143).

Examples.—

Cu viaj fratoj estas $\check{c}i$?

Are your brothers here?

Venu $\check{c}i$ = Gome here (hither),

Oi lie ni vidis amasojn da virinoj

= Here we saw crowds of men and women.

Tiel $\vdash$ Thus, in that way, like that, so much as. In

comparative in composition is kiom. Tiel kiom...

= As...as (para. 153).

EXAMPLE.

—Li estas tiel forta, kiom vi

= He is as strong as you.

Tiel...

= So...that.

EXAMPLE.

—Li tiel kriegis, ke li ra

$\check{u}$ $\check{k}i$ $\check{g}i$ pro tio

= He shouted so, that he became hoarse through it.

Tiom $\vdash$ As much, as many, so much.

Its correlative in comparison is kiom, and

tiom, kiom $\vdash$ as much as (para. 156).

EXAMPLE.

—Tiom estas malfacile memori

= So much is difficult to remember.

Li tiom laboris, kiom vi-

= He worked as much as you.

Donu al mi tiom da pomj, kiom dapiroj

= Give me as many apples as pears.

Tiom pli $\vdash$ So much the more.

EXAMPLE.

—Tiom pli bone $\vdash$

= So much the better,

Tiom pli malbone $\vdash$

= So much the worse.

Trie $\vdash$ Plight through.

Tre $\vdash$ Very, much.

EXAMPLE.

—Li estas tre dika

= He is very corpulent.

Mi tre estimas lin—

= I esteem him much.

Treege $\vdash$ Extremely, exceedingly.

EXAMPLE.

—$\check{s}$i estas treege kolera

= She is extremely angry.

Trie $\vdash$ Thirdly.

Triumfe $\vdash$ Triumphantly.

Tro $\vdash$ Too, too much.

EXAMPLE.

—Li estas tro grasa

= He is too fat.

Mi lin tro amas $\vdash$

= I love him too much.
ADVERBS. 

1. **ade** — In excess.  
   **Example.** — Dudek funtoj trot = Twenty pounds in excess.

2. **ajo** — At once, immediately.  
   **Example.** — Li ajas liin domine = He went home immediately (at once).

3. **aj kiam** — As soon as (immediately when).  
   **Example.** — Li ajas kiam mi vin vidas = As soon as I saw him, I ran to meet him.

4. **ute** — Entirely, quite, utterly, stark.  
   **Example.** — Vi estas tute pravaj = You are quite right.
   **Example.** — Li estas tute freneza = He is stark mad.

5. **ute ne** — Not at all.  
   **Example.** — Mi tute ne kromante mi ne = I don't at all understand you.

6. **inu** — First, firstly, at first.  

7. **ute** — Emulously.

8. **role** — With one's will.

9. **kontraŭ vole** — Against one's will.

10. **memvole** — Voluntarily.

11. **senvole** — Involuntarily.

12. **folonte** — Willingly, readily.

From the above list we see that the adverb *ute* often used in Esperanto in place of a preposition and its complement (para. 252).  

**Example.** — Ŝi estas nigre vestita = She is dressed in black.

**Example.** — Li donis al mi du ailingojn por la libro = He gave me two shillings in payment for the book.

**Example.** — In u = In shape it was like a crown.

**Example.** — La libro estas angle kribita = The book is written in English.

**Example.** — Hamleta estas radukita esperanteno (or, esperante) = Hamlet has been translated into Esperanto. Note here that *esperanteno* is accusative > figurative movement (para. 67), but some writers do not use the accusative in this case.
The following is a list of the 50 simple prepositions, showing the paragraphs under which remarks and examples of their use will be found:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Preposition</th>
<th>Paragraph</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>At</td>
<td>249</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For</td>
<td>260</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In</td>
<td>261</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On</td>
<td>262</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To</td>
<td>263</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For, in front of</td>
<td>264</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Before, in front of</td>
<td>265</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Before (in)</td>
<td>266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beside, close by</td>
<td>267</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>About, around</td>
<td>268</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By, from, by</td>
<td>269</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>During</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Outside</td>
<td>271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Out of</td>
<td>272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For, on, for as</td>
<td>273</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On, upon</td>
<td>274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Between</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indefinite</td>
<td>276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Against, opposite</td>
<td>277</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Besides, except</td>
<td>278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>According to</td>
<td>280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notwithstanding</td>
<td>281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By means of</td>
<td>282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At the rate of</td>
<td>283</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is, at the rate of</td>
<td>284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At, in, behind</td>
<td>285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>By, past</td>
<td>286</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On, about</td>
<td>287</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Without</td>
<td>288</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ex. apart of</td>
<td>289</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Of, of</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>About, over</td>
<td>291</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Through</td>
<td>292</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Across</td>
<td>293</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

174
PREPOSITIONS (Prepozicioj).

249. Prepositions express the relation between words, showing how one thing, action, or quality stands in relation to some other thing, action, or quality.

Example: La rireroj jiitas al la oceano — Rivers flow towards the ocean.

Li man ĝias antaŭ pleni — He eats before drinking.

Xia klomo staras ekster la arbetaro — Our house stands outside the plantation.

250. Every preposition, but one, in Esperanto has a fixed and definite signification, and great care must be taken to use the preposition which gives the meaning we wish to convey. A careful examination of the list of prepositions in para. 259 will show the errors we should make by translating the English preposition into its apparent corresponding one in Esperanto.

251. The preposition je is the only one in Esperanto without a definite meaning. It should be used only when we have to employ a preposition and are uncertain which we ought to select. We can, however, omit the preposition, and put its complement (noun or pronoun) in the accusative case, provided no ambiguity is likely to arise through the presence of other accusatives in the sentence. For example:

Li ĝonas je tio — or, Li ĝonas tion — = He rejoices at (or, over) that.

There is no Esperanto preposition which gives exactly the English meaning of "at" or "over" in this sense. We might, perhaps, say that these words are part of the verb "to rejoice at," or, "to rejoice over." The nearest Esperanto preposition would be pri or pro de — or, because of, and we could say: Li ĝonas pri tio — He rejoices because of that (see Rule 14, para. 94).
251—253. PREPOSITIONS.

(a) Je, with the nominative, is generally used before the complement of the adjectives, "deep, high, long, thick, wide," but the accusative without a preposition is equally correct.

Example.— Profunda (alta, longa) je levin futoj (or, levin futojn) = Five feet deep (high, long).

La rivero estas larĝa je kvindelc metroj (or, larĝa kvindek metrojn) = The river is fifty metres wide. We could, however, say, La rivero havas kvindek metrojn da larĝo (or, da larĝeco).

252. Adverb for preposition.—An adverb is often used instead of a preposition and its complement (para. 248 (c)).

Example.— Li parolas saĝe = He speaks with wisdom, instead of, Li parolas kun saĝeco. Li estis frapata perforte = He was being struck with great violence, instead of, Li estis frapata kun perfortego.

253. Preposition omitted.—Not only the preposition je (para. 251), but also other prepositions, are frequently omitted in Esperanto where we use them in English; but in such cases (as stated in para. 8) their complements must be in the accusative to show the omission. Care, however, must be taken that the omission does not make the phrase ambiguous.

Example.— Li venos la mardon proksiman (or, en la mardo proksiman) = He will come next Tuesday. Mi ligo Madridon (or, al Madrido) morgaŭ = I shall go to Madrid tomorrow. Mi lin vidis en la dekima de julio = I saw him on the 10th of July. Ni restis en la veturilo du horoj (or, dum du horoj) = We remained two hours in the carriage.

(c) Prepositions are also always omitted between two substantives, when the word nomata = named could be understood (para. 106 (d)), so —

La urbo (nomata) Parizo = The city of (named) Paris. La monato septembro = The month of September. Li uzadas la lingvon internacion (nomatan) Esperanton = He uses the international language Esperanto.
(b). The preposition of is sometimes omitted in such expressions as:

The man who met my friend, or a friend of mine.

The word person is Three of my relatives, or, three relations of mine.

254. Prepositions as prefixes. — Prepositions are frequently used as prefixes, and when the compound word is a verb, the preposition is often repeated before the indirect complement of the verb.

Examples: — He entered (into) the room. He entered into the room.

We took the book out of the house. We took the book out of the house.

255. Prepositions and case. — Unlike English, all prepositions in Esperanto govern the nominative case. If the complement of a preposition is in the accusative case, it is not owing to the preposition, but to the rule that the accusative is used to show the direction or place towards which movement (physical or moral) is made (para. 67).

256. Preposition and the accusative of direction. — As already stated in para. 67, the accusative is used when direction (physical or moral) is implied towards something. But if the word towards which such movement is implied is the complement of a preposition, then such word is in the nominative or accusative, in accordance with the following rules:

(a) If the preposition denotes of itself movement, its complement will be in the nominative, in accordance with Rule 6 that prepositions govern that case.

(b) If the preposition does not of itself denote movement, then movement is shown by placing its complement in the accusative (para. 67).
PROPOSITIONS.

257. Prepositions denoting movement.—The following three prepositions denote movement, and consequently their complement is never in the accusative:

- **To**, towards.
- **Up to**, as far as.
- **Through**.

As regards the others, the following are those in general use, whose complement takes the accusative of direction when motion towards something is implied:

- **Before**.
- **In**.
- **Against**.
- **Under**.
- **Over**.
- **Upon**.
- **Across**.

Also **At**, according to some writers.

**Examples.**

- He stood for a moment before the looking-glass, and then came before (into the presence of) the king.
- He lived with me, but we went daily to his father's to dine.
- The child danced in the courtyard, and then ran into the garden.
- Throw that under the table.
- Throw the stone over the wall.
- I take upon myself this business (moral movement, therefore accusative, since *sur* does not of itself show movement).
- The boy waded across the river, and, on the other side of it, found other boys.

258. Prepositional expressions.—Adverbs are not unfrequently followed by prepositions, thus forming prepositional expressions. They take the nominative case, like simple prepositions.

**Examples.**

- In the middle of the field.
- At the bottom of a box.
- At the side of the prisoner.
- Near the church.
- On the right of the road.
- At the top of the wall.
- Thanks to his advice.
- Away from the house.
- Take your hand off (away from) my neck.

259. Prepositional phrases.—These are not unfrequently followed by prepositions, thus forming prepositional phrases. They take the nominative case, like simple prepositions.

**Examples.**

- The middle of the field.
- The bottom of a box.
- The side of the prisoner.
- The church.
- The right of the road.
- The top of the wall.
- Thanks to his advice.
- Away from the house.
- Take your hand off (away from) my neck.
A few adverbs, used as prepositional expressions, are sometimes followed by a suitable preposition and sometimes not; in the latter case the complement is in the accusative, to show the omission (para. 253).

**Examples:**

- Koncerne tiun aferon (or, Koncernoj je tiu afero) = Concerning that matter.
- Formo al, kun ili (or, Je ili) = In conformity with that.
- Rilati al lia karakteron (or, Rilati al lia karaktero) = With regard to (relative to, as regards, referring to) his character (para. 247).

These adverbs are alternative words for simple prepositions. We might, in some cases, use pri koncerne or rilate, and ta ŭ for konforme.

(b) When the adverb has the participial active form, the complement is governed by it (para. 66 (b)).

**Example:**

Ĉiuj iliri* el la ĉambro exceptinte Johanon = All left the room save (with the exception of) John.

(c) Two prepositions sometimes are used.

**Example:**

Eniri, ke ĉi el la pordo = "Come in!" shouted a voice from within (inside) the door.

Iri ramp* el la sofa = He crept from under the sofa.

La stono havis la altan de ĉirkaŭ eight centimetres and la larĝon de ĉirkaŭ five centimetres.

El la tirkedaro la muso kure de la liton = Out from under the chest of drawers the mouse ran under the bed.

Do ne hastu foriri el antan h = Do not hasten to leave his presence (go away from before him).

259. The relation of prepositions to their complement. English grammarians divide prepositions into various classes, but in Esperanto, with the exception of those mentioned in para. 257, denoting motion and rest, there are but two classes to which we need pay special attention, viz., those which relate to both place and time; and of these, two only, viz., antaŭ- and post- after, require care in making their meaning clear.

In the following remarks on prepositions the examples given of their use are placed under the various classes to which their English rendering would
assign to them; but we must bear in mind that, in accordance with Rule 14, every Esperanto proposition, except je, has a definite and constant meaning (para. 250). This definite meaning is given at the head of each proposition. The meanings given in the classes are only the various English renderings that can be given to the proposition (see English prepositions, paras. 260, 261).

REMARKS ON THE PREPOSITIONS.

259 (1). **Al** — To, towards.

Denotes approximation or addition.

**Approximation** = To, towards.

**EXAMPLES.** —

Li renin al ni = He came to (or towards) us.

Mi iras al Parizo, or, Mi iras Parizon = I am going to Paris.

If al be omitted, Parizon must be in the accusative of direction. Ni ne vidas, car la lumo estas ka šata al ni = We do not see, because the light is hidden from (towards) us by the curtains.

**N.B.** — Kašata al, not de, which, after a passive participle, means "by," but independently of this, it is logically used after kasi, in the sense of "to hide from," e.g., sed pro kio, kaši al li vian amon? = But why conceal from him your love?

**Addition** = To.

**EXAMPLES.** —

Mi donis akvon al la birdoj = I gave water to the birds.

La rozo apartenas al Teodoro = The rose belongs to Theodore.

Donu vestaĵojn al la malrieuoj = Give clothing to the poor.

**N.B.** — With some verbs al is often used with the complement in the nominative, when in English we use the preposition, e.g., —Li konsilis al mi fari tion = He advised me to do that.

Al is also sometimes used with personal pronouns in a possessive sense, as: —Li lavis al si la manojn, or, ili lavis al si = He washed his hands.

**Alpreni** = To take to, adopt.

**Alpas** = To step towards, approach.
259 (2). **Anstata** — Instead of.

One of the three prepositions that may be used before the Infinitive (see remarks on Infinitive, paras. 177, 179).

Substitution — Instead of, for, in place of, as a substitute


EXAMPLES —

Anstata li, oni midis lian fraton = Instead of him, they sent his brother.

Anstata eliri, li restis en la domo = Instead of going out, he remained in the house.

Anstata okulo = Instead of an eye.

Anstata fi«)i/o = An eye for an eye, and a tooth for a tooth.

Anstata uno el la qficm &fmln place of one of the officials.

As a root-word, Anstata = To replace (intrans.). Ansta[iulo = A proxy (person, instead of).

259 (3). **Anta** — Before, in front of.

Denotes place or time. Takes accusative of direction.

**Place** — Before, in front of.

**Time** — Before, ago.

**Explanation** — Antau = Before. Some weeks ago. Antau ol or kiam a few weeks ago. Antau = Before, in front of. The preposition is properly used both in the sense of "place" and "time," care must be taken to avoid a phrase so that no ambiguity may arise. In accordance like the following verb of some time should be used when time is emphasized. Antau ol or kiam la gepatroj betrothed met before the parents.arrived (== time, before the parents arrived). Johano ven antau la legist on, Bedjozefo esti* rfirWft el la jugejo antau ol

181
11 259 (3) — (G). l'RKI'OSITIONS.

John came before the judge, but Joseph had left the court before John's arrival.

As a prefix, Antaŭ — To foretell.

Antaŭ — to precede.

259 (4). Antaŭ — Before.

One of the three prepositions that may be used before the Infinitive (see remarks on Infinitive, para. 117). It always relates to time, and is properly a conjunction.

Time — Before, previous to the last when.

Ex. Antaŭi tri semajnoj ni estis en Parizo, sed antaŭi ŭi iri Londono, ni returis Berlinon = Three weeks ago we were in Paris, but before going to London, we travelled to Berlin.

Antaŭi ol eliri, li surmetis sian superreston = Going out, he put on his overcoat.

259 (5). Apud — Beside, close by.

Place = By, near, close by.

Ex. La batalo apud Farsalo ŝan gunj multajn aferojn en Romo = The battle near Pharsalia changed many things in Rome.

Li estas apud la pordo = He is near the door.

Li staris apud Johano = He stood by John.

Mi vesperman ĝi os ee tiu tablo apud la fenestro = I shall dine at that table close by the window.

As a root-word or prefix, we have: — Apudeco = Contiguity.

Apudesti = To be present, or near.

259 (6). En — In, with.

Marks the situation of a thing or action. Denotes place, time, or connection. Takes accusative of direction, according to some writers.

Place = In, with, on.

Ex. Sanon antaŭi li eliris = He left Sanon before he went.

Sanon en tiu stacio li iris = He went to Sanon in that station.

Sanon en la turo, kiu estas en la tiu stacio = The tower which is in that station.

Sanon en la tiu strato = On the other side of the street.
Prepositions. 1. 259 (6)—(7).

PREPOSITIONS. I 259 (6)—(7).

Mi estus en miaj ĉambroj. ‘I am staying at my friends, Mr. and Mrs. Smith.’

Time—En, en...

Example.—‘On our arrival the dog barked.’

Connection—En, en, en...

Example.—‘He barked at the dog on our arrival.’

Place—En, en, en...

Example.—‘In about three paces.’

Time—En...

Example.—‘About May we shall go away.’

Manner—En...

Example.—‘He took his wife round the waist.’

Quantity—En...

Example.—‘I wish to buy about ten pounds.’
Used only after words denoting quantity, measure, weight, number, etc.

Quantity—of.

Example.—Granda nombro da ideoj = A great number of ideas.
Prenu iom da ĝi = Take some of it.
Funto da teo = A pound of tea.
Post toarono da (or, de) horo = In (after) a quarter of an hour.
Sur la arbo sin trovis multo (or, multe) da birdoj = On the tree were (found themselves) many (of) birds.
Monero da unu franko = A coin of one franc.

K.B.—Be careful not to use da for de = oi, and vice versa.

Usage da m>lt^=A glass of wine.
Glaso de (or, por) vino = A wineglass.

NOTE.—Particular attention should be paid to the prepositions da, de, and el, all of which are often translated by the English preposition “of.” Note the following examples:

Da.—
Cento da pomoj. — A hundred (of) apples.
Dekduo da kideroj = A dozen (of) spoons.
Miliono da loĝantoj = A million (of) inhabitants.
Kvar metroj da tiu ĉi ĉiistofo = Four metres of this stuff.
Ducent kilometroj da longo — Two hundred kilometres in (of) length.

De.—
Tri estas duono de ses = Three is half of six.
Ok estas kvar kvinonoj de dek, = Eight is four-fifths of ten.
La domo de mia frato = The house of my brother, or, My brother’s house.
Doktoro de le ĝio-k = Doctor of laws.

El.—
Ciuj el la infanoj = Each of the children.
Unu el ni = One of us.
Ni faru tson el tson = Let us make use of that.
Domo konstruita el ŝtono = A house built of stone.
La plej bela floro el la ĝardeno = The most beautiful flower of the garden.

The article la does not follow da. If, after words denoting quantity, measure, weight, number, etc., the article is necessary, it is nearly always the case that the proper preposition to use is el or de, not da. Note the difference between “He ate a piece of bread” and “He ate a piece of the (particular) bread.” The former is Li man ĝis pecon da pano, and the latter Li man ĝis pecon de la pano. 184
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prepositions</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>De - Of, from, by</strong></td>
<td>La urbo Londono = The City of London. La monato julio = The month of July. Unu mia kunulo, for unu ti miaj kunuloj = One of my companions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Possession</strong></td>
<td>La libro de Petro = The book of Peter, or, Peter's book. La domo de mia kara pntro = My dear father's house.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Origin or Dependence</strong></td>
<td>De tiu tempo = From (since) that time. De la kreo de la mondo = Since the creation of the world. De tri semajn mi estas malsana = For three weeks I have been ill.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Place</strong></td>
<td>For de tie vi, fripono = Away from here, rascal! Li forestas de tie ei = He is away from here. Li stark meze de la malamikoj = He stood in the midst of the enemy. Proksime de la domo starts arbo = Near (to) the house stood a tree.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Time</strong></td>
<td>De du do do no = For three days I have been ill. De vi kuvo do mi vivis = For three weeks I have been ill.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note: "De" can also mean "of," denoting possession, and serving to form the genitive or possessive case. It also denotes origin, place, time, cause, agency, and disconnection or abstraction. It may be said to be equivalent to the preposition "of," and other same nouns might be used in the same way.*
Propositions

Cause = From, of, with.

Example: Li estas amata de mia patro = I am loved by my father.

Agency = By (after a passive verb, to show the agent).

Example: Mi estas amata de mia patro = I am loved by my father.

Disconnection or Abstraction = From.

Example: Ajjartign la pajlon dela fojm = Separate the straw from the hay.

Dum = During.

Example: Dum la tufa tago (or, La tva tagou) li restis sola = During the whole day he remained alone, or, He remained alone the whole day.

NOTE. — Dum, although frequently used as a conjunction or adverb, is rarely used as a preposition or with prepositional expressions. For our proposition “during” we generally use the adverb or the adverbial expression en la tufa tago, or simply en, or make the phrases by employing an adverbial pronoun.
PREPOSITIONS. 259 (12)—(17)

**Ekster = Outside.** Ekster is the opposite of en = in.

**Place = Outside.** Ekster is the opposite of en = in.

**Examples:** Li iris en la domon, fed mi restis ekster it. He went into the house, but I remained outside it.

**Connection or Disconnection.** Ekster may be said to be a connective preposition in some cases, where used in an affirmative sense, and discon- nection, when used negatively.

**Examples:** Ekster tjuj a le ĝoj, ekzistas aliaj = Outside (besides, or, in addition to) these laws others exist. Ekster tiuj ĉi le ĝoj ne ekzistas aliaj = Outside (beside, or, apart from) these laws others do not exist (see krom, para. 259 (18)).

As a root-word or prefix, we have:

- Eksterajo = The exterior, outside.
- Eksterlande = Abroad.

**El = Out of.**
In is the opposite of en = in, but only when movement and sit is implied. It may be said to be omitted in such expressions as...

**Examples:** Mi estas la plej riĉa el ĉiuj = I am the richest of all. Unu el ni estos elektata = One of us will be chosen. Li faris vzon el eio = He made use of everything. Mi faros uzon el la olcazo = I shall take (make use of) the opportunity. Kion ni faros el hundo? = What shall we do with (make out of) a dog. El la dirifa regulo, sekms, ke... = From the said rule, it follows that...

**Origin or Dependence = By, with, from.**

**Examples:** Mi ricevis leteron el Panzo = I received a letter from Paris.
PREPOSITIONS.

Disconnection — off of, from.

En = In, into.

As a prefix, ek signifys “out,” and also denotes something done thoroughly and completely, etc., Elajris = To think out, to invent.

Eliris = To dig out.

Elirejo = an exit, way out.

Elabori = To work out thoroughly, to achieve, elaborate.

Ellerm = To master, to learn thoroughly (to study).

En = In, into.

En = into, within, at.

Time = In, on, at, during.

En = in, at, by, in, with.

Disconnection = off of, from.

Examples—Li estis en la ĝardeno = He is in the garden.

Li iris en la ĝardenon = He went into the garden.

Mi loĝis en Parizo = I live in Paris.

La birdo flugas en la ĉambro = The bird is flying within the room.

La birdo flugas en la ĉambro (kiu eniris en la ĉambro, kaj flugas en ĝi) = The bird is flying within the room (it entered the room, and is flying within it).

Helpu min porti tiujn ĉiroj-kestojn en mian jiakron = Help me to carry these (travelling) trunks to (into) my cab.

Li iris en la-domon, sed mi mem restis ekster ĝi = He went into the house, but I myself remained outside of it.

La ĉefaj verboj staras en la flono = The chief words stand at the end.

Time = In, on, at, during.
Origin or Dependence — of info.

EXAMPLES.— Apartamento consistente en (or, el) un menú, un mostrador, y tres habitaciones. — A flat (apartments), consisting of one dining-room, one drawing-room, and three bedrooms.

Connection — In.

EXAMPLE.— Mano en mano = Hand in hand.

Place — To, hasta, up to, as far as.

EXAMPLE.— No acompañamos los hasta su casa. — We accompanied them as far as (to) their house. 

Time — Till, until, to.

EXAMPLE.— De sábado hasta lunes = From Saturday till (to) Tuesday.

N.B.— Jari is the accusative of duration (para. 68 (h)), for quis has here no influence over it, being simply an item in the phrase; but if a preposition is placed before ok, then the preposition will influence its complement "jaros," which will be in the nominative; as: — Gi podem hasta ok yis nan mrojn = It can lie during eight (up) to nine years.
11 259 (15) - (16). PREPOSITIONS.

Time = Between.

EXAMPLE.—Inter la deka kaj dcekunua horoj mater.u, mi reidcontin mian amikon = Between 10 and 11 o'clock in the morning I met my friend.

Manner = Among, amongst.

EXAMPLE.—Ili dividis inter si dekdii pomojn = They divided amongst themselves twelve apples.

AS a prefix, inUr has much the same meaning as in English, as:—

Interimti = To interpose.

Intermikm = To intermingle.

Interkonsenti = To agree mutually.

259 (16). Je.

The preposition je has no fixed meaning. It is used only when we have to employ a preposition and we do not know which one the sense requires. We can, however, use the accusative case in place of it (Rule 14, paras. 251, 253).

The following are a few of the examples in which it has been used:

Cause = At, over, of.

EXAMPLE.—Mi enuas je la hejmo, or, Mi enuas la hijmoit = Am weary (tired) of home.

Manner = By, on.

EXAMPLES.—Li fenii lin je la maniko per unu mano, kaj per la alia li batis /in sur la viza /on (or, li frapis al li la vim /on) = Re held him by (at) the sleeve with one hand, and with the other he struck him on the face (struck him the face). Mi gratulas vian /prinean Mo /ŝ /ton je (or, pri) la rereno Danujon = I congratulate your Royal (Princely) Highness on (regarding) your (the) return to Denmark.

Time = On.

EXAMPLE.—Je la kvara hora = At 4 o'clock.

Je la lasta fojo (or, La last an fojon) mi vidas lin = On the last occasion (last time) I saw him with you.

Measure = Of, by.

EXAMPLES.—Plena je de NO = Full of wine.

L-onga je dek futoj, or, Longa dek futojn = Ten feet long.
PREPOSITIONS. 219 (17)—(19).

219 (17).

Kontraŭ = Against, opposite.

Never used in the sense of "by the side of." Takes the genitive of direction.

Place = Towards, overlooking, facing, opposite.

Example.—La fenestra kontraŭ la strato=The window overlooking (towards) the street.

Opposition = Towards, to, against, from.

Example.—Xe mint pri mia senceremonio kontraŭ ei = Do not wonder at my unceremoniousness towards me.

Kontraŭsim = Against me, in course of action against (indirectly). (Hamlet V, 2, line 25.)

Kie » ili iras? Kontraŭ Poluijon.= Whither are they going? Against Poland (Hamlet IV, 4, 86).

Mi sidis sur sian tono, kie mi estis sirmata kontraŭ la orienta vento = I was sitting on a stone where I was sheltered from (against) the east wind.

As a prefix, kontraŭ denotes opposition, as:

Kontraŭri = To contradict.

Kontraŭmeti = To oppose.

219 (18).

Krom = Not including, patting aside, apart from.

Example.—Li estas bona, kaj, krom tio, nca=He is good, and, besides that, rich.

Krom esperanto, mi scias la lingvon germanan = Besides Esperanto, I know the German language.

Mi estas anglo, kaj mi scias nenion krom mia propra = I am an Englishman, and I know no language except (but, besides, save) my own (see remarks on ekster (para. 259 (11)).

219 (19).

Kun = With.

Never used as "with" in the sense of the instrument or means by which something is done (see per, para. 259 (22)).

Example.—Li paroladis kun sia amiko = He was conversing with his friend.

Li fiami ĝu kun Frauhno Berta, = He became engaged to Miss Bertha.

Resti kun = I was sitting on a stone where I was sheltered from (against) the east wind.

As a prefix, kun denotes connection, as:

Kunri = To connect.

Kunigi = To join.

Kunveni = To meet.

Kunhelpi = To assist.

Kunirigi = To unite.

Kunligi = To couple.

Kunaligi = To join.

Kunveni = To meet.

Kunhelpi = To assist.

Kunirigi = To unite.

Kunligi = To couple.

Kunaligi = To join.

Kunveni = To meet.

Kunhelpi = To assist.

Kunirigi = To unite.

Kunligi = To couple.

Kunaligi = To join.

Kunveni = To meet.

Kunhelpi = To assist.

Kunirigi = To unite.

Kunligi = To couple.

Kunaligi = To join.

Kunveni = To meet.

Kunhelpi = To assist.

Kunirigi = To unite.

Kunligi = To couple.

Kunaligi = To join.

Kunveni = To meet.

Kunhelpi = To assist.

Kunirigi = To unite.

Kunligi = To couple.

Kunaligi = To join.

Kunveni = To meet.

Kunhelpi = To assist.

Kunirigi = To unite.

Kunligi = To couple.

Kunaligi = To join.

Kunveni = To meet.

Kunhelpi = To assist.

Kunirigi = To unite.

Kunligi = To couple.

Kunaligi = To join.

Kunveni = To meet.

Kunhelpi = To assist.

Kunirigi = To unite.

Kunligi = To couple.

Kunaligi = To join.

Kunveni = To meet.

Kunhelpi = To assist.

Kunirigi = To unite.

Kunligi = To couple.

Kunaligi = To join.

Kunveni = To meet.

Kunhelpi = To assist.

Kunirigi = To unite.

Kunligi = To couple.

Kunaligi = To join.

Kunveni = To meet.

Kunhelpi = To assist.

Kunirigi = To unite.

Kunligi = To couple.

Kunaligi = To join.

Kunveni = To meet.

Kunhelpi = To assist.

Kunirigi = To unite.

Kunligi = To couple.

Kunaligi = To join.

Kunveni = To meet.

Kunhelpi = To assist.

Kunirigi = To unite.

Kunligi = To couple.

Kunaligi = To join.

Kunveni = To meet.

Kunhelpi = To assist.

Kunirigi = To unite.

Kunligi = To couple.

Kunaligi = To join.

Kunveni = To meet.

Kunhelpi = To assist.

Kunirigi = To unite.

Kunligi = To couple.

Kunaligi = To join.

Kunveni = To meet.

Kunhelpi = To assist.

Kunirigi = To unite.

Kunligi = To couple.
To stay with a lion is dangerous.

He was walking with his friend when I met him.

EXAMPLES.—

He speaks with great wisdom.

He is a man of (with) taste.

He was expected with great impatience.

As a root-word or prefix, *kun*—To connect.

EXAMPLES. —

That vase has been made according to (from) a model out of (in) our museum.

He speaks in a wise manner.

They did it in turn.

The younger daughter was the complete portrait of her father in (according to) her goodness.

As a root-word or prefix, *kun*—To come together, to assemble.

EXAMPLES. —

We went away in a different direction (or, in different ways).

Alexander went along this river till he came to the palace.

N.B.—*lad* is used in such expressions as:—

Lengthways.

Across, athwart.

Malgrau—Notwithstanding.

EXAMPLES.—

He succeeded in spite of the hindrances.

He did his best, but for all that (notwithstanding) he did not succeed (see remarks on *spite*, para. 259 (30)).
**PREPOSITIONS.**

259 (22). **Per**—By, by means of.

**Cause** = By, by means of, with, through.

*Example.*—My dress per la sero, celo per la sancio, parol per la verbo.La canto per la harmonio.He killed him with a sword.

**Manner** = With, by, in,

*Per,* used after a passive verb, denotes the means or instrument; de denotes the agent.

*Example.*—La domo, kiu estas aŭdis de mia patro, estas kovrita per pajla legmento—The house, which was bought by my father, is covered with thatch (a straw roof).

Li tenis lin je la kolo per ambaŭ manoj=He was holding him by the neck with both hands.

Li iris el la urbo per (or, laŭ) flanka, vojeto = He went out of the town by a by-path.

Mia onklo ne mortis per naturn morto = My uncle did not die (by) a natural death.

Per win 'vorto (or, unurorte), la ĉambraro estis tute 6ejo = In a word, the room was quite beautiful.

As a prefix or root-word, *per* is not much used.

**Perlabori**=To acquire by one's labour, to earn.

**Peri**=To mediate, to interpose.

259 (23). **Po**—At the rate of.

*He* has a distributive sense, and is used generally before numerals (see para. 123). Do not confuse *po* with *por.*

**Distribution**—At the rate of, in the proportion of, of.

*Example.*—Mi atelis krar poinojn po du pencoj=l bought four apples at the rate of twopence (each).

**Po** has a distributive sense, and is used generally before numerals (see para. 123). Do not confuse *po* with *por.*

**Distribution**—At the rate of, in the proportion of, of.

*Example.*—Mi atelis krar poinojn po du pencoj=L bought four apples at the rate of twopence (each).

**Po** has a distributive sense, and is used generally before numerals (see para. 123). Do not confuse *po* with *por.*
Por — For, in order to, in order is.

Purpose = In order to, to, for, at, for the purpose of, for.

EXAMPLES. — I eat in order to live. For me it has a pleasant taste. He treated himself in order to recover. The best way of getting it is in order to get it. All houses make a front. I have a mark in the. For my four children I bought twelve apples. Child por la po-

Post — After, behind.

Is a preposition of place and time. Like its English equivalent "after," care must be taken not to confuse its meaning. For instance, "He came after me" might mean (a) next in succession or behind me, (b) after my arrival, (c) in pursuit of me. In Esperanto we should say (a) Li venis post mi, (b) Li postekvis min.

194
DEFINITIONS.  

Time = After. in, by, hours.  

EXAMPLE: — When a man is dead, some ©  
years afterwards his body is brought back to see the book after  
you have read it through.  

PRETER: — In a quarter of an hour.  

Manner = After, in.  

EXAMPLE: — By day.  

EXAMPLE: — To come after, to succeed.  

PLACE = Beside, by, past.  

EXAMPLE: — I went by (past) the windows of the house.  

PRETER, as a prefix, has a similar meaning.  

EXAMPLE: — I passed by (past) the windows of the house.  

Reference = Concerning, respecting, regarding as regards, with regard to, in, for, about, of, on.  

EXAMPLE: — In these sentences we shall, I suppose,
instead of "concerning" will give the exact sense.

Pri
tio
As to that, don't say a word.

Ne mim P ri
!/»  = l )o  " ot  think of (about) it.

Li
He spoke about (the art of) painting.

Himireyis pri
(or, je) lia kolero  =

They were astounded at (about) his anger.

Sed pri sia
fratino, ni poras diri,
£e...s=But of her sister, we can say that...

Tin estas verko pri la politiko
= That is a work on politics.

AS a prefix,
Pripensi=To think about, to reflect.
See para. 258 as regards the use of the prepositional expressions relati, koncerne.

259 (28).
Pro = Because of.
Pro always relates to the cause or reason for something happening or being done. Do not confuse it with por.

Cause = Because of, by reason of, on account of, for the sake of (cause), through, owing to, from, for, of.

Example.—Li demandis sin, pro kio Si ploras=

He asked her for what reason (because of what) she weeps.

Li min mokis pro mia kredemo
= He ridiculed me owing to (for) my credulity.

Li estas mortanta
(or, ekmortas) pro
(or, de) malsato
= He is dying of (from) hunger.

Si ayas pro jaluzemo
= She acts from jealousy.

Li ne povis piediri pro sia malforteco
= He could not walk owing to (on account of, through) his weakness.

Pro tio, mi ne povas akompani viu-
On that account, I cannot accompany you.

Li
= He did it because of his wife.

Pro
is not used much as a prefix.

Propeti
= Intercede.

Propekulo
= A scapegoat.

259 (29).
Sen = Without.

Sen always denotes disconnection.

Disconnection = Without, less, minus.

Example.—Li alrenis sen sia amiko
= Ke arrived without his friend.

Sen ri, ni estus kiel sen kapo
= Without you we should be as without a head.

Ten less (minus) three is seven.
SEN is frequently used as a prefix, having the same meaning as our English suffix "less," as:—

Sendube = Doubtless, without doubt.

Stnmita—senseless, without feeling.

Snttmin = Senseless, without meaning.

Smtsha = Shameless, without shame.

Spite = Ok of.

Spite, like malgrarŭ, marks opposition, but in a stronger sense. Ttnt means "in defiance of all opposition," whilst maigrn has more the sense of "notwithstanding."

Opposition = In defiance of, in spite of.

Examples:—Apro (the true un prefixed) fremfragno A inntiono in defiance of all I could say, he slapped the child's face. Apply, sub use gpus per subdulcip lov. In spite of all my entreaties to prevent him, he went away.

Sub—Under.

Sub is followed by the accusative of direction. It is the opposite of sur = on.

Place = Under, beneath.

Examples.—La hwmJohrrkmb la tablon por ekkapti la baton, kiu MSb sal la tablo = The dog ran under the table to seize the cat that was tying under the table.

Mitso estas sub la kanapo = A mouse is under the sofa.

Manner = In, on.

Examples.—Io, sub la formo de kato, tramMris la straton = Something, in the shape of a cat, ran across the street.

Li iris sub la kondi ĉo, ke nemu hn = He went on (under) the condition that no one should accompany him.

As a Drefix, Sflntgo = A basement (floor below).

SubmetU = To put under, to subdue.

Subtegmento = A garret (under roof).

Super = Over, above.

It is followed by the accusative of direction. It differs from sur, since our generally mean that something is over or covering something else, whilst
**Super** signifies that the object is over or above something, but not in actual contact.

**Place** = Over, above, beyond.

Example:—La aerostato estis vidata super la ĥereno — The balloon was seen over the town.

Super mia kŭsto — A bird flew by, over my head.

Li jetis stonon super la muro, sed li ne havis sufiĉo, kaj la stono falis sur la muro — He threw a stone over the wall, but he had not sufficient (of) strength, and the stone fell upon (on to) the wall.

La animo de Dio supra je alia — The Spirit of God moved (carried itself) upon the face of (above) the waters (water).

Mi konas nenion super tion — I know nothing beyond that.

Super is the root of Superi=To surpass. As a prefix, Superflui=To overflow. Superhuma — Super- human. Supervesto — An overcoat.

**Sur** = Upon, on to.

Is followed by the accusative of direction. See remarks on sub and super. Do not confuse sur with super.

**Place** = Upon, on, on to.

Example: — Sur lia vizo mi vidis ĝian rideton — On his face I saw a joyful smile.

Vi trovos lapaperojn sur la skribtablo — You will find the papers on the writing-table.

La birdo surflugis sur la tegmenton — The bird flew on to the roof.

Li metis la ĉapelon sur sian kapon — He put his (the) hat on his head.

Li staris supre sur la monto, kaj rigardis malsupren sur la kampoj — He stood above on the mountain, and looked down (below) upon the field (note the accusatives of direction, malsupre and kampon. La ĉi la komando “tri,” vi ekpafos sur la arbon — At the command “three” you will shoot at (on to) the tree.

Dependence = On, to.

Example: — Tio ĉi povas tre influi sur la sukceson de ni ĉi afero — This can have much influence on the success of our business.

Sur la danan tronon mi havas rajtojn — I have rights on (to) the Danish throne.

Li turnis sur sian amikon nenian atenton — He turned on to his friend no attention.

As a prefix, Surmeta — To put on.

259 (32). PREPOSITIONS.

259 (33). SUR — On, upon, on in.

It is followed by the accusative of direction. See remarks on sur and super. Do not confuse sur with super.

**Place** = On, upon, on, touching.

Example: — Sur li ĉi povas tre influi sur la sukceson de ni ĉi afero — On his face I saw a joyful smile.

Fi nova pagino, sub la apogalo — You will feel like paper in the wind.

En la tuta ĉi la ĉi, sub la apogalo — In the whole of this, sub the apogalo.

En la tuta ĉi la ĉi, sub la apogalo, li metis la ĉapelon sur sian kapon — He put his (the) hat on his head. If stars were not in motion, but could withstand our touch, the earth above on the everything, and head down (below) upon this field from theaccumulation of the earth.


Dependence = On, to.

Example: — Tio ĉi povas tre influi sur la sukceson de ni ĉi afero — This can have much influence on the success of our business.

Sur la danan tronon mi havas rajtojn — I have rights on (to) the Danish throne.

Li turnis sur sian amikon nenian atenton — Ke paid no attention to his friend (lit., He turned on to his friend no attention).

As a prefix, Surmeta — To put on.
PREPOSITIONS.  § 259 (34).—(35).

259 (34). Tra—Through.

Tra, trans, and preter. The following compound verbs will best show the meaning of the three prepositions:

Preterapasi = To j by, go beyond.

Trapasi = To pass through. to traverse.

Transpasi = To pass over, to cross over.

EXAMPLE.—Trapasi: he advance, it preterapasi in gajoj, for trapasi in mukio, per la preterapasi la stumbro, he passed.

Having passed through (traversed) the wood, he passed by the church, and thence onwards the river by the bridge.

Place = Through, across.

EXAMPLES.—Li iris tra la amaso, kaj eniris en la domon = He went through the crowd and entered the house.

Tra la inondo iras forta volco — Through the world goes a powerful call.

Li estas tiel dika, ke li ne povas trairi tra nia mallarĝa pordo = He is so stout (thick) that he cannot go through our narrow door.

Adverb trae = Right through.

As a prefix, Tra — To read through. Trapasi = To pass through, to traverse. Traguti = To percolate.

259 (35). Trans = Across, on the other side of. Is followed by the accusative of direction.

Place = Across, beyond, on the other side of.

EXAMPLE.—La hirundo flugis trans la riveron, car trans la riveron sin trovis aliaj himunde = The swallow flew across the river, because on (beyond) the river were (found themselves) other swallows.

As a prefix, Tranmiir = To go over, to cross. Transmigri = To migrate. Transcivi = To outlive, survive (a period of time).
English Prepositions

260. English prepositions vary in meaning considerably. In fact, to express the sense of some of them in common use correctly, five or six or more Esperanto prepositions have to be used to give the different meanings of one English preposition. For instance, "by" has five different meanings in the following expressions: "He went by the house" = On vojaĝis ĉe la ĵazio. "By his advice" = Ĉe lia sano. "Little by little" = Malrapide malrapide. "By the door" = Ĉe la ĵazio.

261. The following common English prepositions are given with their Esperanto equivalents and examples of their use, viz., "At, by, for, from, in, of, on, to, with."

At

261 (a). Represented by —

Apud, as: — La gepaĝoj estis apud la ĵazio. — The geese stood at the altar.

En, as: — Ĝi kondukis al la forto. — At every step she took.

En, as: — La eto estis ĉe la ĵazio. — He was astonished at the luxury of the court.

En, as: — En la unua tempo — At (in) the outset.

En, as: — En la fino — At the end.

En, as: — En la kongreso. — At the meeting.

En, as: — En la inter tempo — At the distance of.

Je, as: — Ĝi mokis en la ĵazio. — She jeers at his credulity.

Po, as: — Ĝi jeje liris — At (of) the rate of.

Por, as: — For ĝi liris por la ĵazio. — For this price.

Pri, as: — Ĝi mokis pri ĝi — She smiled at (about) his anger.

Sur, as: — Li mokis sur la ĵazio. — They fired at one another.

Accusative, as: — Li mokis ĝi en la ĵazio. — She jeers at his credulity.
**Prepositions and Adverbs**

**By**

261 (b). Represented by:

- *At*:—
  
  *Apud,* as:
  
  *Mi volus slari apwi la patrino = I would like to stand by mother.*

  *Apude,* as:
  
  *Mi staris ajnule dum U paroladis = I stood by (near to, close by) whilst he was talking.*

- *In*:—
  
  *Li estas amata Je ciuj aiaj annkoj = He is loved by all his friends.*

- *By*:—
  
  *Mi tenis lin je la kruro per snurego = I held him by the leg with a rope.*

- *After*:—
  
  *Post,* as:
  
  *Lorn post iom, si pli trankvili g = Little by (after) little she became more tranquil.*

- *Before*:—
  
  *Preter,* as:
  
  *En tiu ci momenta iris prefer ni du sinjorinoj = At this moment two ladies passed by (beside) us.*

- *At*:—
  
  *Adverb,* as:
  
  *Legante, ni lemas = By reading, we learn.*

**For**

261 (c). Represented by:

- *To*:—
  
  *Al,* as:
  
  *Ili ekiris al Berlino (or, Berlinon) = They started for Berlin.*

  *Anstatau,* as:
  
  *Li skriHs trim anstata kvaro = He wrote a three for (instead of) a four.*

- *In*:—
  
  *De,* as:
  
  *Tro bo.lda.ii. alrenis la horo defmim = Too soon came the hour for (of) departure.*

  *De* In *semajni mi estas malsana = For three weeks I have been (am) ill.*
ENGLISH PREPOSITIONS.

Dum, as:—Dum in tuta ayud, li restis sola = For (during) the whole day he remained alone.

Laŭ, as:—Si ne estas granda li ne po veni = He is big (according to) his age.

Malsupre, as:—Malsupre li tiris, li restis sola = For (according to) all that, he was not happy.

Por, as:—Por ili ne povis evi por mi = This purse is for you. La ne povis por mi patrigoj = He liked for his fatherland.

Pro, as:—La petis pro ĝia helpo, pro, li restis sola = He asked him for help, so, he remained alone.

Por tio ke, as:—Li riprocesis min pro tio ke mi, mi volas = He reproached me for having gone away (lit., because of that that I went away).

Tra, as:—Li ne povis tra tia distanco = He cannot carry it (through) such a distance.

Accusative, as:—Li restis sola la tulan tagon = He remained alone all day long (for the whole day) (see the example under dum).

From,

Al, as:—Si ne volas, li ne povas veni = We do not want, because we cannot.

De, as:—Apartigu la pajlon de la foje = Separate the straw from the hay. De tia tempo = From that time.

Do, as:—Separigas la pajlono de la fojo = Separate the straw from the hay. De tia longe = From that long time. De lundo ĝis vendredo = From Monday to Friday.
I concluded from (out of) his appearance that
he was (is) an officer.

This figure is sculptured (carved) from (to
acquiesce with) my model.

He trembled from (because of) fear.

In (according to) my opinion they
are quite right.

He was brought up in (according to) the fear of
God.

The two were alike in (by means of) features (the face) and (the) character.

He had experience in (for) the education of
children.
Post, as:—No futurum possem alihi suspici.—We see
shall he going way in (after) two or three
days.
Pre, as:—La indicatica pasto per liuen am istanti.—The
teacher can instruct him in nothing.
Sub, as:—Es ala forma alia homa, aveva un—Some-
ing in (under) the shape of a man, appeared.
Sur, as:—Practemia per li sfera, al faliu.—Walking
in (on) the street, I fell.
Accusativo, as:—La eka militia in viroto de 1002.
—He was born in the winter of 1002.
Advoc, as:—Paco = in shape. —Vespere = in the evening.
Advek = in other
words, etc.

261. SENTENCE-PARTS.

Post, as:—No futurum possem alihi suspici.—We see
shall he going away in (after) two or three
days.
Pre, as:—La indicatica pasto per liuen am istanti.—The
teacher can instruct him in nothing.
Sub, as:—Es ala forma alia homa, aveva un—Some-
ing in (under) the shape of a man, appeared.
Sur, as:—Practemia per li sfera, al faliu.—Walking
in (on) the street, I fell.
Accusativo, as:—La eka militia in viroto de 1002.
—He was born in the winter of 1002.
Advoc, as:—Paco = in shape. —Vespere = in the evening.
Advek = in other
words, etc.

264 (f). Represented by:—
Al, as:—La man al Dio = The love of (towards) God.
He loves of the same value words = Their fear of
death is great. Pro cunaduom no le fariu =
Through hatred of me he went away.
Du, as:—Granu nudo da shaj = A great number
of ideas.
Du, as:—La man oto da la lepcia = The first word of
the line. En ens da Dio = The love of (from)
God. God's love.
Sum, as:—La jipie adlaido da baji, or, zeukietgga
words = A journey of twenty.) Moses days.
El, as:—En ens oto ala sviu = One of (out of) all
will be chosen. En dij sviu awi, in oto da
plaj forma = Of (out of) all my friends, he is the
smallest.
En, as:—La plaj forma da drau en la die = The
largest room of (in) the house.
Inter, as:—En ens ala sviu da ala sviu es la
places = The smallest of (among) all the trees
in the garden.
ENGLISH PREPOSITIONS.

Kun, as:— She is a woman of (with) taste.

Por, as:— That is the best way of doing it (to do it). Do not think of (about) it.

Pri, as:— Do not think of (about) it.

Pro, as:— He died of (owing to) hunger.

Adjectives, as:— He is a man of experience (an experienced man).

On:

261 (g). Represented by:—
Al, as:— Plague on the knife! On the other side of the street. On that, I left the room.

Ce, as:— On the other side of the street. The wheel turned on its axis.

De, as:— It depends on (from) the number of words.

En, as:— It depends on (from) the number of words.

Kun, as:— She gave it me on (with) that condition.

Post, as:— On (after) further consideration.

Pri, as:— He congratulated me on (concerning) my marriage.

Sub, as:— He visited me on (under) the pretext that he was (is) a relation.

Sur, as:— The papers are lying on (on) the table.
11561. ENGLISH PREPOSITIONS.

**Accusative, as** — *Li donis al mi lundm = He gave it to me on a Monday.*

**Adjective, as** — *La veturilo estas luebla = The carriage is red (able to be hired).*

**Adverb, as** — *Li staris dekstre = He stood on the right.*

*Li ĝin Juris interim = He did it on purpose.*

**Prep.** — *Prunte = On loan.*

**To,**

261 (A). Represented by —

**Al,** as — *Mi iras al Parizo = I am going to Paris.*

**Ĝin,** as — *Li diris al mi = He said to me.*

**En,** as — *Li ŝtavit en si mem = He smiled to (in) himself.*

**Ĉe,** as — *Mi demandis lin, kial li venas ĉe mi = I asked him why he came (comes) to me.*

**Ke** (with a personal pronoun), as — *Vi bone faris, ke vi venis = You did well to come (that you came).*

**Kontraŭ,** as — *Vizaĝon kontraŭ efkat = Faced to (opposite) edge.*

**Kun,** as — *Li fiancigis kun mia kuzino = He became engaged (affianced) to my cousin.*

**Por,** as — *Mi havas multe por fari = I have much to do (for to do).*

**Pri,** as — *Pri tiu komen = Let me look to that.*
261. Sub, as — To (under) the sound of music.

Sur, as — The claimant has no rights to (on) the property.

Adverb, as — He went to the right.

Accusative, as — I went to Paris.

With.

261 (i). Represented as under —

Ce, as — To be with (at) him, I gave up everything.

De, as — He started with (from) surprise.

En, as — What shall we do (make) with (out of) a donkey?

El, as — He started (from) surprise.

Kaj mi fordonis ĉion = He started with (from) surprise.

En, as — He started with (from) surprise.

Je, as — He started (from) surprise.

Laŭ, as — He ran with great rapidity.

Pli, as — He ran with great rapidity.

Pre, as — He ran with great rapidity.

Sub, as — I gave it to him with (under) that condition.

Adverb, as — With reference to (relating to) your letter.
CONJUNCTIONS (Konjunkcioj).

262. Conjunctions serve to connect words, phrases, clauses, or sentences.

EXAMPLES.—Somero kaj Vx = Summer and Winter.
Taqe aii nokte = By day or by night.
Li divas ke vi estas mallaborema = He says that you are lazy.
Li estas fiera, sal vi estas humila = He is proud, but you are humble.

263. Conjunctions are of two kinds, Co-ordinating and Subordinating. They have no influence over the moods of verbs (para. 171 (II)).

264. Co-ordinating conjunctions connect two sentences, or two members of a sentence that are independent of each other. These are of five classes:

(1). Copulative, as: kaj-and; kaj...kaj = both...and.
(2). Alternative, as: a«...aif = either...or; nek-nor, nek...nek = neither...nor.
(3). Adversative, as: sed = but.
(4). Causative, as: car = for.
(5). Illative, as: tial = therefore.

265. Subordinating conjunctions introduce a clause that is dependent on another. There are six classes, viz., conjunctions of:

(1). Manner or Degree, as: l-ieZ = as, as if, as though, etc.
(2). Consequence, as: ke- = so that, therefore, since, etc.
(3). Reason or Cause, as: ĉ = because, since, tial ke = inasmuch as, since, etc.
(4). Purpose, as: timante ke = lest, for fear that, fearing that, etc.
(5). Condition, as: se = if, unless, except, if only, etc.
(6). Concession, as: kvakam = though, although, however, notwithstanding, eĉ = even if, etc.
CONJUNCTIONS

266. Conjunctions connect the same cases of nouns, pronouns, and adjectives. When there is a diversity of case, it is due to ellipsis (see para. 105).

EXAMPLE.—\(\text{I saw him and his brother, but not his sister.}\)

A copulative or alternative conjunction need not be repeated if the sense is clear without it.

EXAMPLES.—\(\text{He and his brother, sister, and cousin came to visit me.}\)
\(\text{Neither his wife, father, mother, brother, nor sister was there.}\)

267. The co-ordinating conjunction is sometimes omitted.

EXAMPLES.—\(\text{He came, he saw, he conquered!}\)
\(\text{You will go, John will remain here.}\)

268. Conjunctions and adverbs.—Some conjunctions are partly adverbs and partly conjunctions, more especially those introducing clauses of time or place. Some are also prepositions as well as conjunctions and adverbs, and care must be taken to use the correct Esperanto words in such cases. For instance, in English "before," "after," and "since" are prepositions, adverbs, or conjunctions.

Before (prep.) = Antau

EXAMPLE.—\(\text{He stood before the king.}\)

Before (adv.) = Antaŭe

EXAMPLE.—\(\text{The king never saw him before.}\)

Before (conj.) = Antau ol

EXAMPLE.—\(\text{Reflect before speaking.}\)

After (prep.) = Post

EXAMPLE.—\(\text{The king never saw him after.}\)

After (adj.) = Poste

EXAMPLE.—\(\text{Post he knew,Never to know—After Before the departure the next.}\)
After (adv.) = Poste, or, malantaŭe.

Example.— La rajdantoj iris antaŭe, kaj la hundoj Wilis –paste (or, malaidaae) = The riders went in advance, and the dogs came after.

After (conj.) = Post kiam, or, kiam.

Example.— Resendu al mi la libron, post kiam (or, kiam) vi estos ĝin traleginta = Send me back the book after you (will) have read it through.

Since (prep.) = De.

Example.— De la lcreo de la mondo = Since the creation of the world.

Since (adv.) = De tiu tempo, de tiam, de kiam, de la tempo, kiam.

Example.— Mi lin vidis hiem, sed mi lin ne vidis de tiu tempo = I saw him yesterday, but I have not seen him since.

Since (conj.) = Do.

Example.— Mi devas en fari, car vi insistas = I must do it, since you insist.

LIST OF CONJUNCTIONS.

268. (a) The following is a list of the principal conjunctions. It is, however, not correct to call all them all strictly conjunctions, as some of them, according to the sense in which they are used, are employed also as adverbs or prepositions, and will be found in the lists of adverbs and prepositions in paras. 218 (b) and 259.

Alie = Otherwise, or, else.

Example.— Alie mi ne vidis, kiel mi ne volus mi ne volus mi ne volus mi ne volus = A I did not see him, else I would not, else I should have told (informed) you.

Allparte = On the other hand, from another cause, from another quarter.

Example.— Allparte mi ne vidas, kiel mi ne volus mi ne volus mi ne volus mi ne volus = On the other hand, I do not see him, else I would not, else I should have told (informed) you.
CONJUNCTIONS.

**Almena** = At least.

**Example.** — Almena naii /1 procis ĝinj'ari = At least he tried to do it.

**Ankaŭ** = Too, as well (also adverb).

**Example.** — Mi ankaŭ yin vidis = I, too, saw it.

**Antaŭ** (also preposition) = Before (para. 259 (2)).

**Example.** — Antaŭ morti, li ilfyk., = Before dying he said...

**Antaŭ ol** (also preposition) = Before, ere (para. 259 (4)).

**Example.** — Li vespermanyis, antail ol li foriris = He dined before he went away.

**Aŭ** = Or.

**Example.** — Oni ne scias, aii li pforas aii re/ta = One does not know whether he is weeping or laughing.

**Aŭ aŭ** = Either...or.

**Example.** — Ri aii mi devos yin fari = Either you or I must (will have to) do it.

**Ĉiujfoje kiam** = Each time when.

**Example.** — Mi lin renkovtadis ĉiujfoje kiam mi ins Londonon = I met him every time (when) I went to London.

**Ĉiuj** = Whether, or, if (see remarks on 6u in the list of adverbs, para. 248 (b)).

**Ĉiujfoje kiam, ĉiuj fojon kiam** = Each time when.

**Example.** — Mi lin renkovtadis ĉiujfoje kiam mi ins Londonon = I met him every time (when) I went to London.
If 268

(a).

CONJUNCTIONS.

Ĉu... au = Whether... or.

EXAMPLE.—Mi venos an ne= I shall go, whether he come (will come) or not.

Ĉu... ĉu = Whether... whether.

EXAMPLE.—Ĉu li skribos, ĉu li ne skribos, mi ne skribos, en li ne skribos, mi ne respondos ol ĉu, whether he writes, whether he does not write, I shall not reply if, whether he writes or does not write.

De nun = Hereafter, henceforth, from now (now).

EXAMPLE.—Mi esperos, ke nun id havos pli bonan niajn jaron = I hope that now (henceforth) we may have better weather.

De la tempo kiam = Since, from the time when.

EXAMPLE.—De la tempo kiam li mortis... = Since he died...

Des pli = So much the.

Des pli is generally used with de pli (which see), but sometimes alone in reply to questions (para. 112).

EXAMPLE.—De des pli scias, se li elas ne eblas, I must warn you, that perhaps he will not be (or, that he may not be) at home.

Des pli bone! mi ne deziras lin villi = So much the better, I don't at all wish to see him.

Do = Then, therefore, consequently (argumentative).

EXAMPLE.—Mi do povas dormi trankvile = Then I can sleep tranquilly.

Estis do vidajo mirima = It was then a wonderful sight !

Kion do Johano diris? = What then will John say ?

Dum = While, whilst (para. 259 (10)).

EXAMPLE.—Li egis parolante, ni eliris el la kambran = Whilst he was speaking, we went out of the room.

Li povas labori, dum mi estas kriplulo = He can work, whilst I am a cripple.

Iume = Meantime, meanwhile (also adverb).

EXAMPLE.—Hi ekhruligis la fajron, dum ni pretigis la manon = They lighted the fire, meanwhile we got the food ready.
**Ed se** = *Even if.*

**Example.** — *Ne, 399* ĉi tiu persono ni ne povus, ĉar ili havas malgrandajn jurajn asociojn.*

**Excepte se** = *Unless.*

**Example.** — *Ekzemple, ĉi tiu ĵege, ili metiĝis en kvarnaj alloomajn, kaj ili tiutempe ili fiŝas en kaĉoj.*

**Fejo kiam** = *Once when.*

**Example.** — *Kiam mi tradukis, mi faris bluajn erondojn kaj mi manifesiĝis malvolas.*

**Cit** (also preposition) = *Till, until* (para. 259 (14)).

**Example.** — *Atendu ĝis mi revenos.*

**Jen** = *Behold, behold again.*

**Example.** — *Jen la malminco de la rezultato klariĝas.*

**Ju malpli...des malpli** = *The less...the less.*

**Example.** — *Ju malpli li enhorus, des malpli li perlas.*

**Ju pli...des malpli** = *The more...the less.*

**Example.** — *Ju pli ni trinkas, des malpli ni manĝas.*

**Ju pli...des pli** = *The more...the more.*

**Example.** — *Ju pli bona vi estas, des pli vi estos amata.*
CONJUNCTIONS.

* (a).

11 268

---

Kaj = And.

**EXAMPLE.** — Vi kaj mi dam fari... You and I must do it.

Kaj... kaj = Both... and.

**EXAMPLE.** — Mi vidis Ik kaj Johanou kaj Georgon = I saw both John and George there.

Kaj ceteraj = And the rest, et cetera (commonly written k.c.).

Kaj tiel plu = and so forth, and so on (commonly written k.t.p.).

Ke... ke = That. Be careful not to use ke for the pronouns kio, kiu, tio, or tiu = that.

**EXAMPLES.** — Mi esperas, ke tio, kion vi havas en la mano ne estas venena insekto = I hope that that you have in your (the) hand is not a poisonous insect.

Kaj... ke = And... that.

**EXAMPLES.** — Pluvis forte, kiam niatingis (alprobimiĝis) la lagon = It rained heavily when (as) we reached the lake.

Kaj mi estis kolektinta la sumon, mi aĉetis novan libron = After (when) I had collected the amount, I bought a new book.

Kaj ajn = Whenever (para. 145).

**EXAMPLE.** — Li balbutadis, kiam ajn li paroliĝis = He stammered whenever he spoke.

Kiel = In what manner, how; aper = He discovered the manner in which.

Kiel... ke = How... that.

**EXAMPLES.** — Mi ne kredas ke li estas vereda = I do not believe that he is true.

---

11 268
CONJUNCTIONS. p. 268 (g).

Kie ajn = wherever (p. 144).
Example.—At 4 o'clock, I shall find him wherever he is.

Kiel — as (in comparison) (p. 153).
Example.—Li konsiders ke, kiel vin la in 3 unajn en la 45.

Kiel ajn malmulte = however little.
Example.—Kiel malmulte mi enbons mi na, mi ne povas veni. = However little you may (will) wish.

Kiel ankaŭ — as also, as well as...
Example.—Kiel intenso, kiel melko, kiel mine in... = My father, as well as I, thinks that.

Kiel eble plej baldaŭ = as soon as possible (lit., as possible, next possible).
Example.—Li estis kiel eble plej baldaŭ = Send him to me as soon as possible.

Kiel ekzemple = as for example.
Example.—Kiel ekzemple kiel melko, kiel melko, kiel melko...

Kio ajn okazo = all events (lit., whatever shall happen).
Example.—Mi venos moraa, kio ajn okazo = l shall come to-morrow at all events.

Kondiĉo, ke — on condition that.
Example.—Mi venos moraa, kondiĉo, ke virevenu postmorgoni = 1 will give you leave of absence, on condition that you return the day after to-morrow.

Konente, ke — it being agreed that.
Example.—Mi opera, konente, ke es unes 30 ena... = I will go, it being understood that instead of you, you may his wife.
Kontraŭe = (M $Iw contrary (also adverb).
EXAMPLE. — Vi prefer tiom, mi, kontraŭe, preferas tiom; You prefer this, I, on the contrary, prefer that.

Krom $Da = Breaks, moreover, apart from that.
EXAMPLE. — Si verŝajne, mi ne helpas — la en, krom verŝajne, a very beautiful girl.

Krom $fa, ke = Ignorant, putting aside the fact that...
EXAMPLE. — Krom $fa, ke li ne povas helpi, li ne povas al $ignores the fact that he is not being able to write, he could not even read.

Kun la kondiĉo, ke = (with) the condition that.
EXAMPLE. — Mi pruĉis ĝi li la libro kun la kondiĉo, ke li devos redonu ĝi mi laŭ tiom $e deve (with) the condition that he should (is to) return it to me the day after tomorrow.

Kvankam = Although, though.
EXAMPLE. — Kvankam li estas rikta, tamen li ne estas $this although he is rich, yet he is not happy.

Kvankam mi konsentas ĝia opinio, kvankam mi ne povos konsentigi kun ŝia = Though I agree with your opinion, I cannot nevertheless agree with you.

Kvazaŭ = As if, as though (also adverb).
EXAMPLE. — Li staris, kvazaŭ li vidis teruraĵon = He stood as if he saw a terrible object.

Laŭ $tio = According as.
EXAMPLE. — Laŭ $tio, ke mi ne havis surveston, mi trajtis = According as I had no overcoat, I went out.

Malgraŭ $io = In spite of all (everything), after all.
EXAMPLE. — Malgraŭ $io, mi diris $io, tamen li ne povis konsentigi kun ŝia = In spite of all I said, he could not nevertheless agree with you.

Malgraŭ $ke = Notwithstanding that.
EXAMPLE. — Malgraŭ $ke mi ne havis surveston, mi traĵtis = Notwithstanding that I had no overcoat, I went out.
CONJUNCTIONS.

Malpli. **al** = Less (para. 112).

EXAMPLE. — Li estas malpli pura ol lia frato = He is less pure than his brother.

**Ne nur, ne sole** = Not only.

EXAMPLE. — Ne nur li estis helpe, sed kaj multe angala = He not only helped, but he was also very rude.

**Nek** = No (para. 50 (c)).

EXAMPLE. — Li ne estas helpe, kaj ne estas helpe = He is not helpful, and he is not helpful.

**Nek ankau** = Neither... nor... also, nor... too, nor... either.

EXAMPLE. — Ne estis tie, nek mi ankau = You were not there, nor I either.

**Nek nek** = Neither... nor (para. 50 (c)).

EXAMPLE. — Vii nek mi nek estis alia = Neither you nor I was there.

**Ol** = Than (para. 112).

EXAMPLE. — Pli bono povuvi, ol semajno = Better late than never.

**Per** (or, pro) **tio, ke** = In that, since.

EXAMPLE. — Li ne diferencas de la glacio per tio, kiu estas fluida, kaj tiu ĉi malfuida = Water differs from ice, in that the former is fluid and the latter solid.

**Pli... ol** = More... than (para. 112).

EXAMPLE. — Li estas pli forta, ol vi = He is stronger than you.

**Plie** = Moreover, further (also adverb).

EXAMPLE. — Plie, mi diras id vi, ke... = Moreover, I tell you that...

**Por ke** = In order that, so that, in order that. **Por ke** is always followed by the imperative mood, because, when used, this expression denotes order (see remarks on Imperative, para. 201).
11268 (A). CONJUNCTIONS.

Post kiam = After.
Example.—Post kiam la suno suhiris, m revenu hejmen = After the sun set we returned home.

Same kiel = As, just as (para. 112).
Example.—Saw® kid la patrino amas sian infanon, tiel la besto amas sian idon = Just as the mother loves her child, so does the animal loves its offspring.

Se — If
Example.—(a) se mi povos, mi 'Jin faros = I shall do it if I can (shall be able).
(b) Se pluvos = I shall take an umbrella in case it should rain.

Se ne — If not, otherwise, but.
Example.—Mi kunprenos ombrelon, en la okazo, se pluvos = I shall take an umbrella in case it should rain.

Se nur — If only, provided that.
Example.—Vi vidos Johanon, se nur vi alvenosfrue = You will see John, provided that you will arrive early.

Se okaze — If perchance, in case, in the event of.
Example.—Se okaze vi venus frue, Johano ne estus tie = If you should come late, John will not be here.

Se tamen — If however, if still, if though, if notwithstanding.
Example.—Se tamen, vi nepovos veni morgan matene, venu vespere = however, you are not (will not be) able to come to-morrow morning, come in the evening.

Sed — But.
Example.—Li hapi, sed ne homogru via, kion li hapi = He reads, but does not understand what he reads.
CONJUNCTIONS.

Sed ankaŭ — But also.

EXAMPLE — Si on ne devais de ai trouvé, et ai récol
té, non seulement donnez moi un bag, mais aussi une maison.

Sed elo — But even.

EXAMPLE — N. ade aitair (or, plentigilih), en av ar
vingre norman on. Non seulement on give moi un bag, mais aussi des

Sekve = Consequently.

EXAMPLE — Ekphiris, sekre ni rerenis doman = Il
be-gan to rain, consequently we returned home.

Tamen = Nevertheless, yet, still, nevertheless, but.

EXAMPLES — Kvenkam li estas ri
cala, tamen li ne estas'/«/»<?« = Although he is rich, yet (still) he is not happy.

Mi ne ports reni hodia
ŭ, tamen mi venos morgaii-l
could not come to day, however, I will come to morrow.

Kinnkam li perdis nwnon, tamen li ne mortis malriciilo
= Although he lost money, nevertheless he did not die
a poor man.

Tia, ke = Such that.

EXAMPLE — N. trievr merio, ke ni ne pereigfingi;
was maken (=) tia merio will such, that I could not
articulate (utter) a single word.

Tia = So, therefore (para. 150) (also adverb).

EXAMPLE — Li rifuzis labori, tial mi eksigis Un=Ue
refused to work, therefore (so) I dismissed him.

Tial = Inasmuch as, since, because.

EXAMPLE — Z. M. n. ins travi, ke-mi ne blamed you, inasmuch
(as) that was not your mistake. Up-so
that.

N.B.- Do not confuse tial, ke with tiel ke-so

Tiam, kiam = Then when, when
(=) = Tiam = Then when, when

EXAMPLE — Tiam, kiam ni estis rica, or, Kiam mi estis rim, nam m ne estis Jelic
When I was rich, (then) I was not happy.

Tiamaniere, ke = In such a manner that, so that.

EXAMPLE — Personi, tiamaniere, ke, idia, en vi pors
one manner which, so that, I was also happy.

Tiamaniere, ke = In such a manner that, so that.

EXAMPLE — Personi, tiamaniere, ke, idia, en vi pors
one manner which, so that, I was also happy.

219
CONJUNCTIONS.

Tiel ke = So that.
EXAMPLE.—En/in muro inter Hi, tiel ke Hi ne povis villi mm it (Ail = There was a wall between them so that they could not see one another).

Tiel...Mq-So...that.
EXAMPLE.—Li 〈.</«.-•  lid bona, Ice li ĉion pardonas = He is so good that he pardons everything.

Tiel... kiel = As...as (para. 112).
EXAMPLE.—Ĥi estas liel. bona, kiel ĉi estas bela = He is as good as she is beautiful.

Timante, ke, or, pro la timo, ke—For fear that, fearing that, lent.
EXAMPLE.—Mi tion diris, timante, ke li venos = I said that, fearing that (lest) he would (will) come. The future is used here, "What is my fear?" I said he will perhaps come.

Tio estas (t.e.) = That is, that is to say, to wit. The initial letters are nearly always used, as we say (id est = i.e.).

Tiom...kiom = As much...as, as many...as.
EXAMPLE.—Donu cd mi tiom, kiom vi ĵiovas = Give me as much (manj') as you can.

Tuj kiam = As soon as, immediately when, directly.
EXAMPLE.—Mi fermis la pordon, tuj kiam li eliris = I shut the door as soon as (directly) he went out.
INTERJECTIONS AND EXCLAMATIONS.

269. Interjections (interjekcioj) vary so considerably in force and meaning in different languages that it is impossible to translate some of them. If we translated our English interjections literally into Esperanto, many of them would have no meaning to a foreigner. The following short list appears in present to be in use, but, no doubt, as the language becomes more widely spoken, more will be added.

Adieu! = Adieu! farewell, good-bye!
Ah! Ah! = Ah! ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
Ah! = Ah!
INTERJECTIONS.

INTERJECTIONS.

Helpon ! Helpu ! = Help !
Ho ! = Ho ! oh ! ho !
Ho ve ! = Alack ! alas ! oh dear ! wellaclay /
Hontu ! = For shame !
Hura ! = Hurrah ! hu:;ja I
Ja ! = Indeed !
Jen ! = Lo ! there ! behold ! see !
Kia ! = What !
Kial do ! = Why indeed ! why then !
Kial abomine ! = llow abominable !
Kion ! = What! Kion do ! = What then !
Komprensble ! = Of course !
Kura ĝe ! = Courage !
Ne ! = No !
Nu ! = Well !
Nu do ! = Well then !
Oho ! = 0, ho /
Pacience! = Be quiet ! Patience /
Presser ! = Frighten !'
Phusion ! = Touch !
Pro Del ! = For God's sake !
Respekt ! = Quick !
Sera ! = Ho! look !
Velo ! = Fine !
Vera ! = Really ! Ten !
Verango ! = Very true !
Vivu ! = Long live !

269. (a). When English adjectives are used as interjections, the adverbial form in E is used, because there is neither noun, nor pronoun with which they can agree, as —Neeble = Impossible! (para. 245).

269. (b). Some writers test the interjection fi as a prefix to denote lability of quality or condition, as —Piteglo = A sorry tag. Piteglo = A snort. (See suffix only, para. 54, 575).
Remarks on the Suffixes and Prefixes.

270 Suffix -AC-. (Ex. 19).

Denotes badness of quality or condition.


270 (1). Suffix -AD-. (Ex. 19).

(a) This suffix marks that an action is being continued or is habitual. It marks an action of some duration, not momentary. Thus, put—a shot from a gun, the shot is fired, and the action is over; but putado—a fusillade, a combination of shots of more or less duration.

Examples:—

Dancado = dancado—a shooting, shooting.

(b) This suffix marks that an action is being continued or habitual. Thus, putado—a shooting, shooting.

(c) Sometimes the word arto is used when we wish to specify that some ad is an art.

Examples:—

Tono—tone—ad (art of singing),

Verharlo—composition (lit.).
In the verb itself we use this suffix to show that the action is not merely momentary, but is being continued, repeated, or habitual; an aspect of the verb which in English, often expressed by the words "keep on," "used to," etc.

Example.—Ml saltadix la lulan tagon de loko al loko = jumped (about) all day long from place to place (kept on jumping); Pind = To visit; Vizitidi = To frequent, to haunt.

Do not therefore use -AD- without thinking of its significance, or your meaning may be misunderstood; so carefully avoid using it merely for the sake of euphony.

Suffixes -AJ- and -EC-. (Ex. 20).

(a). -AJ- denotes that the idea contained in the root has a certain quality, or is something made or derived from the idea. It gives a concrete quality to the root.

Example.—Casi=to hunt, ĉasaĵo = game. Armi=to arm, armajo = armour. Bovo = an ox, bovajo = beef. Ovo = an egg, ot'cyo = an omelet.

(b). -EC- denotes an abstract quality, similar to the English suffixes -nee, -ncy, -ness, -tude, -ity.


Both suffixes apply to good or bad qualities. They thus be used as roots, as ap - a thing, ec - a quality, a distinctive mark.

A comparison of the following words will best illustrate their meaning.

Amiko=friend, amikaĵo = a friendly act, amikeco = friendship. Bona=good, bonaĵo = a good (action), boneco = goodness.
Suffixes -AN-, -1ST-, -ESTR-, -UL- (Ex. 21).

These four suffixes relate to individuals. When combined with a root, one or other of them serves to show a person’s country, religion, profession, occupation, character, etc. Each has its distinct meaning, and care must be taken not to confuse them. The feminine suffix -IX- is added to denote females.

(5) To express an idea itself, namely, one that is neither concrete (-AN-, -ESTR-) nor abstract (-UL-), we add only the grammatical termination to the root. For instance, la bono = the good, good (itself), and from this arises bona = a good action, or, something good, the abstract quality being boneco = goodness.

Again, acido = an acid, acidajo = an acid thing, something which has an acid taste, acideco = acidity.

So, heroo = a hero, heroa =o = an exploit (something heroic), heroeco = heroism.

Examples: — La bono, fero, ni fero estas rimarkinda, for ni bono, ni fero estas rimarkinda = The good, the brave, the noble are remarkable. Vitriolo estas acido, sed vinagro estas nur acidajo = Vitriol is an acid, but vinegar is only a sour fluid, although both possess acidity. La heroo de la heroajo montris grandan heroeco = The hero of the exploit showed great heroism. La amiko montras sian amikecon per amikajoj = A friend shows his friendship by friendly acts.

271. Suffixes -AN-, -1ST-, -ESTR-, -UL- (Ex. 21).
SUFFIXES.

Examples: Klubo=a club, Klubano=a member of a club.

evenato=even, eveneto=a senator.

America=America, Amerikano=an American.

Londono=London, Londonano=a Londoner.

Pariso=Paris, Parizo=Parisian.

Vilato=Villageto=a villager, Vihto=Vihter.

Kamparo=country (rural), Kamparano=a countryman.

Vilaĝo=village, Vilano=a villager.

Parizo=Paris, Parizano=a Parisian.

Londono=London, Londonano=a Londoner.

Kuraci=treat the sick, Kuraci=doctor.

Drogo=drug, Drogo=doctor.

Maro=sailor, Maristo=sailor (by occupation).

Rabisto=robber, Rabi=to rob.

Ŝtelo=thief, Ŝtelo=to steal.

Pentristo=painter (art), Pentri=paint.

Kolorigisto=painter, Kolori=to paint.

Servisto=servant (male or female), Servi=to serve.

Astrologio=astrology, Astrologo=an astrologer.

(a) The suffix -AN- itself is used as a root for ano=a member, anaro=a band (a collection of members of something).

(b) -ZST-, like the English affix -id, denotes a person following a profession or trade, or some occupation by which he gains his livelihood, or who is habitually engaged in science, art, etc., or in some habitual occupation not necessarily for the sake of gain. In short, it denotes occupation.

Examples: Juĝisto=judge, Juĝo=to judge.

Kuraci=doctor, Kuraci=to treat the sick.

Drogo=doctor, Drogo=drug.

Maro=sailor, Maro=to sail.

Rabisto=robber, Rabo=to rob.

Ŝtelo=thief, Ŝtelo=to steal.

Pentristo=artist, Pentri=to paint.

Kolorigisto=painter, Kolori=to paint.

Servisto=servant, Servi=to serve.

Astrologio=astrology, Astrologo=an astrologer.

(c) -1ST- is used only when there is some root of a verb, noun, or adjective which gives an idea of occupation, or which may apply to a trade, occupation, etc., as shown in the above examples. When there is no such root, Esperanto provides the word, as—

Maheto=tailor, Maheto=to sew, tento=tent, etc. but, the affix denoting the occupation is, of course, root, viz., kudri=to sew, tajlo=tailor, tento=tentmaker.

(d) When the person is engaged in a temporary occupation, or is not a professional, but an amateur, a participle is often used.
SUFFIXES. H 272.

EXAMPLES.—

juĝanto = judge (of something),
juĝisto, a judge (by occupation or profession).

Rajdanto = a rider,
rajdisto = a jockey.

Jiiia/ito = a lover,
umiiMo = a lover, a sweetheart, a gallant.

Fotografanto = a photographer, one who is now photographing,
photografiisto = a professional photographer.

Ldboranto = a person working,
laboristo — a laborer, or man working for a livelihood.

(-ESTR-) denotes a person who is a chief, leader, ruler, principal, or head of a State, party, body, etc. In the same way as the suffix -AN- denotes a member of some profession, body, etc., so -ESTR- would designate the head of it, as —

Imperio = an empire,
imperiestro = an emperor,
imperiestriw = an empress.

Begno = the State,
regnestro = a ruler, head of the State.

Sipo = a ship,
ŝipoestro = a captain of a merchant vessel, a skipper (it is better to use kapitano for the captain of a man-of-war).

(-UL-) denotes a person characterised by the idea contained in the root. By it we express that an individual is "rich," "poor," "just," "good," etc.

Examples.—

Episkopo = a bishop,
episkopoarchbiskopo = an archbishop.

An ĉelo = an angel,
ĉeloangelo = an archangel.

(2) -AN- denotes a member of some profession, body, etc. In the same way as the suffix -AN- denotes a member of some profession, body, etc., so -ESTR- would designate the head of it, as —

Imperio = an empire,
imperiestro = an emperor,
imperiestriw = an empress.

Begno = the State,
regnestro = a ruler, head of the State.

Sipo = a ship,
ŝipoestro = a captain of a merchant vessel, a skipper (it is better to use kapitano for the captain of a man-of-war).

(-ESTR-) denotes a person who is a chief, leader, ruler, principal, or head of a State, party, body, etc. In the same way as the suffix -AN- denotes a member of some profession, body, etc., so -ESTR- would designate the head of it, as —

Imperio = an empire,
imperiestro = an emperor,
imperiestriw = an empress.

Begno = the State,
regnestro = a ruler, head of the State.

Sipo = a ship,
ŝipoestro = a captain of a merchant vessel, a skipper (it is better to use kapitano for the captain of a man-of-war).

(-UL-) denotes a person characterised by the idea contained in the root. By it we express that an individual is "rich," "poor," "just," "good," etc.

Examples.—

Episkopo = a bishop,
episkopoarchbiskopo = an archbishop.

An ĉelo = an angel,
ĉeloangelo = an archangel.
Suffixes.

Primary words can also be used as roots when applicable.

Examples.—Tie-to there, tieulo-an aborigine (a man of there). Tiam-then, at that time, tiamulo-a contemporary (a man of that time). A'IU-(= with, kunulo-a companion (a person with you).

Since words like legi = to read, viziti = visit, etc. do not apply to the character, state, etc., of a person, we do not use -UL- but a participial termination to describe a person.

Examples.—Leganto, reader (who is reading), le<jinto = a reader (who has read), le<jonto = a reader (who is about to read).

273. Suffixes -AR- and -ER-. (Ex. 22).

Aro = a collection, and ero = an item; therefore aro da eroj might be termed "a collection of items."

(a) -AR- denotes a re-union or a collection of the idea contained in the root.

Examples.—Vorto = a word, vortaro = a collection of words, a dictionary. Homo = a man, homaro = mankind. Arbo = a tree, arbaro = a wood, arbareto = a small wood, clump of trees. Stupo = a step, stuparo = a staircase, itupetaro = a ladder, succession of small steps.

(b) -ER- denotes one of many objects of the same kind, a small fragment.

Examples.—Sablo = sand, sablero = a grain of sand. Haillo = hail, hajlero = a hailstone. Fajro = fire, fajrero = a spark. Pulvo = gunpowder, pulvero = a grain of gunpowder. Sitkero = sugar, mikertro = a lump of sugar.
Suffixes -CH- and -HH-. (Ex. 23).

(a). -CH- is an affectionate diminutive to the Christian name of a man. It is substituted for one or more letters of the name.


(b). -HH- is a similar diminutive for a female Christian name.

Examples: -Klaro = Clara, -Elanejo = Clarrie, -Sofio = Sophia, -Sonjo = Sophy.

Suffixes -EBL-, -EM-, -IND-. (Ex. 24).

(a). These three suffixes, when used as roots, form the words -EBL- = possible; -EM- = propensity, tendency; -IND- = worth, merit, value. As suffixes they are mostly used to form adjectives or adverbs, and the following three, from kredi = /o believe, will give an idea of their different shades of meaning.

-EBL- = credible, possible of belief, believable;
-EM- = creditable, having a tendency to believe;
-IND- = worthy of belief.

(b). -EBL- denotes possibility, or what is likely to happen, similar to the English suffix -able, -ible.

Examples: -Pagi = to pay, pagebla = payable.

(c). Do not confuse -EBL- with -EM- or -IND- in words which in English end in -able or -ible, but have two distinct meanings. For instance, from senti = to feel, to experience, we get sentebla = sensible, and also sentema = sensible, and also whence "readable" may mean either "readable" or "readable by computer."
to be read” or “worth reading.” In Esperanto there is no such confusion, for legible = readable, but legenda = readable, worth reading. Hence we see that -EBL- must always denote possibility.

It is possible to love or to honour all persons, whether they merit such terms or not; but when, in English, we talk of a lovable or honourable individual, we do not imply possibility, but worthiness; therefore, in Esperanto, aminda = lovable, and honorinda = honourable. -EBL- is sometimes used for the infinitive.

Examples.—(a) Many or even all persons are not to be found (findable) in the dictionary. For some oth

(b). -EM- denotes propensity, tendency, inclination, disposition, similar to the English suffix -ful.

Examples.—Paco = peace, pacema = peaceful. Helpi = to help, helpema = helpful, obliging. Trompi = to deceive, trompema = deceitful, trompemo = duplicity.

(c). Do not confuse -EM- with -IND- (or with -AM- in compound words). For instance—

(d). -IND- denotes worthiness, worthy of.

Examples.—Bela = beautiful, belo = to accord, to accord well, fair, fitting, correct, worthy of being accorded. Belo is to accord, belo = accorded, belomemo = worthiness, being accorded, worthiness of accord, important. Dormi = to sleep, dormino = slumber, dormema = disposed to sleep, sleepy, drowsy.
Suffix -EDZ-. (Exs. 25, 34).

-EDZ- denotes a married person, and can scarcely be called a suffix, although classed as such, since it is generally used as a root.

Examples: -a married husband, a married man, edzoino = a married wife, a married woman, edzi = a married couple. When reference is made to a woman, the feminine suffix -IN- is added to verbs as well as nouns and adjectives.

Examples: Doktoredzino = a doctor's wife; Infatigoddzin = an attorney's husband; Intera = a merchant's wife; Inintera = a widow's husband; Infatig = an idle wife; Edzi = to marry a man, or to marry a woman; Infatigna = to marry in woman to a man; Infatigno = to get the key married couple; Infatign = to get married, or to marry.

When reference is made to a woman, the feminine suffix -IN- is added to verbs as well as nouns and adjectives.

Examples: Doktoredzino = a doctor's wife; Infatigoddzin = an attorney's husband; Infatig = a merchant's wife; Inintera = a widow's husband; Infatig = an idle wife; Doktorina = to marry a man, or to marry a woman; Infatigna = to marry in woman to a man; Infatigno = to get the key married couple; Infatign = to get married, or to marry.

Suffixes -EC- and -ET-. (Ex. 26).

(a). These two suffixes are opposites, -EC- denoting augmentation, and -ET- diminution of degree.

When employed in adjectives, the adverb "very" is often wrongfully used to denote the degree, as: -EC = grandega = huge, enormous; malgrandega = tiny (see remarks on degrees of intensity of adjectives, para. 114). If we cannot find English adjectives the equivalents of -EC or -ET, we should not use the adverb "very," but a stronger term, as "excessively," "excessively," etc.
Suffixes.

(277—278)

(b). In the case of nouns we must be careful to use the right words to express the English meaning.

EXAMPLES.

- Moniego = a huge mountain,
  - granda Monego = a bio- mountain,
  - monto- = a mountain,
  - malgrando = a small mountain,
  - montoeto = a hill.

- Rivero = a huge river,
  - larĝa rivero = a wide river,
  - rivero = a river,
  - malgranda rivero = a small river,
  - rivereto = a brook, stream,
  - malgranda rivereto = a streamlet.

(c). -E~ denotes augmentation, intensity of degree. Used as a root, ega = intense,

- egote = in-intensity.

(d). -ET~ denotes diminution of degree. Equivalent to the English suffixes in "streamlet," etc. in "globule," etc.

- Etulo = little, tiny.

EXAMPLES.

- Ptego = rain,
  - ptuvedo = a downpour,
  - ptvedo = a shower.

- Ridigi = to guffaw,
- Ridel = to smile.

- Plorí = to shed tears,
- Ploregi = to weep bitterly,
- Ploreti = to whimper.

- Dormí = to sleep,
- Dornegi = to sleep heavily,
- Dormeto = a nap.

- Domo = a house,
- Domego = a mansion,
- Dometo = a cottage.

- Šimo = cord,
- Šnuturo = a rope.

- Āmej = to love,
  - Āmegi = to idolize,
  - Āmeti = to have some liking for.

N.B.—From the above we see that -E~ and -ET~ should generally be used for distinct words, and not as a substitute for adverbs, which often more accurately express the meaning than the added suffix.

278. Suffixes -E~,-I~, -U~. (Ex. 27).

These suffixes are akin, since they denote either a place or thing from which the idea of the root is produced, or in which it is contained.

(e). -E~ denotes a place specially used for, or allotted to, the idea contained in the root. As a root, ĝi = a place, a locality.

EXAMPLES.

- Ĝi = a sheep,
  - Ĝe = sheepfold, or a place specially used for sheep.
- Pte = to pray,
- Ĝe = a church, a place specially used for prayer.

- Larto = a fruit, a fruit-tree, or a place used for fruit trees.
- Šello = a shell, a place used for shells.

Explanation:
SUFFIXES. 278.


(6). -IXG- denotes a thing for holding one object only. Used as a root, ingo = a socket, a sheath, a holder.

-IX denotes a thing which contains, produces, encloses, or bears. Used as a root, ujo = a receptacle, a container. It has a wide significance, for it can be used for:

(1). The names of countries, as being the places which contain their various races.


(2). The names of trees producing fruits.


233
(3) The names of receptacles commonly used for certain articles.

**Example.** - *Tea-box, tea-caddy, tea-canister* is the receptacle in which tea is made, not kept, therefore *teacup, teapot* is a vessel in which tea is kept, not made. *Teacup, teapot* are the names of receptacles, not of the materials which are contained in them. A teapot is a vessel in which tea is made, not kept. A teapot is a teapot, not a vessel for fluids. *Tea-caddy, tea-canister* is a vessel for fluids.

**Examples.**
- *Teo* = tea, *tuo* = a tea-caddy or canister (a teapot is a vessel in which tea is made, not kept, therefore *teur* = a teapot, from *teur* = a vessel for fluids).
- *Mom* = money, *mono* = a purse.
- *Papero* = paper, *paperujo* = a portfolio.
- *Sucero* = sugar, *sukerujo* = a sugar-basin.
- *Karto* = card, *karujo* = a card-case.
- *Abelujo* = a beehive.

The difference in meaning of these three suffixes is shown in the following examples:

For instance, *cigaro* = a cigar, *cigartejo* = a cigar depot; but if we wish to distinguish the kind of depot, viz., store, shop, etc., we add the word required. If it be a store, we add *tenejo* = a storehouse, as *cigartenejo* = a cigar storehouse or depot. If a shop, we add *vendejo* = a market, or place where things are sold, as *cigarvendejo* = a cigar shop, or we might say *cigarbutiko*.

- *Cigaringo* = a mouth-piece, which contains several cigars.
- *Pomio* = an apple, *pomujo* = an apple orchard,

**Suffix -ID-.** (Ex. 25).

- *Ido* = offspring, descendant;
- *idaro* = issue, posterity.

**Examples.**
- *Kato* = a cat, *kato* = a kitten.
- *Bom* = an ox, *borido* = a calf.
- *Bonno* = a cow, *bonnido* = a cow's calf of either sex.
- *Bovido* = a cow's calf of either sex.
- *Cervo* = a stag, *cervido* = a fawn.
- *Lundo* = a dog, *lundido* = a puppy.
- *Cevalo* = a horse, *cevalido* = a foal.
- *Koko* = a cock, *koko* = a chicken.
- *Koko* = a chick, a young chicken. *Birdo* = a bird, *birdido* = a fledgeling, a young bird.
- *Wo* = Israel, *izraelido* = a descendant of Napoleon.
(a) These two are the most important and most widely used of all suffixes, as they form an infinity of words, especially verbs. Used as roots, (1) ĝi = to make, to cause, as:—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ex. 29</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ĝi  lin veni ai nia dancado = Make her come to our dance.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Li penis ĝi sian amikon tu ši la aferon = He tried to make his friend broach the subject (touch upon the matter).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(2) ĝi = to become (to be made, to get), as

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ex. 29</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>La vetero ĝi vias pii varma = The weather is getting (becoming) warmer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Li balda ĝi ĝos maljunuio = He will soon become an old man.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) Used as suffixes:

(1) -IG- denotes (like the English suffix -fy) to make, to cause (to get), to render, as ruĝa = red, ruĝigi = to make red, to redden, and from this verb is formed ruĝigo = the action of reddening, ruĝiga = reddening (adj.).

(2) -IG- denotes to become, to get (in the sense of to become). Note the following differences in meaning of ruĝi with this suffix and with -IG- in the preceding paragraph: ruĝi= to become or get red, to blush; ruĝiga= the action of getting red, a blush; ruĝiga= blushing (adj.).

The above instances are words derived from an adjective, but the suffixes can be applied to almost any part of speech, as the following examples will show:

From adjectives:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Ex. 29</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Bona,= good, bonigi = to make or render good, bonigi = to become good.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ptitbomgi = to make better to improve, ptiboniĝi = to become better, to improve (adj.).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laca = tired, fatigued, = to tire (active), laci = to get tired, laci = the state of being tired, laci = the state of being tired, laci = the state of being tired.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Summary: These two suffixes are crucial in forming verbs and adjectives in the language, allowing for an infinite number of new words.
growing tired. Pretty clearly, pretty = to make ready, pretip = on the (implied) ready.— From all these verbs nouns, adjectives, and adverbs can be formed.

(c). From nouns.

Examples.—From a noun (not), deserto = desert, to desert, lafontange = lafontagne = engagement, engagement, engagement, engagement, engagement, engagement, engagement, engagement. These were used, but in none of the cases would the name suffice, so—

From the adjectives, lafontange, etc., etc.

(f). From verbs.

Examples.—Morti = to die, mortigi = to cause to die, to kill, mortiga = to die, to expire (become dead), mortiga-to-kill, mortiga-daily, mortiga-cause, a murderer, mortiga-murder, a murder

Sciigi = to cause (someone) to know, or, to make (something) known. Mi sciigis la homon pri la nova ĵo, or, Mi sciigis la nova ĵon al la homo = I caused the man to know (or, I informed the man) of the news, or, I made the news known to the man.

Sciiĝi = to become informed, to learn. Mi sciiĝis la nova ĵon (or, pri la nova ĵo) = I learnt the news (novajon here shows preposition omitted, see para. 253).

(g). Verbs formed by -IGI are transitive (para. 181), but those by -IGI are intransitive, and therefore have no passive voice (para. 182); we cannot therefore use the passive participles, AĐA, etc., with verbs to -IGI, but only the active forms AĐA, etc., as—

A ĐA ĵon = I caused the man to know (or, I informed the man) of the news, or, I made the news known to the man.

Sciigi = to cause (someone) to know, or, to make (something) known. Mi sciigis la homon pri la nova ĵo, or, Mi sciigis la nova ĵon al la homo = I caused the man to know (or, I informed the man) of the news, or, I made the news known to the man.

Sciigi = to cause (someone) to know, or, to make (something) known. Mi sciigis la homon pri la nova ĵo, or, Mi sciigis la nova ĵon al la homo = I caused the man to know (or, I informed the man) of the news, or, I made the news known to the man.
(i) **Intransitive verbs.**—Some verbs, such as Ĝesi = io cease, daŭri = to continue, pasi = to pass, are neuter or intransitive.

**Examples.**—La pluvo ĝesas = The rain ceases.
Lapafado daŭris kelkan tempon = The shooting continued some time.
La tempo pasas = Time passes.

In English these verbs are both transitive and intransitive, therefore if we wish to give them an active signification in Esperanto we must add the active suffix -IGI.

**Examples.**—Cesigu tion f ei surdigas min per via bruo!= Cease that, you deafen me with your noise!
Daŭri ĝi vian rakonton = Continue your narrative.
Pasigu al mi la iara = Pass me the decanter (see para. 237 (i)).

(ii) **Transitive verbs.**—On the contrary, fini = to finish, komenci — to commence, being transitive, do not require the active suffix.

**Examples.**—Finn vian laboron = Finish your work.
Ni komencis nian vojaĝon je la dua, horo = We commenced our journey at 2 o'clock.

But we must use the intransitive suffix -iGi, if we wish to give an intransitive sense to these verbs.

**Examples.**—Lia laboro finiĝas = His work finishes.
La iaro jiniĝos post kelkaj tagoj = The year will end in a few days.
La vojaĝo koinenciĝis je la tria horo = The journey commenced at 3 o'clock (see para. 237 (i)).

(iii) **Numerals, prepositions, prefixes, and suffixes.**—Joined to these, -IG- and -IGI- serve to form numerous words.

**Examples.**—Dmbligi = to double, duobli i = to become double.
Ahyi = to attribute to, ali i = to join (oneself to), to adhere, ali o = adhesion.
Ekaigi = to dismiss, eksi i = to become ex-, to resign (a position).
Disigi = to separate, disigo = act of separating, disjunction, disi o = disunion, schism.
Kunigi = to connect, kurdigo- = connection, kunigo- = junction.
Forirji = to do away with, /ori i = to withdraw.
Suffix -IL-. (Ex. 29).

-IL- denotes the tool, instrument, or means by which something is done. As a root, ilo = a tool, an instrument, an implement, or a means of.

Examples:
- Kombi = to comb, kombilo = a comb.
- Razi = to shave, rrazilo = a razor.
- Traniĉi = to cut, trunĉilo = a knife.
- EtvM = to hack, to chop, halcito = an axe, a hatchet, a chopper.
- Kudri = to sew, kudrito = a needle.
- Tondi = to shear, to clip, tondilo = shears, scissors.
- Preĉi = to print, presilo = a printing press.
- Fernmonti = to ferment, fernmontilo = yeast, leaven (a means of fermenting).
- Batali = to fight, batalilo = a weapon.
- Yfrmi = to arm, armiloj = arms, armilejo = an arsenal (a place for arms, see /E/-, 278).

Suffix -IN-. (Ex. 25).

-IA- denotes the feminine gender. As a root, ino = a female, ina = female.

Examples:
- Frato = a brother, fratino = a sister.
- Patro = a father, patrino = a mother.
- Kuzo = a cousin, kuzino = a cousin.
- Avo = grandfather, avino = grandmother.
- Nepo = a grandson, nepino = a granddaughter.
- Nevo = a nephew, nevino = a niece.
- Patra = paternal, patrino = maternal.
- Frata = brotherly, fraternal.
- Cevalo = a horse, cevala = a mare.
- Sei'alino = a colt, cèalino = a filly.
- Ŝo/o = a sheep, šafino = a ewe.
- Hundo = a dog, hundino = a bitch.

MoSTO. (Ex. 23).

(a) This is not a suffix, since it does not form part of a word. It is a word used by itself or added after a title to denote respect. Vien moSTO is a higher expression of respect than vieni- or.

(b) No special rule has been laid down for the use of moSTO, but a simple one would be to make the title an adjective and add moSTO; this would be generally understood by foreigners, which is really all that is required in Esperanto.

284
In speaking to persons bearing titles by birth or profession, it would be well to address them by their full title first, as shown below, and afterwards use the expression via moŝto to represent “Your Majesty,” “Your Royal Highness,” “Your Grace,” “Your Lordship,” “Your Ladyship,” “Your Honour,” “Your Worship,” “Your Excellency,” “Your Eminence,” etc. The suffix -IN is never added.

**Examples:**
- Emperor = Via imperia moŝto = Your Imperial Majesty.
- King = Via rega moŝto = Your Majesty.
- Queen = Via regina moŝto = Your Majesty.
- Royal Family = Via regia moŝto = Your Royal Highness.
- Prince = Via princa moŝto = Your Highness, or, Serene Highness.
- Duke = Via duka moŝto = Your Grace.
- Archbishop = Via episkopa moŝto = Your Grace.
- Marquis = Via markiza moŝto = Your Lordship, My Lord.
- Earl, Count = Via grata moŝto = Your Lordship, My Lord.
- Viscount = Via Vicgrafa moŝto = Your Lordship, My Lord.
- Lord, Baron = Via barona moŝto = Your Lordship, My Lord.
- Governor = Via rega moŝto = Your Excellency.
- Judge (not a Baron) = Via juzista moŝto = Your Honour.
- Mayor = Via urbestra moŝto = Your Worship.
- Magistrate = Via magistrata moŝto = Your Worship.
- General (Officer) = Via generala moŝto = General.

N.B.—No title beyond his rank is given to a General in England, like “Monsieur le General” in France. We usually say “General,” or “Sir,” but moŝto might be used in Esperanto.

As regards addresses of letters, we can say —
- At His / Her Excellency, The Governor...
- To His Lordship, The Governor...
- To Her Excellency, The Governor...
- To His Excellency, The Governor...
- Sir...
- ...or if we mention him by name —
- To His Excellency, Sir Henry Smith, The Governor...

239
Suffixes -OBL-, -ON-, -OP-. (Ex. 18)

These three suffixes are used only for numerals, making them multiples, fractions, or collectives (see paras. 219, 220, 221).

(a). -OBL- added to a cardinal number denotes the number is a multiple. It is equivalent to the English suffixes "-fold" or "-uple."

EXAMPLES.—Duobla = a multiple, multobla = manifold; Kvaroble tri estas (or, jaras) dek du ... 4 times 3 = 12
Kvaroble kvar estas dudek ... ... ... 4 ,, 4 = 20
Kvaroble ses estas kvardek ... ... ... 6 ,, 4 = 36
Kvaroble sep estas kvardek ... ... ... 7 ,, 4 = 42
Kvaroble naŭ estas naŭdek ... ... ... 9 ,, 4 = 54
dekoble dek estas naŭdek ... ... ... 10 ,, 9 = 90
dekoble du estas dudek ... ... ... 12 ,, 9 = 114

dekoble tri estas tridek ... ... ... 15 ,, 9 = 135

dekoble kvin estas tridek ... ... ... 20 ,, 9 = 200

dekoble sex estas kvardek ... ... ... 24 ,, 9 = 216

dekoble sep estas kvardek ... ... ... 30 ,, 9 = 270
dekoble naŭ estas naŭdek ... ... ... 36 ,, 9 = 324

dekoble du estas dudek ... ... ... 42 ,, 9 = 366

dekoble tri estas tridek ... ... ... 45 ,, 9 = 385

dekoble kvin estas tridek ... ... ... 60 ,, 9 = 550

dekoble sex estas kvardek ... ... ... 72 ,, 9 = 630

dekoble sep estas kvardek ... ... ... 84 ,, 9 = 720

dekoble naŭ estas naŭdek ... ... ... 108 ,, 9 = 900

dekoble du estas dudek ... ... ... 144 ,, 9 = 1296

dekoble tri estas tridek ... ... ... 216 ,, 9 = 2187

dekoble kvin estas tridek ... ... ... 324 ,, 9 = 3280

dekoble sex estas kvardek ... ... ... 432 ,, 9 = 4374

dekoble sep estas kvardek ... ... ... 550 ,, 9 = 5580

dekoble naŭ estas naŭdek ... ... ... 684 ,, 9 = 6864

(b). -ON- added to a cardinal number denotes a fraction.

EXAMPLES.—Duona = half, duonobla = by halves, duono = a half (£).

2.5, triona = third, triono = a third.

Kvarona = fourth, kvarono = a fourth (¼).

Dekona = tenth, dekono = a tenth (⅑).

Tridekonoj = in twenties, by scores.

Dekoble dek estas naŭdek ... ... ... 120 ,, 9 = 1080

200, 20, 120, 10, 9, 8, 6, 5, 4, 3, 2, 1.

(c). -OP- added to a cardinal number denotes a collective.

EXAMPLES.—Duope = two together, in twos.

Triope = threes, in triplets.

Deko = tens, in tens.

Dukeko = twenties, by twenties.

Milope = thousands, in thousands.

Kvinope = five together five at a time.

La soldatoj marŝis kvarope = The soldiers were marching in fours.

The number must be taken in a collective sense.

As a root, e.g.,-collage.

EXAMPLES.—Du- or du-, du- or du- together, includes two, double, two together, two in two; Du- or du-, du- or du- together, doubles, doubled.

Kvar- or kvar-, kvare or kvare together, includes four, quadrupled, quadrupled.

Dek- or dek-, deko or deko together, includes ten, tens, tens.

240
285. Suffix -UM-. (Ex. 39)

UM has no special meaning. Its different meanings are usually suggested by the context, and the pronunciation of the root to which it is joined. There are but few words in which it is used, and these must be learnt like simple words.

The following embrace nearly all —

*Aer-umi = to air. Aer = air.
*Brul-umo = a swelling, inflammation. Brul = to burn.
*Buŝ-umo = a muzzle (for a dog), a nose-band. Bus = mouth.
*Ktopl-umo = to coo. Kolom = a dove.
*Komun-umo = a commune, a community. Kom = common.
*Kruc-umo = to crucify. Kruc = a cross.
*Lakt-umo = milk, melt, soft-roe. Lakt = milk.
*Lek-umo = to lap. Lek = lick.
*Lot-umo = to allot. Lot = to draw lots.
*Mcdvarm-umo = cold. Mcd = cold.
*Man-umo = a cuff, a wristband, a hand. M = hand.
*Mastr-umo = household management. Mastro = master (of a house).
*Plen-umo = to fulfil, accomplish. Plena = full, complete.
*Part-umo = a fraction (mathematics). Parto = a part, a share.
*Sap-umo = to soap. Sapo = soap.
*VeiUo = to ventilate, to use a fan. Vei = wind.

N.B.—The 16 words marked * are given in Dr. Zamenhof's "Fundamento de Esperanto."
286. Prefixes BO-, DUON-, GE-, PRA-. (Ex. 25).

These four prefixes all denote relationship of a greater or less degree:

(a). BO- denotes relationship by marriage, and is equivalent to the English suffix -in-law, as patro = father, bopatro = father-in-law.

(b). DUON- denotes also relationship by marriage, and is also a grade in both words, as duonpatro = stepfather, duonjara = half-yearly, etc. As a root, duono = a half, so properly it should signify only half-blood relationship, but there are few relationships of this nature, so it is used principally for step relationship, as duonfrato = stepbrother or half-brother.

(c). GE- denotes both sexes taken together. The words are always in the plural, and the feminine suffix is, of course, never added. Examples.—Edzo = a husband, geedzoj = husband and wife, a married couple. Sinjoro = Mr., gesinjoroj = Mr. and Mrs., or ladies and gentlemen. Papatroj = father and mother, parents. Palro = a master (of a household), gemastroj = master and mistress. Frato = a brother, gefratoj = brother(s) and sister(s).

(d). PRA- has a primordial signification, denoting past times. As regards relationship, it is the equivalent of the English prefixes "fore-," "great," or "grand." As a root, praa = primordial.

Examples.—Pratro = primordial father, prapatro = stepfather, prapatroj = stepfather and mother, parents.

(e). The following are examples of these four prefixes:

- Patro = father, bopatro = father-in-law, duonpatro = stepfather, geapatroj = father and mother, parents.

242
PREFIXES.  11  286—287.

Patrino = mother, bopatrino = mother-in-law, ditonpatrino = stepmother.

Ĵ if^grandfather, ioaro = grandfather-in-law, duonavo = stepgrandfather, geavoj = grandparents, prageavoj = great-grandparents.

Filo= son, boftlo = son-in-law, duonfilo = stepson.

Fiiino= daughter, bojUina= daughter-in-law, ditonjUino--. stepdaughter.

Xepo = grandson, pranepo = great-grandson, prony= grand.

A epino = granddaughter, pranepino = great-granddaughter.

Frato= brother, bofrato = brother-in-law, duonfrato  = step, or half, or brother, gefrajoj= brother(s) and sister(s), bogefratoj = brothers) and sister(s)-in-law.

Fratino= sister, bofratino = sister-in-law, duonfratino = step, or half, or sister.

Onklo = uncle, praonklo = grand, or great, uncle, geonkloj = uncle(s) and aunt(s).

Onklino = aunt, praonklino = grand, or great, aunt.

XevOi= nephew, pra/iei'o = grandnephew, ijeneroj- = nephew(s) and niece(s).

>cino = niece, pranerino = great-niece.

Infano = child, duoninfano = stepchild.

287. Prefixes DE-, DIS-, FOR-. (Ex. 31).

These three prefixes give the idea of separation or change of position.

(a). DE as a proposition = from, or. As a prefix it marks the point of departure, or movement from one place or position to another.

(b). DIS- denotes a separation, in the sense of a rupture, or breaking up into parts, or in several different directions.

(c). FOR- as an adverb = away. As a prefix it denotes distance from another.

(d). Thus, birds on a tree can fly down from the tree to the ground = deflugi; or fly in different directions, viz., disperse = disfiugi; or fly away altogether from the tree = forflugi.
The following examples will give the best idea of the meanings of these prefixes:

**Ŝiri** = to tear, **deairi** = to tear from, to pluck.

**Disŝiri** = to tear to pieces, to lacerate.

**Furiri** = to tear away from.

**Iri** = to go, **deiri** = to go from (a place).

**Dixii** = to go in different directions, to separate.

**Foriri** = to go away, to depart.

**Jeti** = to throw, **dejeti** = to throw down, to overthrow.

**Diydi** = to throw about, to demolish, scatter.

**Forjeti** = to throw away, to discard.

**Meti** = to put, **demeti** = to put down, take off, doff.

**Dismeti** = to disperse, to distribute.

**Formed** = to put away, to omit.

**Porti** = to carry, **deporti** = to carry from, to deport.

**Diaporti** = to carry here and there.

**Forporti** = to carry away.

**EK-** denotes an action just begun, of short duration, sudden, momentary.

**Kanti** = to sing, **ekkanti** = to begin to sing, or to start singing.

**Ridi** = to laugh, **ekridi** = to burst out laughing.

**A'n'i** = to cry, **ekkrii** = to exclaim, to cry out.

**Lerni** = to learn, **eklerni** = to begin to learn.

**Iri** = to go, **ekiri** = to start, to set out.

**Plori** = to shed tears, **ekplori** = to burst out crying.

**Kapti** = to catch, **ekkapti** = to seize.

**Dormi** = to sleep, **ekdormi** = to fall asleep.

**Vidi** = to see, **ekvidi** = to perceive.

**Tremi** = to tremble, **ektremi** = to start (with fear, etc.).

**EK-** is useful in such redundant expressions as "begin to," "come to," frequently used in English before a verb, as:

\[ \text{Kiam mi ekpripensas} = \text{When I begin to reflect.} \]

\[ \text{Kiam mi ekpensas pri ĝi} = \text{When I come to think of it.} \]

**MAL-, NE-, SEN-** (Ex. 33).

(a) These three prefixes give an opposite or negative meaning to the words before which they are placed, the nature of which varies with the prefix used.
(b). JUL is used as a root for the adjective mala = contrary, and for the adverb male = on the contrary, conversely. As a prefix it signifies that the word has a meaning exactly the contrary to that which it had before JUL was prefixed. It is never used to give the meaning of badness, unless it be a prefix to some word signifying goodness. For instance, timulo = coward has a bad signification, but its opposite mal-timulo = bold has no such meaning. Bona = good, malbona = bad, simply because "bad" is the opposite of "good."

(c). XE is a primary adverb, meaning "no," "not," but it is often used as a prefix. In some phrases the meaning is the same whether it be used as a prefix or not:—Ne estas cert = it is not certain has the same signification as estas necerte = it is uncertain. As a prefix, therefore, it gives simply a negative signification to a word, i.e.—Plena = complete, full, neplena = incomplete, not full. Used as a root, it forms ne- = to deny, x = a negative.

(d). SEX is a preposition meaning "without," and as a prefix it has the same signification: as 6esi = to cease, sensen = without meaning, sensen = without meaning, senkapti = to decapitate. Used as a root, it forms sen- = to deprive of.

(e). The student may at first find these three prefixes somewhat puzzling, especially as sometimes there is no single English word which will express their meaning. The first thing is to bear in mind that JUL denotes the exact opposite of the root, and therefore may be much stronger in signification than the mere negative ne—not, or sen=without. For instance, plena = complete, full, but plene = incomplete, not full. Now the opposite to "complete" or "full" is not "incomplete" or "not full," but something stronger, viz., "void" or "empty," therefore
malplena = empty, void, vacuous. Again, from ric = rich, we form the opposite, malrica = poor, which is clearly a worse state than nerica = not rich, or senrica, which, in its literal sense, means "without wealth or riches." A man not rich might be well off, a man without riches might have enough to live on. Fermita = shut, closed; the opposite is malfermita = opened, open. Applied to a window it would mean the window was open as far as it would go, but if it were partly open, it would be more correct to say nefermita = not closed. (1) In using MAL- we must consider the strength of the word to which we are giving an opposite meaning, and not oppose a word like "destitute" to "rich," for "destitute" is the opposite of "rolling in wealth," the adjective for which would be "rich." Therefore malplenana = destitute. So bela = beautiful, belega = splendid, magnificent; therefore their opposites are maibela = ugly, malbelega = hideous. (g) No fixed rules can be given for the use of these three prefixes; but, generally speaking, it will be right (1) to use MAL- if we wish to give a stronger idea than NE- or SEN- would infer; (2) to use NE- in cases where a simple negative will give the meaning; (3), to use SEN- if "without" is more applicable than "not," as — neroma = without motion, stationary, but nenneroma = not movable, immovable. It will generally be right to employ SEN- to represent the English suffix-less, as — sendanka = thankless, senmona = penniless, senhara = hairless, bald, senutila = useless. The opposite to "useless" is something stronger than "useful," therefore malutita = detrimental, prejudicial. (h) The following examples will give an idea of the use of these three prefixes: — inedica = empty, void, destitute. Pudlica = visible, or not, senstudica = thoughtless, thought of, unthought of, unimportant, insufficient. (h) The following examples will give an idea of the use of these three prefixes: — inedica = empty, void, destitute. Pudlica = visible, or not, senstudica = thoughtless, thought of, unthought of, unimportant, insufficient.
PREFIXES. 289—290.

mala- = scarce, rare.
pi- = simple,
intricate, complex.
perm- = permit,
give.
per/-= to permit,
perm-erme-/ = to forbid.

Help- = to help,
hinder,
give no assistance.

sob- = sobriety,
intemperance, drunkenness.

ĝ- = wisdom,
foolishness.
mod- = modest,
officious, conceited.
just- = just,
unjust.

pura- = clean, scaled,
dirty.

pia- = pious,
impius.
agrabla- = agreeable,
unpleasant,
disagreeable, nasty.

glata- = smooth,
rough.

atento- = negligence.
respekto- = respect,
disrespect,
violation.

280. Prefix RE-. (Ex. 32).

(a). BE-,
like the English prefix re-,
means "back" or "again." It denotes (1) the repetition of an action, or (2) the return of some person or thing to the person, place, or state with whom, or in which, such person or thing originally was. As a root, re- again, in return.

(b). Repetition.

EXAMPLES. — Reefari = to make afresh, to remake;
rediri = to say again, to repeat (ripeti is, however, more frequently used for "repeat"); rekanti = to sing again;
rejum-ĝl = to grow young again;
renasko = rebirth, regeneration;
repagi = to repay, to reimburse;
reenmeti = to put in again, to reinstate;
rekunigi = to reunite;
rebridigi = to rekindle;
reformi = to reform, to remodel;
repi-odukti = to reproduce.

(2). Return, etc.

EXAMPLES. — Redoni = to give back, to restore;
reprem = to take back;
re-ĝeti = to throw back;
resa&i=ix, rebound, rebrih = to shine back, to reflect;
reveni = to come back to return;
reporti = to carry back, to carry to the original place.

N.B.—In addition to the 12 prefixes given in paras. 286—290, nearly all the prepositions are in common use as prefixes; examples of which will be found in para. 299. When prefixed to a verb, the preposition is frequently repeated before the indirect compliment (see para. 294).
PART III.

EXERCISES.

EXERCISE 1.

Article, Nouns, Adjectives (singular), (see paras. 94, 103, 107).


TRANSLATION 1.

(1) A father and brother. (2) A lion is an animal. (3) A rose is a flower. (4) A pigeon is a bird. (5) The rose belongs to Theodore. (6) The sun shines. (7) (The, my, our) father is a tailor. (8) A child is not a mature man. (9) The child no longer cries (already does not cry). (10) The sky (heaven) is blue. (11) Where are the book and the pencil? (12) The book is on the table and the pencil lies on the window. (13) On the window lie a pencil and a pen. (14) Here is an apple. (15) On the ground lies a stone. (16) Go to (the, your) brother.

N.B.—See para. 100 as to the use of iu speaking of one's own relatives.

348
EXERCISE 2.

ARTICLE, NOUNS, ADJECTIVES (ACCUSATIVE AND PLURAL),
(see formulas 86, 94, 100, 107).


TRANSLATION 2.

(1) Here is an apple which I found. (2) This lion is a strong animal. (3) The teeth of the lion are sharp. (4) I see a lion. (5) Who dare to climb on the lion? (6) The woman is good. (7) Here is the father's hat. (8) I love the (my) son. (9) The hands of John are clean. (10) I know John. (11) The men, women, and children are in the room. (12) The song of birds is agreeable. (13) The songs of birds are agreeable. (14) The father gives the books to the children. (15) Where are the books which (accus. pl.) you bought? (16) I am reading a book. (17) Our father is not reading a book, but he is writing a letter.
EXERCISE 3.

Adverbs with Grammatical Terminations (see paras. 238-248).

1. To remain with a lion is dangerous. (2) The birds are flying merrily, and some are singing joyfully on the large trees. (3) The boys and girls run quickly on the sand of the seashore. (4) The father acts wisely and well, but the son learns slowly, writes very badly, and reads with difficulty. (5) I saw John in the morning, George in the afternoon, and William in the evening. (6) She writes extremely well. (7) On reflection I shall do that (so). (8) Certainly I do not esteem him. (9) He learnt it by heart. (10) Sometimes I walk in the garden. (11) On the right you will see the house, and on the left the church.

TRANSLATION 3.

1. To remain with a lion is dangerous. (2) The birds are flying merrily, and some are singing joyfully on the large trees. (3) The boys and girls run quickly on the sand of the seashore. (4) The father acts wisely and well, but the son learns slowly, writes very badly, and reads with difficulty. (5) I saw John in the morning, George at mid-day, and William in the evening. (6) She writes extremely well. (7) On reflection I shall do that (so). (8) Certainly I do not esteem him. (9) He learnt it by heart. (10) Sometimes I walk in the garden. (11) On the right you will see the house, and on the left the church.

2. Adverb, because there is no noun or pronoun in the sentence which danger could qualify (see para. 245).

3. Before each separate noun it is optional (as in English) to repeat the article or not (see para. 201 (a)).
EXERCISE 4.
Comparison of Adjectives and Adverbs—Superlatives (see paras. 112, 113, 248).


TRANSLATION 4.
(1) I am as strong as you. (2) The horses are as strong as the men. (3) You are as strong as John. (4) George is stronger than John. (5) John is stronger than you. (6) I am stronger than you. (7) John is stronger than the man. (8) I am not so strong as you. (9) I am not as strong as you. (10) I am stronger than the man. (11) He is stronger than me. (12) The strongest of all the men is. (13) My brother loves her more than his son. (14) My brother loves his son more than his daughter. (15) John is the strongest of all the men. (16) John is the strongest of the men. (17) John is the strongest of all. (18) George is the best student boy in the school.
EXERCISE 5.

Personal and Possessive Pronouns (see paras. 126—134).


TRANSLATION 5.

(1) He loves me, but I do not love him. (2) I wished to beat him, but he ran away from me. (3) Tell me your name. (4) Do not write to me such long letters. (5) Come to the school with me today, so I will not be crying. (6) I will not go to school today. (7) The house belongs to us. (8) They saw my father, but not your brother. (9) He is my uncle, for my father is his brother. (10) I did not see their books. (11) Mr. Peter and your cousin love my children. (12) I have my hat, now look for yours. (13) I wash myself in my room, but you wash yourself in your father’s room (in the room of your father). (14) I saw his animal, but it did not see me. (15) Did you see it? (16) People (one, they) say, “With money one can buy anything (everything).” (17) I saw your book, his stick, her umbrella, and their chest.
EXERCISE 6.

Possessive Reflexive Pronouns (see paras. 130—138).


TRANSLATION 6.

(1) My father is in his garden. (2) My father’s wife is in her garden. (3) Your brother rides his horse. (4) The dog loves its master. (5) Mothers love their children. (6) I saw my friend and his wife. (7) John met my father and his horse. (8) I saw the horse of my father and my horse. (9) We saw the horse of your father and your horse. (10) William and Joseph saw horses in the field. (11) We saw your horse in the field. (12) John met my father and his horse. (13) We saw the horse of your father and your horse. (14) My father walked (himself) in his sweep and his sweep. (15) My father walked (himself) in his sweep and his sweep. (16) We saw my father walking (himself) in his sweep and his sweep.
EXERCISE 7.

Verbs, Simple Tenses, Negatives, and Questions (see paras. 58—64, 91, 92, 168, 214).

(1) Mi legas. (2) Li ne legas. (3) Ni legas. (4) Li legas. (5) Vi legas. (6) Mi legas la libro. (7) Mi ne legas la libro. (8) Ĉu vi legas la libro? Ne! mi ne legas. (9) Ĉu vi videblas en la selo? Ne! mi ne videblas. (10) Mi promenonis en la ĝardeno. (11) Mi ne promenonis en la ĝardeno. (12) Ĉu vi ne promenonis en la ĝardeno? Ne! mi ne promenonis. (13) Mi ne estus sad, mi ne estus felika. (14) Mi ne estus sad, mi ne estus felika. (15) Ĉu vi rekonas min, se vi mi vidus sen mia peruko? Ne! mi ne rekonas. (16) Ĉu vi vizafritos? Ne! mi jam havas. (17) Se mi estus sana, mi estus felika. (18) Se mi ne estus sana, mi ne estus felika. (19) Ĉu vi ne respondus al mi? Car mi ne komprenas ĉi. (20) Ĉu vi ne respondus al mi? Car mi ne komprenas ĉi.

1In replying to questions the complement is usually omitted (para. 64).

TRANSLATION 7.

(1) I read. (2) He does not read. (3) We are reading. (4) They read. (5) We are reading. (6) I read (perfect) the book. (7) I did not read the book. (8) Did you read the book? (9) Had I read the book? (10) If I were not (should not be) well, I should not be happy. (11) If I were not (should not be) well, I should not be happy. (12) If I were not (should not be) well, I should not be happy. (13) If I were not (should not be) well, I should not be happy. (14) If I were not (should not be) well, I should not be happy. (15) If I were not (should not be) well, I should not be happy. (16) If I were not (should not be) well, I should not be happy. (17) If I were not (should not be) well, I should not be happy.
EXERCISES.

No! I should not (recognize). (16) Do you want coffee?  
No! I already have (some). (17) Do not touch the looking-glass. (18) Let him come, and I will pardon him. (19) Order (to) him not to chatter (that he do not chatter). (20) Beg her to give (that she give) me a candle. (21) Let us be merry, let us use life well, for life is not long. (22) Why do you put errors (but see) in? Because I do not understand you.

EXERCISE 8.

Verbs, Compound Tenses, Active Voice (see para. 214).


2 Note the imperative mood after verbs expressing "necessity," etc. (para. 390).

---

1 Always use the compound tense if the simple form is likely to confuse the meaning. Note that the words "jam antaŭe" (already beforehand) show the action has passed, and hence the simple tense can be used. If these words be omitted, the compound tense must be used. The same remarks apply to the Sentences 8 and 10 (see para., lib (a)).
(1) Now he tells me the truth. (2) Yesterday he told me the truth. (3) He often tells me the truth. (4) When you come into the drawing-room, he already previously told me the truth, or he had told me the truth. (5) He will tell me the truth. (6) When you have come, he will have told me the truth. (7) If I should ask him, he would tell me the truth. (8) I should not have made the mistake if he previously told me the truth, or had told me the truth. (9) If I should ask him, I wish he would tell me the truth. (10) Do not do so, and I (shall) have received your letter, I shall go away. (11) When I had received the news, I bought a new book. (12) It is necessary that you finish your work before I shall return.
EXERCISES.

(20) Mia ora ringo ne estus nun tiel longe serata, se ji ne estus tiel lerte ka sita de vi.

(21) Laŭ la propono de la ingenieroj tiu la fervojo estus konstruota en la daŭro de du jaroj; sed mi pensas, ke ji estos konstruata pli ol tri jarojn.

(22) Sur la kameno inter du potoj staras fera kaldrono; el la kaldrono, en kiu sin trovas bolanta akvo, eliras vaporo; tra la fenestro, kiu sin trovas apud la pordo, la vaporo iras sur la korton.

1. Jarojn, being in the accusative, shows that some preposition (let’s be humble) has been omitted (see para. 41 (b)).

2. Accusative of direction (see para. 67 (b)).

TRANSLATION 3.

1. I am (being) loved. (2) He was loved. (3) We shall be loved. (4) You would be loved. (5) I have been washed. (6) She had been washed. (7) They had been washed. (8) You will have been washed. (9) It would have been washed. (10) We are (about to be) invited. (11) You was (about to be) invited. (12) He would be about to be invited. (13) Be loved. (14) Be (having been) washed. (15) This merchandise is always willingly (being) bought by me (lb) the overcoat has been (was) bought by me, consequently it belongs to me. (17) When your house was being built, my house had already long been built. (18) I make known that from now my son’s debts will not be paid by me. (19) Be wench, my entire debt will soon be (have been) paid to you. (20) My gold ring would not now be so long being looked for it it had not (should not have) been so cleverly hidden by you.

257  K.
EXERCISE 10.

Correlative Words (see paras. 139—157).

(1) la, lum, lum, lo, dei, lei, le, lem, te.
(2) La

montrajn na

vortojn ni konsilas bone ellerni, car el
ili

ĉiu povas jam fari al si grandan serion da aliaj
pronomej kaj adverboj.

(3) Se ni aldonas al ili la

liiron X, ni ricevas vortojn demasajaj al ili tiaj:

Kia, Kiel, Kiam, Kie, Kies, Kio, Kiom, Kiu.

(4) Se ni aldonas la liiron T, ni ricevas vortojn

montrajn:

Ti, Tiel, Tiam, Tie, Ties, Tio, Tim, Tiu.

(5) Aldonante la

literon C, ni ricevas vortojn

komunajaj:

C'ia, Cial, Ciam, Cie, Cies, Cio, Ciom, Ciu.

(6) Aldonante la

literon NEN-, ni ricevas

vortojn neajn:

Nenia, Nenial, Neniam, Nenie, Neniel, Nenies, Neniorn, Neniu.

(7) Aldonante al la

vortoj montraj la vorton Ci, ni ricevas montron pli

proksiman; ekzemple:

Tiu

(pli proksima),

Tie

(malproksima).

(8) Aldonante al la

vortoj demandaj la vorton AJN, ni ricevas vortojn

sendiferaj:

Kia ajn, Kial ajn, Kiam ajn, Kie ajn, Kiel ajn, Kies ajn, Kio ajn, Kiom ajn, Kiu ajn.

(9) Ekster

tio, el la diritaj vortoj ni povas ankora

ĉiu

aliaj

vortojn, per helpo de gramatikaj fini

ĝoj kaj aliaj

vortoj

ks. "eks.";

ekzemple:

Tia, Ciama, Kiom,

Tiea, Ci-tiea, Tieulo, Tiam do, k.t.p. (kaj tiel plu).

TRANSLATION 10.

(1) la = some, any. 

lal — for some reason.

Iam = sometime, once (on a time).

Ieu = somewhere.

Iel = in some manner/ "somebody a, anybody's.

Iom = something, anything.

(2) The nine words

shown we recommend to be well learnt, for from them

ĉiu can at once (already) make for himself a large series

of pronouns and adverbs.

(3) If we add to them the

literon K, we get interrogative or relative words:

¿What sorts of? = why, wherefore, for what reason.

(4) Se ni aldonas la liiron X, ni ricevas vortojn demasajaj al ili tiaj:

Kia, Kiel, Kiam, Kie, Kies, Kio, Kiom, Kiu.

(5) Se ni aldonas la liiron T, ni ricevas vortojn

montrajn:

Ti, Tiel, Tiam, Tie, Ties, Tio, Tim, Tiu.

(6) Aldonante la

literon C, ni ricevas vortojn

komunajaj:

C'ia, Cial, Ciam, Cie, Cies, Cio, Ciom, Ciu.

(7) Se ni aldonas la liiron NEN-, ni ricevas vortojn neajn:

Nenia, Nenial, Neniam, Nenie, Neniel, Nenies, Neniorn, Neniu.

(8) Aldonante al la

vortoj demandaj la vorton AJN, ni ricevas vortojn sendiferaj:

Kia ajn, Kial ajn, Kiam ajn, Kie ajn, Kiel ajn, Kies ajn, Kio ajn, Kiom ajn, Kiu ajn.

Ekster

tio, el la diritaj vortoj ni povas ankora

ĉiu

aliaj

vortojn, per helpo de gramatikaj fini

ĝoj kaj aliaj

vortoj

ks. "eks.";

ekzemple:

Tia, Ciama, Kiom,

Tiea, Ci-tiea, Tieulo, Tiam do, k.t.p. (kaj tiel plu).
EXERCISES.

Kiam — when, at what time. Kie — where, at what place. Kid—hon, in what manner. A's = whose, of which. Kio = what (thing). Kiom = how much, how many, what amount. Kio = who, which, what one. (4) If we add the letter T, we get the demonstrative words: Tiam = that, that one. Tiel = there, in that place. Tio = that. Tien = that of these. Tien = that of those. Tiam = that of these. Tian = that of those. (5) By adding the letter Ĉ we get general words: Ĉia = each, every, every kind of. Ĉia = for every reason. Gia = always, for all time. Ĉia = every where. Ĉia = in every way. Ĉia = everyone's, each one's. Ĉio = everything. Ĉion = all, everyone. (6) By adding the prefix NEN- we get negative words: Xenia = no kind of, none. Xeial = for no reason. Xeniām = nowhere. Xeiel = nohow, in no way. Xeiam = nobody, no one. (7) By adding to the demonstrative words the word Ci we obtain a nearer indication; for example: TiCia = that (the one further off). TiCia = this (the nearer one). Xie = there (further off). Xie = there (nearer). TiCia = that (the one further off). Xie = that (nearer). (8) By adding to the interrogative words the word AJN we get the indefinite words (expressions): Kia ajn = whatever (kind). Kia ajn = for whatever cause. Kiam ajn = whenever, Kie ajn = wherever. Kia ajn = whoever, whatever. Kia ajn = whose, of which. Kia ajn = whatever (thing). Kia ajn = whatever (thing). Kia ajn = whatever (thing). Kia ajn = whatever (thing). Kia ajn = whatever (thing). Kia ajn = whatever (thing). Kia ajn = whatever (thing). Kia ajn = whatever (thing)
EXERCISES.

(4) Ial ilia urbon, kaj mi ne scias kial
ne povos ni (kiu) ali dumi, ke li foriris la urbon pro
malsano. (5) Gis kie aliaj ne rondilos! Mi gis en
viltos ne. (6) Ali kiel tiu, ank rarely
kunigis. (7) Ni ne povos rimas mi vidi! (8) Mi
venis de la urbo
nuraj. (9) Kion li diris, ke li foriris la urbon pro
malsano. (10) Mi malsamas
alii, al kiuj li aparatzis. (11) Kion oni kien en la
kuchuro? (12) Ali kun zii tiu (kiu ne kune
zii). (13) Kion diris tiu homaro? (14) Li estas la
plej bono. (15) Ciam
pripensu, antaŭ ol vi parolas. (16) Kial
kiaj diversaj tiuj. (17) Cia aĝo havas siajn
devojn. (18) Mi ne konis iun (ait, mi konis
neniun). (19) El iuj miaj amikoj, li estas la
plej intima. (20) Kian carman leteron vi estas skribinta! (21)
Kia homo estas tiu, kiu rajdas sur la
griza eevalo. (22) Cu vi konis iun en la
ĉambro? (23) Preskaŭ ĉiu amas sin mem.

TRANSLATION 11.

(1) Any (some) kind of pen will do (suffice). (2) Anyone
(everyone) would help such a man. (3) That woman is
not the (that) kind of woman (that) I esteem. (4) For
some reason he left Berlin, and I don't know exactly
why; someone (or, a certain person, or, someone
said that he left the city on account of an illness. (5) Where
is my handkerchief? I do not see it anywhere (somewhere).
(6) It lies there, under that sofa. (7) When will you come
to visit me? (8) I will come to you some time
to-morrow. (9) Whose house is that? (10) I never heard
to whom it belongs. (11) Did you know anyone (someone)
in the room? (12) I did not know anyone (or, I knew no one).
(13) Of all my friends, he is the most intimate. (14) What a
charming letter you have written! (15) What sort of man is
that who is riding on the grey horse? (16) I do not know, I
never saw him before. (17) How many horses have you? (18)
I have not so many as I had three months ago. (19) Every
age has its duties. (20) For every reason (all reasons) that is
the best. (21) Everyone's idea is different. (22) Nearly everyone
loves himself.
EXERCISE 12

Prepositions and Indications of Direction (see para. 67, 249—261).

1. All prepositions by themselves always require the nominative only.

2. If after a preposition, one uses the accusative, the preposition then (the idea being) depends not on the nominative but on other reasons.

3. For example: In order to express direction we add to the word the termination N as follows: tie—"in that place", ti en "to that place" (thither); thus in the same way we also say: "The bird flew into the garden, upon the table," and the words "garden," "table," meant here in their respective, not in the preposition, as, and "tie," express thither, not only to arrive.
we wished to express direction, that is, to show that the bird was not (that its self) previously in the garden or on the table and flew (about) there, but that it flew from some other place to the garden, to the table (we wish to show that the garden and table were not the place of the flying, but only the destination of the flying). in such cases we should use the termination N all the same whether any preposition were there (should stand) or not. (4) To-morrow I shall travel to Paris (or, into Paris). (5) I shall remain to-day at home. (6) It is already time to go home. (7) We separated and went in different directions; I went to the right and he went to the left. (8) To one side, Sir!

EXERCISE 13.

Prepositions and Accusative of Direction—continued (see paras. 243—244).

(1) Kie vi estas? (2) Mi estas en la ĉelevajo, sel mi eniras en la livradoj. (3) Kie vi iras? (4) Mi iras en la ĉelevajo. (5) La birdo fiugas en la ĉambro (ĝi estas en la ĉambro kaj flugadas en ĝi). (6) La birdo fiugas en la ĉambro (ĝi estis ekster la ĉambro kaj fiugas nun en ĝi). (7) En el la ĉelevajo la ĉelevajo kiel la ĉelevajo, kaj eniras el la ĉelevajo, li kiel ĝi eniras kaj ni estas en el la ĉelevajo, kaj ni estas en ĉelevajo, kaj ĉelevajo."
EXERCISES.

TRANSLATION 13.

(1) Where are you? (2) I am in the stable, but I am about to go into the cowshed. (3) Where are you going? (4) I am going into the church. (5) The bird flies in the room (it is in the room and is flying in it). (6) The bird flies into the room (it was outside the room, and now flies into it). (7) Out from under the sofa the mouse ran under the bed, and whilst it was running about under the bed the cat seized it. (8) Instead of coffee the waiter gave me tea with sugar, but without cream, therefore I ordered him to bring cream, and when he brought it, I put into the cup of tea one lump of sugar, then I poured into the cup of tea out of the cream-jug. (9) I put my blindfold on the table. (10) In the drawing-room was nobody except him and his fiancée. (11) The swallow flew across the river, because across the river were other swallows. (12) When he was at my house he stood for a whole hour near the window. (13) They went to Paris.

EXERCISE 14.

Prepositions—continued (see paras. 229–241).

EXERCISES.

TRANSLATION U.

(1) They rejoiced at our misfortunes. (2) Kindly be willing to show me the bedroom. (3) It is only a tailor who can make himself a coat. (4) We entered a cell before returning to the hotel. (5) The waiter put before me a plate, spoon, and knife. (6) Instead of playing cards, he learnt Esperanto. (7) I stood near the door whilst he conversed with his friend. (8) The professor of (at) the school spoke in his own language. (9) He followed me at a distance of about three paces. (10) We entered a cafe before returning to the hotel. (11) He stayed with us from Sunday to Thursday. (12) We entered a cafe before returning to the hotel. (13) We entered a cafe before returning to the hotel. (14) During the day, he travelled about in Italy. (15) The greyhound was outside the house. (16) This is the largest of all the trees in the garden. (17) Do not be surprised at how I express my ideas. (18) Besides Esperanto, I speak the English language. (19) She was good, and besides that, a very beautiful young lady.

EXERCISE 15.

Prepositions—continued (see pages 248—261).

(1) Li via ducti kun Frliniku Berta, por kiam li estis parol in tit kun sia patro. (2) Mi restadas tie el la konsilo de mia kuracisto. (3) Malgra mia konsilo, li eliris la urbon per flanka vojeto. (4) La domo konstruita de mia onklo estas kovrita per ardeo. (5) Ekzistas tempo por cielo. (6) Ni invitas ĉiujn vilii por ni. (7) Per la fenestro de la domo, ni invitas ĉiujn vilii por ni. (8) Ni invitas ĉiujn vilii por ni. (9) Tago pres de la fenestro de la domo. (10) Li invitas ĉiujn vilii por ni. (11) Li invitas ĉiujn vilii por ni. (12) Ne nomos pres de la fenestro de la domo. (13) Ni invitas ĉiujn vilii por ni. (14) Ŝi invitas ĉiujn vilii por ni.
EXERCISES.

15. He became engaged (was affianced) to (with) Miss Bertha after he had spoken to (with) her father. (2) I am remaining here by (according to) the advice of my doctor. (3) In spite of my advice, he left the city by a by-path. (4) The house built by my uncle has been covered with slates. (5) There is a time for everything. (6) We invite all to see for themselves. (7) At this price I bought for the children a toy table. (8) I am going to sail a quarter of an hour. (9) Day by (after) day we went by (past) the windows of the house. (10) They followed one after the other. (11) He asked her why (because of what) she cried (cries). (12) Do not sigh for (about, concerning) your lost happiness; do not think of (about) it. (13) Without you, we are as without a head. (14) In spite of my protestations, and in spite of everything I could say, he went away. (15) The dog ran under the table to (in order to) seize the cat, but the cat ran away, and the dog killed it under the sofa. (16) The bird that sat on the tree flew on to the roof of the house. (17) He threw a stone over the wall. (18) He went through the wood, and then passed across the bridge.

TRANSLATION 15.

(1) He became engaged (was affianced) to (with) Miss Bertha after he had spoken to (with) her father. (2) I am remaining here by (according to) the advice of my doctor. (3) In spite of my advice, he left the city by a by-path. (4) The house built by my uncle has been covered with slates. (5) There is a time for everything. (6) We invite all to see for themselves. (7) At this price I bought for the children a tiny table. (8) I must start in (after) a quarter of an hour. (9) Day by (after) day we went by (past) the windows of the house. (10) They followed one after the other. (11) He asked her why (because of what) she cried (cries). (12) Do not sigh for (about, concerning) your lost happiness; do not think of (about) it. (13) Without you, we are as without a head. (14) In spite of my protestations, and in spite of everything I could say, he went away. (15) The dog ran under the table to (in order to) seize the cat, but the cat ran away, and the dog killed it under the sofa. (16) The bird that sat on the tree flew on to the roof of the house. (17) He threw a stone over the wall. (18) He went through the wood, and then passed across the bridge.

EXERCISE 16.

Preposition "je" and the Accusative (see paras. 65—69, 251, 256).

(1) Se ni bezonas lai prepozicii kaj la senco ne montras al ni, kian prepozicion uzi, tiam ni povas uzi la komunan prepozicion "je."
EXERCISES.

udidi la vorton "je" kiu ebila pli malofte. (3)
Ametindu la vorton "je" ni povas arkihi ne akuzativa sen prepozicio. (4)
Je la lasta fojo (aŭ, la lastan fojon) ni nefeli lin (aŭ ni).
Mi vetus du tagojn kaj unu nokton. (7)
Mi sopiras je mia perdita felieo (au, mian perditan folion). (8)
El la dirita regulo sekvas, ke se ni pri ia verbo ne scias, (aŭ ĝi postulas post si la akuzativon (t.e., ĝi estas aktiva) aŭ ne, ni povas ĝian mai la akuzativon. (9)
Ekzemple, ni povas diri, "obidi al la poter," kaj "obidi la poteron" (anomata "obidi la poten"). (10)

TRANSLATION 16.

(1) If we need to use a preposition, and the sense does not show (to) us what preposition to use, then we can use the general common preposition "je." (2) But it is well to use the word "je" as seldom as possible. (3) Instead of the word "je," we can also use an accusative without a preposition. (4) I laugh at his simplicity (or, I laugh because of his simplicity, or, I deride his simplicity). (5) On the last occasion (or, last time) I saw him with you. (6) I travelled two days and one night. (7) I sigh for (I bemoan) my lost happiness. (8) From the said rule (it) follows that if we, concerning any verb, do not know whether it requires after it the accusative (i.e., whether it is active) or not, we can always use the accusative. (9) For example, we can say, "to obey to the father," and, "to obey the father" (instead of "to obey /" the father"). (10) But we do not use the accusative (then) when the clearness of the sense forbids this; for example, we can say "to pardon to the enemy," and, "to pardon the enemy," but we must always say, "to pardon the enemy his offence."
EXERCISES.

Participles, Substantival, Adjectival, Adverbial (see paras. 313—318).


* Instructore = An occasional teacher. Institute = A teacher by profession.

TRANSLATION 17.

(1) If the pupil knew (should know) his lesson well, the teacher would not punish him. (2) Flowing water is purer than stagnant water. (3) When Nicodemus beats Joseph, then Nicodemus is the beater (beating one) and Joseph the beaten. (4) God easily pardons a person sinning unintentionally. (5) Having found an apple, I ate it. (6) The fallen man could not raise himself. (7) Do not reproach your friend, for you much more merit reproach; he is only a one-time liar, while you are always a liar now. (8) Time passed will never return; the times coming never will be known. (9) Come, we await Cain (Will), Savior of the world! (10) In the language Esperanto we see the existing language of the whole world. (11) A drink is my most beloved child. (12) A taken thing is more valuable than a thing taken. (13) A captured bird is better than a stolen thing. (14) The soldiers led the arrested men through the streets. (15) He came to me not at all waiting for me.

1 * Instructore = An occasional teacher. * Institute = A teacher by profession.
EXERCISES.

Every evening; somewhere to come no one yet knows. (9)

Come, we await Thee (You), Saviour of the world! (10)

In the language Esperanto we see the future language of the whole world. (11)

Augustus is my best loved son. (12)

Money in hand (being had) is more important than that once had (than having been had). (13)

A sparrow caught is better than an eagle about to be caught. (14)

The soldiers led the prisoners through the streets. (15)

He came to me quite unexpectedly.

EXERCISE 18.

Numerals and Suffixes -0BL-, -ON-, -OP- (see paras. 115—124, 284).

(1) Mi havas cent pomojn. (2) Mi havas centon da pomoj. (3) Tiuj ĉi urbo havas milionon da loĝantoj. (4) Mi aĉetis dek du oranĝojn. (5) Mi aĉetis dekduon da kuleroj kaj du dekduojn da forkoj. (6) Mil jaroj (en, niilo da jaroj) faras miljaron. (7) Unue, mi redonas al vi la monon, kiun vi pruntis al mi; due, mi dankas vin por la prunto; trie, mi petas vin ankaŭ poste prunti al mi, kiam mi bezonas monon. (8) Por tiu tago mi ricevas kvin frankojn, sed por la hodiaŭa tago mi ricevas duoblan pagon, t.e. (tio estas), dek frankoj. (9) Kvarmetroj da tiu ĉi ŝtupo kostas naŭ frankoj; tial du metroj kostas kvar kaj duonon frankojn (en, da frankoj). (10) Unu tago estas tricent-sešdek-kvinono, aŭ tricent-sesdek-sesono, de jaro. (11) Tiuj ĉi du amikoj promenas ĉiam duope. (12) Kvarope ili sin jetis sur min, sed mi venkis ĉiujn kvin atakantojn. (13) Tiu ĉi libro havas sesdek-paĝojn; tial, se mi legos en ĉiu tago po dek kvin paĝoj, mi finos la librojn en kvar tagoj.

761
Translation 18.

(1) I have a hundred apples. (2) I have a hundred of apples. (3) This town has a million (of) inhabitants. (4) I bought twelve oranges. (5) I bought a dozen (of) spoons and two dozen (of) forks. (6) A thousand years (or, a thousand of years) makes a millennium. (7) Firstly, I give back to you the money which you lent (to) me; secondly, I thank you for the loan; thirdly, I beg you also afterwards to lend to me when I (shall) need money. (8) For each day I receive five francs, but for this (to-day's) day I received double pay, i.e. (that is), ten francs. (9) Five times (five-fold) seven is thirty-five. (10) Three is (the) half of six. (11) Eight is four-fifths of ten. (12) Four metres of this stuff cost nine francs; therefore two metres cost four and a half francs (or, of francs). (13) One day is a 365th or 366th of a year. (14) These two friends always walk out two together (by twos). (15) Five together (by fives) they threw themselves upon me, but I vanquished all five assailants. (16) For my four children I bought twelve apples, and to each of the children I gave at the rate of three apples. (17) This book has sixty pages; therefore if I (shall) read (in) each day at the rate of fifteen pages, I shall finish the whole book in four days. (18) What time (hour) is it? Three o'clock (the third). (19) At what time does the train start for Berlin? (20) At three quarters of the third (hour) (or, at the second and three quarters) (or, two forty-five). (21) What is the date (what date have we to-day)? (22) To-day is the 27th of March. (23) How much does this cost? Nine francs (or, it costs nine francs). (24) How much is the weight of that box? Forty pounds.

1 Accusative, governed by the verb costas in the question.
2 Nominative, because who does costas govern anafron (see para. 66 (a)).
EXERCISE 19.

Suffices -AC-, -AD- and Prefix EK- (see paras. 276, 288).


TRANSLATION 19.

(1) In the course (duration) of some minutes I heard two shots. (2) The fusillade (shooting) continued very long. (3) I started (jumped suddenly) with surprise. (4) I jump very cleverly. (5) I was jumping all day from place to place. (6) His yesterday's speech was very fine, but (the) too much speaking fatigues him. (7) When you began to speak, we expected to hear something new, but soon we saw that we were mistaken. (8) He sings a very fine song. (9) Singing is an agreeable occupation. (10) The diamond has a beautiful brilliancy. (11) Two flashes of lightning ran through the dark sky. (12) The words "hearing, smelling, tasting, thinking," etc., express our faculties; but when we use such words without the suffix -ADO, then they express isolated acts of such faculties. (13) Fancy the hag dancing before me!
EXERCISES.

EXERCISE 20.

Suffixes -A, -EC- (see para. 271).

(1) Vi parolas senonca, mia amiko.

(2) Mi trinkis teon kun kuko kaj konfita ŝoko.

(3) Akvo estas fluidajo.

(4) Mi ne volis trinki la vinon, tio ĝi enhavis en si ian suspektan malklaron.

(5) Sur la tablo staris diversaj sukera ŝoj.

(6) En tiuj boteloj sin trovas diversaj acidoj, vinagro, sulfura-cido, azotacido, kaj aliaj.

(7) Via vino estas nur ia abomena acido. (5) Mi manis bongustan oveton.

(8) La alteco de tiu monto ne estas tre granda. (12) Kiam mi ien veturas, mi neniam prenas kun mi multon da alio.

(9) Glaciajo estas dol glaciigita frazdo.

(10) Mi ne volus trinki vinon, car ĝi enhavis en si ian suspektan malklaron.

(11) La alteco de tiu monto ne estas tre granda. (12) Kiam mi ien veturas, mi neniam prenas kun mi multon da alio.

(13) Cemizojn, kolumojn, manumojn, kaj ceteraj similaj objektoj ni nomas tolo. (14) Glaciajo estas dol glaciigita frazdo.

(15) La heroeco de tiu ĝi homo estas granda, se ĝia malklino estas ankoraŭ pli granda.

(16) Li amas tiun ĝi knabion pro sia beleco kaj boneco. (17) Lia heroeco plaĉas al mi. (18) La tuta suprajo de la lago estis kovrita per naĝantaj folioj kaj diversaj aliaj kreskadoj.

(19) Mi vivas kun li en granda amikeco.

TRANSLATION 20.

(1) You speak (a piece of) nonsense, my friend. (2) I drank tea, with cake and preserve (jam).

(3) Water is a fluid (thing).

(4) I would not drink the wine because it contained in it some suspicious muddiness.

(5) Upon the table stood various sweetmeats.

(6) In these phials are various acids, vinegar, sulphuric acid, nitric acid, and others.

(7) Your wine is only some abominable sour stuff.

(8) The acidity of this vinegar is very weak.

(9) I ate a savoury (good-tasted) omelette.

(10) This great height (eminence) is not a natural mountain.

(11) The height of that mountain is not very great.

(12) When I travel anywhere, I never take with me much luggage.

(13) Shirts, collars, cuffs, and other similar objects we call linen, although they are not always made of linen.

(14) Glaciers are dol (frozen) rivers.

(15) The heroism of this man is greater, if his miscalculation is even greater.

(16) He loves this girl because of her beauty and virtue.

(17) His heroism pleases me.

(18) The whole surface of the lake was covered with floating plants and other aquatic plants.

(19) I live with him in great friendship.

(20) When I travel anywhere, I never take with me much baggage.

(21) Shirts, collars, cuffs, and other similar articles we call linen, although they are not always made of linen.
made out of hot-cloth. (14) An ice is a sweet frozen dainty.
(15) The wealth of this person is great, but his foolishness is still greater. (16) He loves this girl for her beauty and goodness. (17) His heroism pleases me. (18) The entire surface of the lake was covered with floating leaves and various other growths. (19) I live with him in great amity.

**EXERCISE 21.**

**Suffixes -AN-, -ESTR-, -1ST-, -UL-** (see para. 272).

EXERCISES.

21. 

(1) He who occupies himself with mechanics is a mechanic, and he who occupies himself with chemistry is a chemist. 
(2) A diplomatic one can also call a 'diplomat', but a physicist cannot call the name of physics, because physics is the science of the physics itself. (3) The photographer photographed me, and I sent my photograph to my father. (4) The dentist drew two of my sister's teeth. (5) The crew must obey the captain. (6) All inhabitants of a state are members of a state. (7) Townspeople are usually more crafty than villagers. (8) The ruler of our land is a good and wise king. (9) The Parisians are a gay people (men). (10) Our provincial governor is wise, not just. (11) Our town has good policemen, but an insufficiently energetic chief constable. (12) Lutherans and Calvinists are Christians. (13) Germans and French, who live in Russia, are residents in Russia (Russian residents), although they are not Russians. (14) He is a civil and simple person. (15) The inhabitants of the same state are fellow-citizens; the inhabitants of one city are fellow-citizens; the professors (confessors) of one religion are co-religionists. (16) The county chief is like a good father to his soldiers. (17) The treasurer makes books and shows, but such a man in England they usually call a pipe maker. (18) The timber merchant sells wood, and the joiner makes tables, chairs, and other wooden articles. (19) A thief no one lets into his house. (20) The courageous seaman was drowned in the sea. (21) An author writes books, and a scribe simply transcribes. (22) We gave various servants, a carpenter, a blacksmith, a confessor, and our houses. (23) The merchant made a large sum of money by him. (24) A second from every ten men a去做。 (25) He is an habitual liar and base fellow.
(1) My writing materials consist of an inkstand, a sand box, some pens, a pencil, and blotting paper. (2) They put before me a table service, which consisted of a plate, spoon, knife, fork, liqueur glass [small glass] for brandy, a glass for wine, and a serviette. (3) On (in) a hot day I love to walk in a wood. (4) Our country will conquer, for our army is large and brave. (5) On a steep ladder he raised himself to the roof of the house. (6) I do not know the Spanish language, but by help of a Spanish-German dictionary I nevertheless understood to some extent your letter. (7) On these vast and richly herbaged fields feed large herds of cattle, especially flocks [collections] of fine-fleeced sheep. (8) A centime, 'a pfennig, and a kopek are monero [monetary] units. (9) A shower of sand fell into my eyes. (10) A centime is sufficient (for) to explode gunpowder.
EXERCISE 23.

Suffixes -CJ-, -XJ-, and -SJO (see paras. 274, 285).

(1) La gepatroj ĉiam nomas Johanon, Johaĉjo (aŭ Jack), kaj Emmanu ĉiam nomas Emkaĉjo (aŭ Edjo).
(2) Vilhelmo nomas sian patruon Mariĉjo (aŭ Mariejo).
(3) Sofi nomas sian amian Simoĉjo (aŭ Simojo).
(4) Mi diris al la reĝo: pardonu min!

TRANSLATION 23.

(1) The parents always call John Johnnie (or Jack), and Ernest they call Ernestie (or Ernest). (2) William calls his sister Polly (or Poll), although she has been christened Mary; and Mary calls her brother Willin (or Will), or Billy, or Bil. (3) Sophie was christened Sophie, but sometimes her brother called her Sophio, and she called him Nick. (4) I said to the King: pardon me, your Majesty! (5) Of the four letters one was addressed to the Right Reverend the Bishop of N.; the second to the Right Honorable the Earl of P.; the third to the Honorable D. (ne. His Honour, or His Worship, etc., IX); the fourth to Mr. G.C. (or, G.C., Esq.).
EXERCISE 24.

Suffixes -EBL-, -EM-, -IND (see para. 275).

(1) La fitalo estas fieksebla, sed la fero ne estas fleksebla. (2) La vitro estas rompebla kaj travidebla. (3) Ne ĉiu kreskajo estas manĝebla. (4) Via parolo estas nekomprenebla kaj viaj leteroj estas nelegible. (5) Rakontu al mi vian malfelon, car eble mi povos helpi al vi. (6) Li rakontis al mi historion tute ne kredeblan. (7) Do vi amas unan patron? Ka demando! Kompreneble, ke mi ne amas! (8) Mi kompreneble ne povus resti al vi hodiaŭ, ĉar mi ne mi havus kelkajn gastojn. (9) Li estas bone ne kreadebla. (10) Via aro estas tute fiktiva. (11) Tiu estu viva lingvon tute ne komprenebla, kaj ni jam ne povus ĝian memordi. (12) Li aŭdine estas tute inkomprenebla, kaj ĝi estas nekredinda kaj nejusma, sed ili estas ne kreadebla kaj nejusma, sed ili estas ne vingamda, kaj ili ne povus tute ne povus tute ne povus tute ne povus tute ne pov...
EXERCISE 25.

Prefixes E0-, I0P<GE-, PE0- (see para 286).
(1) Patro kaj patrino kune estas nomataj gepatroj.
(2) Pctro, Anno, kaj Elizabeto estas miaj gefratoj.
(3) Gesinjoroj Smith bodia ĝuspevere venos al ni. (4) Gratulis telegrafe la junajn geedzojn. (5) La gefian ĝojn staris apud la altaro. (6) La patro de mia edzino estas mia bopatro, mi estas lia bofilo, kaj mia patro estas la bopatro de mia edzino. (7) Ĉar ĝi nenie da mia edzino estas mia bopatro, ĉu havigas ĝin bonevene; ĉu la edzino de mia edzino estas mia bofrato, mia bopatro? (8) La edzino de mia nevo kaj la nevino de mia edzino estas miaj bonevinoj.

Prefixes -EDZ-, -ID-, -IX- (see paras 276, 279, 282).
(13) He is very credulous; even the most incredible things, that the most unbelievable people tell him, he believes at once. (14) He is very cleanly, and even a grain of dust you will not find on his coat.
EXERCISES

(17) In the yard there are a cock and three hens. (19) My father is a good man. (20) I saw your aunt with her four grand-daughters and (with) my niece. (21) His stepmother is my sister-in-law. (22) I have an ox and a cow. (23) The young widow became again engaged (a fiancee). (24) The second husband of my mother is my stepfather, and the baby (female) which was born last week is my half-sister.

TRANSLATION 25.

(1) A father and mother together are called parents.
(2) Peter, Anne, and Elizabeth are my brother and sisters.
(3) Mr. and Mrs. Smith will come to us today (to-day) evening.
(4) The affianced pair stood at the altar.
(5) My wife's father is my father-in-law, I am his son-in-law, and my father is your (his) son.

A baby born to my father-in-law, her sister in my sister-in-law, my brother and sister (gebruder and -schester) are the child and sister of my wife. My employer's son is my wife's brother; the wife of a brother is a (half-)sister-in-law. The Jews are Israelites, for they descend from Israel. A foal is an immature horse; a chicken, an immature fowl; a calf, an immature ox; a fledgeling, an immature bird.

My sons and daughters, my grandsons and grand-daughters, my great-grandsons and great-granddaughters, are my great-grandchildren. My (step)mother is my mother; the grandmother of my children.
EXERCISE 26.

1. I bought for the children a tiny table and some tiny chairs.
2. In our country we do not find mountains, but only hills. (2) Immediately after the heating, the stove was hot, after an hour it was only warm, after two hours it was only just warm, and after three hours it was already quite cold.
3. The arrow was a very simple device, and the plume upon it was a very large one.
4. The horse broke through the hedge, and the carriage drove into the courtyard.
5. This was no longer a simple shower, but a downpour (deluge).
6. Before our army stood a great line of cannon.

TRANSLATION 26.

1. I bought for the children tiny tables and some tiny chairs.
2. In our country we do not find mountains, but only hills. (2) Immediately after the heating, the stove was hot, after an hour it was only warm, after two hours it was only just warm, and after three hours it was already quite cold.
3. The arrow was a very simple device, and the plume upon it was a very large one.
4. The horse broke through the hedge, and the carriage drove into the courtyard.
5. This was no longer a simple shower, but a downpour (deluge).
6. Before our army stood a great line of cannon.
EXERCISE 27.

Suffixes -A'./-ING, -UJ- (see para. 278).

(1) La domo, en kiu oni lernas, estas lernejo, kaj la domo, en kiu oni preĝas, estas preĝejo. (2) Lakuiristo sidas en la kuirejo. (3) La kuracisto konsilis al mi iri en ĝiirbanojn. (4) Magazeno, en kiu oni vendas cigarojn, aŭ ambro, en kiu oni tenas cigarojn, estas cigarejo; skatoleto, en kiu oni tenas cigarojn, estas cigarejo; tubeto, en kiun oni metas cigaron, kiam oni ĝin fumas, estas cigaringo. (5) Skatolo, en kiu oni tenas plumojn, estas plumujo, kaj bastoneto, sur kiu oni tenas plumon por skribado, estas plumingo. (6) En la kandelingo sidis brulanta kandelo. (7) En la poko de mia pantalono mi portas monon, kaj en la poko de mia surtuto mi portas metaledon; pli grandon mi portas sub la brako. (8) La rusoj loĝas en Rusujo, kaj la germanoj en Germanoj.

TRANSLATION 27.

(1) The house in which one learns is a school, and the house in which one prays is a church. (2) The cook is (sits) in the kitchen. (3) The doctor advised me to go into a Turkish (sweat, vapour) bath. (4) A shop (warehouse, store) in which cigars are sold (they sell cigars), or a room in which cigars are kept, is a cigar shop (store); a small box or other thing into which cigars are put (the imagery) is a cigar case; a little tube into which one puts a cigar when one smokes it is a cigar holder. (5) A box in which one keeps pens is a pen-box, and the little stick on which one has (keeps) a pen for writing is a penholder. (6) In the candlestick was (sat) a burning candle. (7) In my trousers' pocket I carry a purse, and in my overcoat pocket I carry a writing portfolio; a larger portfolio I carry under my arm. (8) The russians live in Russia, and (the) Germans in Germany.
EXERCISE 28.

EXERCISE 28.

EXERCISE 28.

EXERCISE 28.

EXERCISE 28.

EXERCISE 28.

EXERCISE 28.

EXERCISE 28.

EXERCISE 28.

EXERCISE 28.

EXERCISE 28.

EXERCISE 28.

EXERCISE 28.

EXERCISE 28.

EXERCISE 28.

EXERCISE 28.

EXERCISE 28.

EXERCISE 28.

EXERCISE 28.

TRANSLATION 23.

(1) In the muddy weather my coat became very dirty; therefore I took a brush and cleaned the coat. (2) He became (or grew) pale with (from) fear and afterwards he blushed (reddened) with shame. (3) He became engaged to (with) Miss Bertha; in (after) three months will be the marriage; the wedding ceremony will be in the new church, and the marriage festival will be in the house of his future parents-in-law. (4) This old man became quite foolish and childish. (5) After an infectious disease they often burn the clothes of the sick child. (6) Evoke your brother, because he will help us. (7) She married him with (to) her cousin, although her parents wanted to marry her to another person. (8) In the spring the glacier and the snow melt. (9) Replace the doctor, because I am sick. (10) He brought from Berlin many books. (11) My uncle did not die from natural causes, but he nevertheless was killed by no one. One day, while walking near the railroad, he fell under the wheels of a passing train, and died. (12) I did not hang my chicken on this pole; but the wind blew off my head the chicken, and, flapping, it hung itself on the branches of the tree.

TRANSLATION 23.

(1) In the muddy weather my coat became very dirty; therefore I took a brush and cleaned the coat. (2) He became (or grew) pale with (from) fear and afterwards he blushed (reddened) with shame. (3) He became engaged to (with) Miss Bertha; in (after) three months will be the marriage; the wedding ceremony will be in the new church, and the marriage festival will be in the house of his future parents-in-law. (4) This old man became quite foolish and childish. (5) After an infectious disease they often burn the clothes of the sick child. (6) Evoke your brother, because he will help us. (7) She married him with (to) her cousin, although her parents wanted to marry her to another person. (8) In the spring the glacier and the snow melt. (9) Replace the doctor, because I am sick. (10) He brought from Berlin many books. (11) My uncle did not die from natural causes, but he nevertheless was killed by no one. One day, while walking near the railroad, he fell under the wheels of a passing train, and died. (12) I did not hang my chicken on this pole; but the wind blew off my head the chicken, and, flapping, it hung itself on the branches of the tree.
EXERCISES.

(1) The man entered in her room, although he pretended to carry her to (with) another person, for the sake of covering (a) her up and like some such. (2) Send for (fetch, lit., cause to come) the doctor, for I am ill. (3) He obtained (persuaded to come, to buy) many books from (out of) Berlin. (4) My uncle did not die (by) a natural death, but he nevertheless did not kill himself, and also was killed by (by) no one; one day, walking by the rails of a railway, he tell under the wheels of a travelling train and was killed. (5) I did hang my cap on this shrub; but the wind blew away the cap from my head, and it, in flying, got hung up on the branches of the shrub. (6) He obtained (caused to come to him) many books from (out of) Rerlin. (7) She was married to her cousin, although her parents wished to marry her to (with) another person. (8) In the spring (the) ice and (the) snow melt. (9) Send away your brother, because he hinders us. (10) She was married to (with) another person, although her parents wished to marry her to (with) another person. (11) My uncle did not die (by) a natural death, but he nevertheless did not kill himself, and also was killed by (by) no one; one day, walking by the rails of a railway, he tell under the wheels of a travelling train and was killed. (12) He obtained (caused to come to him) many books from (out of) Rerlin. (13) Seat yourself (or, be seated), Sir! (14) He obtained (caused to come to him) many books from (out of) Rerlin. (15) The young man joined (lit., became to) our army, and courageously fought together with us against our enemies.

EXERCISE 29.

Suffix -IL-

(1) La tranĉilo estis tiel malakra, ke mi ne povis tranĉi per ĝi la vundo, kaj mi devis uzi mian poŝtranĉilon. (2) Ĉi tiu havas korktirilon, por malŝtopi la botelon. (3) Mi volis ŝlosi la porton, sed mi perdis la ŝlosilon. (4) Si kombas al si la (or, ĝia) harojn per arĝanta kombilo. (5) En soinero ni veturas per diversaj veturiloj, kaj en vintro ni veturas per glitveturilo. (6) Hodiaŭ estas bela frosta vetero, tial mi prenas miajn glitilojn kaj iros gliti. (7) Per hakilo ni hakas, per segilo ni segas, per fosilo ni fosas, per kudrilo ni kudras, per tondilo ni tondas, per sonorilo ni sonoras, per fajfilo ni fajfas. (8) Plumo estas skribilo, kaj inksorbilo estas mola papero, kion oni uzas por sorbi la dekstra inkon.

TRANSLATION 29.

(1) The knife was so blunt that I could not cut the meat with it, and I had to use my pocket knife. (2) Have you a corkscrew to open (unstop) the bottle? (3) I wanted to lock the door, but I had lost the key. (4) She combs (to herself) her (the) hair with a silver comb. (5) In summer we travel by different means of transport, and in winter we travel by glider.
EXERCISE 165.

travel by various vehicles, and in winter we travel by a
sledge. (6) To-day is fine, frosty weather, therefore I shall
take my skates and go skating (to skate). (7) With a hatchet
we chop, with a saw we saw, with a spade we dig, with
a needle we sew, with scissors we clip, with a bell we ring,
and with a fife we fife (whistle). (8) A pen is a writing
implement, and blotting paper is soft paper which we use to
absorb or dry the ink.

EXERCISE 30.


(1) Malfermi la fenestron por aeri la ambron.
(2) Ĉiuj hundoj en nia urbo devas porti buŝumojn.
(3) Ĉi uzi havas butonurailon por butonu miajn botojn?
(4) La lavistino lavis miajn kolumojn kaj manumojn.
(5) Li aĉetis nazumon.
(6) Ŝi portadas ventumilon, per kion ŝi ventumas sin.
(7) Vi ne buŝumis ( estas buŝuminta) vian hundon.
(8) G-ŭstu tiun ĝian alian, kaj diru ĝi estas bona ali.

TRANSLATION 30.

(1) Open the window to air the room. (2) All dogs in our
town have to wear muzzles. (3) Have you a button-hook to
butt my boots? (4) The washerwoman washed my collars
and cuffs. (5) He bought a pince-nez. (6) She carries
about a fan, with which she keeps fanning herself. (7) You
have not muzzled your dog. (8) Taste this meat, and tell me
whether it be good or not. (9) The heels of your boots are
too high. (10) They allotted me twelve shares in the new
company. (11) I could not fulfil my engagements for I had
so many other matters to settle. (12) The soft roe of a
herring is a tasty morsel (thing).
EXERCISES.

EXERCISE 31.

Prefixes DE-, DIS-, FOR- (see para. 287).

(1) Malfortune often unites men, and happiness often separates them. (2) I tore up the letter and threw away its fragments into all corners of the room. (3) The prefixes DE-, DIS-, and FOR- all denote some sort of abstraction or separation, for example:—When we beat down the wall and demolished the fort, then the enemy threw down their weapons and fled away. (4) The child upset the inkstand and spilled the ink over my handkerchief. (5) He is a deserter (a runaway), for he did not return to his regiment at the expiration of his leave of absence (permission to be away). (6) He took off his hat when he entered the room. (7) Some mothers wean their infants earlier than others. (8) He scattered the sand on the floor. (9) The maidservant disarranged my books, so that I could not find the one (that which) I wanted.

TRANSLATION 31.

(1) Misfortune often unites men, and happiness often separates them. (2) I tore up the letter and threw away its fragments into all corners of the room. (3) The prefixes DE-, DIS-, and FOR- all denote some sort of abstraction or separation, for example:—When we beat down the wall and demolished the fort, then the enemy threw down their weapons and fled away. (4) The child upset the inkstand and spilled the ink over my handkerchief. (5) He is a deserter (a runaway), for he did not return to his regiment at the expiration of his leave of absence (permission to be away). (6) He took off his hat when he entered the room. (7) Some mothers wean their infants earlier than others. (8) He scattered the sand on the floor. (9) The maidservant disarranged my books, so that I could not find the one (that which) I wanted.
EXERCISE 32.

Prefixes EK- and EE- (see parts. 288, 290).

(1) Ni vivis al mi respektu, sed mi ĝin tuj redonis al li. (2) Mi foriris, sed tuj redonis al mi li. (3) La suno rebrilas en la klara akvo de la rivero. (4) Nigro rebrilas en la klara akvo de la rivero. (5) Si ekridas, kaj poste reekbruligas la kandelon. (6) Tuj kiam mi ekdonis, la infano ekdomonis. (7) Li ne povas ŝekipti viun aŭ aŭ pli dure. Ĝi ne povas ŝekipti viun aŭ aŭ pli dure. (8) Tuj kiam mi ekkantis, la infano ekdormis, kaj poste mi redonis ĝin ĝia patrino, mi revenis domen. (9) Mi ne povas akcepti vian afablan inviton, ĉar kiel mi ŝekipti viun aŭ aŭ pli dure. Ĝi ne povas ŝekipti viun aŭ aŭ pli dure. (10) Kiam Johano reprezenti la livrojn, li je tiom ĝis ĝi estas antikvaj, sed mi redonis ĝin ĝi ne estas homilaj titoj, kiel mi ĝin ricevis.

TRANSLATION 32.

(1) He gave money to me, but I immediately gave it back to him. (2) I was going away, but await me, for I shall soon return to you. (3) The sun is reflected in the clear water of the river. (4) It began to replique the rays of light directly they begin to fall on it. (5) When I returned it to the owner, I returned home. (6) I cannot accept your kind invitation, because (an, some kind of) indesirement is keeping me (is retaining me) to (in) my room. (7) A mirror throws back the rays of light directly they begin to fall on it. (8) I was only dirty, but I replied that it was not in a good state then, when I received it.

285
EXERCISE 33.

1. Mia frato ne estas granda, sed li ne estas ankaŭ malgranda; li estas de meza kresko. (2) Li estas tiel dika, ke li ne povas travi tra niu malgranda pordo. (3) Ni havas tiel multa laboro, ke ni neniam povas niĉi el neniu mia mano. (4) Tiu frato estas tiel maldika, ke ni gin kunvenus, kaj mi ne povus tre ĝia devruo malmemec. (5) Ni devos tute ministras ĝian malsakson. (6) Mia frato estas tiel maldika, ke ni ne povus ĝian jubileon samtempe. (7) Ni devus tute ministras ĝian malsakson, kaj ni ne povus ĝian jubileon samtempe. (8) Ni devus tute ministras ĝian malsakson, kaj ni ne povus ĝian jubileon samtempe. (9) Ni devus tute ministras ĝian malsakson, kaj ni ne povus ĝian jubileon samtempe. (10) Ni devus tute ministras ĝian malsakson, kaj ni ne povus ĝian jubileon samtempe.

TRANSLATION 33.

1. My brother is not tall (large), but he is neither too tall (large) nor too short (small); he is of medium growth. (2) He is so stout (sturdy) that he cannot pass through our small door. (3) He is so fat (sturdy) that we have never been able to enter the narrow lane. (4) We have so much work, that we never have the time to meet each other. (5) We have to equip him entirely, and we cannot celebrate his birthday together. (6) We have to equip him entirely, and we cannot celebrate his birthday together. (7) We have to equip him entirely, and we cannot celebrate his birthday together. (8) We have to equip him entirely, and we cannot celebrate his birthday together. (9) We have to equip him entirely, and we cannot celebrate his birthday together. (10) We have to equip him entirely, and we cannot celebrate his birthday together.
EXERCISES.

(1) He is very thin. (2) Did you hear on the radio that we could see nothing even before dawn? (3) This stale bread is hard as a stone. (4) He is so unhappy that he shaved the day in which he was born, and is now dead.

EXERCISES ON SIMILAR WORDS.

The learner will find the following exercises useful in helping him to avoid errors in the meaning of words which are nearly alike in spelling.

EXERCISE 34.

(1) La bruna la karibo, oni ne pensis ke li estas kapabla je tia ago.
(2) Angela vidas angelon en la sitelo apud la angulo de la cambro.
(3) Bariloj sur la stratoj estas faritaj el bareloj plenigitaj per sablo.
(4) La celo helas, kaj la celo de la abeloj, kiam ili flirtadas de floro al floro, estas kolekti mielon.
EXERCISES.

(1) From the boy's age, they did not think him capable of such an act.

(2) An angel saw an eel swimming in a bucket near the corner of the room.

(3) The barriers in the streets are made of barrels filled with sand.

(4) The brooch has been found in a breach of the wall.

(5) One must take off one's cap before entering.

TRANSLATION 2A.

1. From the boy’s age, they did not think him capable of such an act.
2. An angel saw an eel swimming in a bucket near the corner of the room.
3. The barriers in the streets are made of barrels filled with sand.
4. The brooch has been found in a breach of the wall.
5. One must take off one's cap before entering.
EXERCISE.

1. When one enters a chapel, the sky is getting clear and the purpose of the bees, as they flit from flower to flower, is to collect honey to deposit in the cells of the honeycomb. The point of the bees at the bottom of the box, which they found near the wall, was covered in every sun, and, therefore, it might be called a bridge. The pound of tea lay at the bottom of the box, which they found near the icell-spring. The invoice was correct in every item, and, therefore, it might be called not only an invoice, but also a collection of facts. At the banquet a fan of roses was suspended over the table. The gas ignited a piece of gauze. The rank of general is more prevalent in England than in Russia. An upright man is exact in his business, but he is not necessarily a man of taste. A swallow swallows insects, but a leech sucks blood. At 9 o'clock the choir began to sing. The hemp which the boy has, belongs to his father. In my judgment, that yoke is too wide. The Temple of Jupiter at Rome is called the "Capitol." When my friend saw it, he decided to build a mansion of a similar design, with a capital on each column; but he found he had not sufficient capital for such a purpose. Soon afterwards he went to the Colony of Xatal, where he committed suicide by a shot through his temple. "Marguerite" is the name of a flower, but the same word, in Esperanto, also means a person who is licking something, i.e., a "licker." The guide's cheek had been injured by the fall of the avalanche. If the money-box is full, then the verb, therefore, it is in the nominative case. He gave his friend his box at the theatre, and thus induced him to buy the house in which they both lived.

EXERCICE 35.

(1) La mero estas sama, ĉu la nutraĵo estas pano ordinaraja aŭ no. (2) La marŝado de la soldatoj estis tra danĝeroj. (3) Dum La Meso estis solenata, la virino staris en la memrio de amaso da adorantoj; ŝia rano estis subtenita per reto, kies maŝo estis rompita en diversaj lokoj. (4) La mastro de la lomo estas magistro de artoj, kaj ankaŭ majstro en sia profesio. (5) Lia morto okazis pro mordo de hundo. (6) La monarĥo parolis kun homo, kiam mi lin vidis. Venena serpenteto lin mordis, kaj preskaŭ tuj mortis.
EXERCISES.

(8) Muso kaj muso estis en la ĉambro de la poeto, kaj tuj kiam li ilia vidis, poeto inspiro, aŭ muzo, lin ekkaptis. Li spiris rapide, kaj, post profunda enspiro, la muzo kaj muso rememorigis al li la ŝturi filinojn de Zeŭso, kaj tuj kiam li alverkis ĝian gloran poenon, "La Batalo de la Muzoj." (9) "La mosto" estas vinfermentita, kiun tre malsuka ĉorda mate. (10) La homo havanta la muzon, ne akiris, ke ĝi estas malsupra, pro tiu, ke li jam antaŭe povis la muzon da aŭto. (11) La genaro, ke alia ĉevalo povus prenumi la ĉevalon, por ĝi dekstra inspiro, kaj, tie kaj tiam, li ekverkis sian gloran poenon, "La Batalo de la Muzoj." (12) Pastelo estas kreta krajono, aŭ kretkrajona desegno, sed pastelo estas aroma konso karba, kiu eldonas agrablan odoron, kiam oni ĝin ekbruligas. (13) Estis paco en la domo, tuj kiam la peco da ligno estis kovrita per peco. (14) La dekstra pedalo de la fortepiano, kiu apartenis al la pedelo, estis rompita. (15) La kesto peze pli, ol la negocisto supozis, car kiam ĝi estis metita sur la pesilo, kaj lia servisto ĝiri pestos, oni trovis, ke ĝi ne estas sufiĉe peza por ĝin pesi. (16) Li pasis antaŭ en, kaj pasis tra la pordo. (17) Tuj kiam la piŝlo ekmovis, la lokomotivo ekiris, kaj ĝiaj radoj pistis tonon kiel ĝi antaŭe sur la relo; kaj, nomata "ralo," ekstrimit je la bruo, flugis trans la fervojon. (18) Li desegnis dispelon sur la posto de poŝtkarto, kiun li sendis al Parizo per la poŝto. (19) Li penis disrompi la snoon per la mano, sed malsukcess; poste li provis, kaj provis, ke ĝi povas subteni pezilon da kvarcent funtoj. (20) La pulvo estas pulvoro uzata por pafiloj, sed ĝiaj grajnoj ne estas tiel delikataj, kiel tiuj de polvo; alivorte, pulvoro estas pli maldelikata (or, pli maldelikata) ol polvo. (21) La ĉipeto el la florburono de la prunaro, sed la buronoj estas kelkfoje detruitaj de la prujno. (22) Lia vesto estis subfoita per pello, kaj ankaŭ tiel varma, ke pello ne estis necesa.
TRANSLATION 35.

(i) The act of mastication is the same, whether the food is ordinary bread or unleavened bread. (ii) The march of the soldiers was through a dangerous swamp. (iii) Whilst Mass was being celebrated, the woman stood in the midst of a crowd of worshippers; her net, of which had been broken in various places. (iv) His death occurred through a bite from a dog. (v) The monarch was conversing with a monk when I saw him; a venomous snake bit him, and he died almost immediately. (vi) The master of the house is a master of arts, and also a master in his profession. (vii) The man playing the organ did not know it was out of tune, for he had lost the organ of hearing. (viii) The general, who issued the order, wore the order of the Star of India. (ix) There was peace in the house as soon as the piece of wood had been covered with pitch. (x) The right pedal of the piano, which belonged to the beadle, was broken. (xi) There was no record that the merchant supposed; for when it was placed on the scales, and his servant weighed it, it was found that a 56 lb. weight was not sufficiently weighty to weigh it. (xii) As soon as the piston began to move, the locomotive started, and its wheels crushed a stone lying on the rail; a bird called a "rail" was startled at the noise, and flew over the railway. (xiii) He tried to break the cord with his hand, but failed; then he tested it, and proved that it could sustain a weight of 400 lbs. (xiv) Gunpowder is powder used for guns, but its grains are not so fine as those of flour; it is used in the manufacture of gunpowder. (xv) The plum is formed from the blossom of the plum-tree; but the buds are sometimes destroyed by hoar frost.
EXERCISE 36.

(1) S'i s'arrêtait sur la plage, la poutre de sa robe flottait en l'air. (2) La puce étoffe et la karmanière planaient le vent et la mousquet, je la pied de la montagne, en souriant au dernier. (3) La promenade en la boîte, la jeune table du rire ; allégement la contrainte berce, li renvoie la mémoire, si matin la sentence (on, souhait la sentence même) en la heureuse la trier heureux. (4) La matière rose est aniomée sur la morce, kia de la ruse, par cette rose, venons la mal-animée. (5) La rivière ajoutait en l'air, la rose de fable entre les rangs, la la ruse, kia on eut masqué en France. (6) La rivière est d'opinion per rose. (7) Moine qui repère cette rue, kia le pâle, kia li repère, est de l'opinion (ou, personne régulier). La repartie de l'opinion repère la bienveillance, en l'air les repères. (8) Kien mi viola la fausse, la ligne romane, kia la, de la santé romane. (9) La rose de la créme, kia estait grand la fleur qui, dit une oeil la ciel, kia estait matin la boîte. (10) Li ekaterinak kia voyait, en voyant, li renvoi en l'air voyait ; tien vrai, li ekaterinak. "Du ne vera dormir, ad où d'ici acte nur ros ?" (11) Si ni admetten agen son palais, si ne montrait main moyen, far la triste son la face est en assombris. (12) La bien décoré la hauteur qui par orai du grand, parce il forgettait min pouet, acte sur la sombre, kia cesse abyme kia en utile. (13) Kien ni fame la maladie de la garde, ni passivement aprèa (ou, ser) la mort qui kia voler brutale. (14) La maladie bien estouflent kia ce voir d'ici mangi, kwaakaen li tra maladie, li voit l'opinion quand vois, kia li tra ficel, kia à la encore balade être. (15) Pensez donc en la volière de la sable bracelets la demain de la faveur. (16) Kofferzakel tu devine abominable, he vi arther scénographie en partie de foison ! (17) Como el país était traversé en la mule de la Toscane. (18) La chance ne avait bonne régale, kia le pâle étaient (ou, traversée) en
EXERCISES.

19) La stipo estas arbeto, sed mallonga, dikaj pri la tretoj estas tre varma. (20) "Stofo" estas la nomo de rusa mezurilo, sed, se ni volas skribi pri la stofo el kiu oni faras veston aŭ robon, ni metas signon super la unuan leteron, kiu aliigas la el-piroladon. (21) Peco da stupo ku ŝis sur la malsupra ŝtupo de la ŝtuparo. (22) Estis tablo en la mezo de la cambro, kaj sur ĝi estis telero, sur kiu ku ŝis telero kune kun aliaj moneroj; tabido pendis sur la muro, sur kiu estis plena tabulo de kvarterikostoj. (23) La turdo estas pli malgranda birdo, ol la turto. (24) Li tvis, kiam oni tuŝis lian tra ĉion. (25) Li surmetis la reston kaj poste la reston.

TRANSLATION 36.

1) She stood on the bridge, and the lace of her gown fluttered in the wind. (2) The matter flowed from the carbuncle when the doctor cut it, but the patient, on the impulse of the moment, could not help crying out. (3) He took the oar out of the boat and paddled (rowed leisurely) across the river; after reaching the opposite bank, he put back the oar into the boat and went home. (4) The morning dew was still on the rose, when the Russian, by a clever stratagem, overpowered the enemy. (5) In my opinion, the kidney of a sheep is more tasty than the frog, which is eaten in France. (6) The rat was caught with a net. (7) The man who reigns is a King, and the people he governs are his subjects (or persons being governed). The Governor of a Colony, governs the Colony, but does not reign. (8) When I saw the Roman, he was reading a romance, and his wife was singing a romance (song). (9) The robbery of the ruby, which was as big as a black currant, occurred near the spot where the rubbish had been put. (10) He fell asleep and dreamed, but, after awakening, he mused over his dream; then suddenly he cried out, "Was I really asleep, or was it only a waking dream?" (11) If we bought an arrow without a bow, we should not show our wisdom, for the one without the other would be useless. (12) The man loaded the wagon with sacks of corn, then he loaded his gun, jumped on to the sacks, and played chess with his friend. (13) When we finished the weeding of the garden, we walked near the seashore and saw a shark. (14) He disliked the (that kind of) food and could not eat it, although he was

293
very hungry; so he ordered a roast chicken, which he much appreciated, and his hunger was soon satiated.

A piece of oak in the lining of the saddle caused an inflammation on the horse's back. Of course you are joking when you say you are looking for a needle in a truss of hay. A steel bar has been found in the stall of the stable. The State was not well governed, and the people were in a rebellious state. Broom is a shrub, but a short thick piece of wood is called a block of wood.

"Stofo" is the name of a Russian measure, but if we wish to write about the material (or stuff) of which a coat or gown is made, we put an accent over the first letter, which alters the pronunciation. A piece of tow was lying on the bottom step of the staircase. There was a table in the middle of the room, and on it was a plate in which was a thaler, together with other coins; a board hung on the wall, on which was pasted a table of fares for hired carriages (hackney coach fares).

EXERCISE 37.

The following are Exercises in similar words in English. The words to be noted are in italics:

EXERCISE 37.

To turn.


TRANSLATION 37.

Leave.

(1) After knowing of gambling, he went to his solicitor's, and let his wife stay in the house, but, before stepping out, he made his will, and left all his property to his brother. (2) He asked leave to give the leftovers of the dinner to his dog. (3) He asked leave to give the leftovers of the dinner to his dog. (4) He asked leave to give the leftovers of the dinner to his dog. (5) He asked leave to give the leftovers of the dinner to his dog. (6) He asked leave to give the leftovers of the dinner to his dog. (7) Leave the room, you impertinent fellow. (8) Leave the room as it is, for I do not intend to alter it.

To turn.

(7) When I entered the turnery, the turner was turning the leg of a table out of a piece of wood, which was turning rapidly on its axis. On hearing my footsteps, he turned round, but continued his turning. When the leg was turned, it turned out to be too short.
EXERCISKS.

kJi ne menci povas la familio, kaj poste, se vi ne estas tro laca, ni esploros la vidinda ĵojn de la urbo. (5) Je veni (ach, mi petegas, ke vi venis; far mi je tre enstrus ĉi tio), (6) Eblas manĝavorti kaj nestiĝindaj kaj ĉi tio nur ĉu neniu ĉi tiu. (7) Tio ĉi nuli por mi, sed por vi ĝi estus ĉis. (8) Ĉi tiu estus esperatindigo (ach, proponi al Esperanto) de Doktoro Zamenhof. (9) Mi povus ni mi por tio se volas semajni ek en la afere. (10) La propono en la literaturo, sed li ne uzus ĝi megze. (11) Honore, (ki, respe) por mi tiam ĉi povasindigo, se ĝi valoras la koston tion ĉi.

EXERCISE 39.

TRANSLATION 38.

Do, did.

(1) How do you do? Very well, thank you. (2) Did you do what I told you? Yes, I did. So I did not. (3) Did you do away with that awful dog? Yes, I did, for I said to my wife: "What can we do with such a hideous brute?" and she replied: "Do away with it." (4) Do up those ten parcels, and also do up the rooms, and afterwards, if you are not too done up, we will do up the city. (5) Do come! for I do want to see you! (6) It is unpleasant to have to do with persons who try to do us. (7) This will do well enough for me, but it will not do for you. (8) Hamlet has done this into Esperanto by Doctor Zamenhof. (9) I spoke to my father, and he did not want to do it. (10) He did well at school, but he did not do well in business. (11) Do up this watch for me, if it be worth the expense of doing so.

EXERCISE 39.

To get (para. 237 (4)).

(1) Mi alviis je la ĝi, kaj tiu kiam mi eniri eni, tiu eniri mi servivon, ke ĝi alviis je al mi enir ĉevalon. Kiam alviis je la ĝi, mi esprimo ĝi, kaj ĉevalo tiu mem kien, ki ĝi por la polskiavon.
EXERCISES.

Ni nuiten manĝis, petis manĝi la ĉevaloj kaj forrajdis. Sur la vojo, manĝis ĝis oni ankaŭ ĝiris al Itonon en la hufon, kaj tiel manĝis. Sur la vojo, mia eevalo rikiris al si Itonon en la hufon, kaj tiel mi laŭdis, kaj ĝin eprenis. Car la vojoj estis tre kotoj, la ĉevaloj ŝpruki ŝi 8 per koto, ni ankaŭ ŝparis, sed la ĉevalaestro diris, ke ni ne foris sum tren kiel ĝi, kaj tiel ĝis finis ĉi tiun ĝicicen. La ĉevalo ŝparis, ke vi ne meritis la ĉevalon, kaj tiel ĝis foris sum kio, kaj tiel ŝi foris sum kio. Kiam vi ĉebras la multajn ĝicicen kial tiu en la tenejo, ne pensas malpli diri vio de vi al sia hundejo, ĉar vi ni antaŭ malĉevalo, por kalkulino, ke vi ne povos veni ĉevalon, por kalkulino, ke vi ĉevalo ŝparis.
EXERCISE 40.

To appear, know, have.

(1) Kiam li unue aparis en la ambro, ŝajnis al mi, ke li estis malprudentulo, sed poste li aperis en la ambro, ŝajnis al mi, ke li trompis. (2) Se li hemon ne poste li unue esigis kiel instruanto, li kon中国大陆:

EXERCISE 40.

To appear, know, have.

(1) When he first appeared in the room, it appeared to me that he was (is) a fool, but afterwards he appeared to show so much wit, that I perceived I was (am) mistaken. (2) If the pupil knew his lesson well, the teacher would not punish him. (3) "Christian," he said to me, "you do not know the story of the birth of this leaf?" "Mohometan, I do not know," I answered. (4) I knew that you had a dog, but I did not know the dog when I saw it. (5) When my friend asked me to call upon him, he did not know that I did not know his house; however I knew the street where he lived, and I also knew his dog, therefore, as soon as I recognised it lying close to the door of a house, I knew that that house belonged to my friend. (6) I have a book which I have (must) to return to the library as soon as I (shall) have read it through (lit., as soon as I shall have read it through).
EXERCISE 41.

To bring, let, give, effect, affect.

(1) Alport al mi manj efikala playing to John ka li efikala manj trencana.
(2) La tempredantulo na ludala en jurem de la fermentigtoj.
(3) Kiam oni sciigis al la virino ke li man ripoze al sia fiŝo, li sciigis al sia fiŝo post al sia fiŝo vinice, por triki al la sobmonte (mah, tenis la mons) de sia trencanita.
(4) La troprodukto malaltigas la pre/.on de la komercajoj.
(5) Kiam oni sciigis al la virino ke li manj efikala pro, li efikala pro al sia fiŝo vinice, por triki al la sobmonte (mah, tenis la mons) de sia trencanita.
(6) Kiam la patrino sciigis al la virino ke li manj efikala pro, li efikala pro al sia fiŝo vinice, por triki al la sobmonte (mah, tenis la mons) de sia trencanita.
(7) Kiam oni sciigis al la virino ke li manj efikala pro, li efikala pro al sia fiŝo vinice, por triki al la sobmonte (mah, tenis la mons) de sia trencanita.

TRANSLATION 41.

To bring, let, give, effect, affect.

(1) Bring me my hat, and then tell John to bring my horse.
(2) Overproduction brings down the price of goods.
(3) When they brought news to the husband that his wife had brought forth a son, he brought forth the best wine in his cellar to drink to the well-being (or, toast the health) of his first-born. The mother brought up her son during his childhood, and afterwards the father brought him up in one of the best schools in the country.
(4) When the policeman let the man go, the brother of the latter let him into his house, and let down the blinds.
(5) His health being well, so that he had...
EXERCISES.

EXERCISE 42.

Can, could, may, might, must, ought, should, would (pars. 231 (I—p)).

(1) Eble li venos, kaj eblo ne. (2) Cu vi permuses, ke mi povas morgaŭ li, mi permuses (sia, jiu, zorg). (3) Cu mi povus veni morgaŭ li, mi povus. (4) Cu mi devus veni morgaŭ li? Ne, vi ne povas. (5) Cu mi devus danke morgaŭ li? Ne, vi ne povas. (6) Cu mi devus danke morgaŭ li, mi devus al la banko, mia oficejo, kaj aliaj lokoj. (7) Vi devus veni la komitato. Mi ne povas veni, mi ne povas hodiaŭ, mi ne povas al tempo. (8) Mi devus veni al la banko, mia oficejo, kaj aliaj lokoj. (9) Vi devus veni la komitato, mi ne povas veni, mi ne povas al tempo. (10) Mi devus veni la komitato, mi ne povas veni, mi ne povas al tempo. (11) Mi devus veni la komitato, mi ne povas veni, mi ne povas al tempo. (12) Mi devus veni la komitato, mi ne povas veni, mi ne povas al tempo. (13) Mi devus veni la komitato, mi ne povas veni, mi ne povas al tempo. (14) Mi devus veni la komitato, mi ne povas veni, mi ne povas al tempo. (15) Mi devus veni la komitato, mi ne povas veni, mi ne povas al tempo.
Can, could, etc.

1. Can you come tomorrow? Yes, you may come.
2. He may come, and he may not.
3. May I (will you allow me to) come to-morrow? Yes, you may (or, yes, certainly).
4. Must I (shall I have to) come to-morrow? No, you need not.
5. Ought I to see (or, is it necessary to see) the doctor? Yes, you ought (or, yes, very necessary). You ought to have seen him yesterday. I cannot see him to-day, for I have no time; I have to go to the bank, my office, and other places.
6. You ought to see the castle. I should love to see it, but I should have (it would be necessary) to go alone, and I might be robbed on the way.
7. He had to pay attention to his work, for, otherwise, he would have spoilt it.
8. He ought to have paid more attention to his work than he did, and then he would not have spoilt it.
9. Would you have me desert my friends? Of course, I would not.
10. He will come; I cannot stop him. He will come if you do (will) not stop him.
11. He would come, notwithstanding I did all I could to stop him.
12. He could not confess that he saw (sees) nothing. He would not have confessed that he saw nothing, if he really had seen (already before saw) something.
13. I am writing to him to come (or, in order that he may come).

EXERCISE 43.

Adverbial and Conjunctional Phrases.

(1) No furu tion miako (or, pro mi).
(2) Ciu knabo siavice le gu verson.
(3) Xenial li kesi kanti.
(4) Ial li forlasis sian celon.
(5) Unufoje por ham mi diras al vi denove, ke mi gin ne permesos.
(6) Mi tute ne scias tion, kion vi volas diri, se ne estas, ke vi bezonas motion.
(7) Li turnis la librojn supre malsupren, kaj siajn poj el interne, sed li ne povis trovi la leteron.
(8) Mobjra "cio estas al mi tute egale, cu vi gin faros a ne".
(9) Ciupecaj personal-fuvon tiesto al kunvenon, kieli ekzemple elbohoj, negocistoj, komercistoj, kaj tiel plu (k.t.p.).
EXERCISES.

10. Do not do that on my account.
11. Let each boy in his turn read a verse.
12. For no reason he left off singing.
13. For some reason he abandoned his purpose.
14. Once for all, I tell you again that I will not permit it.
15. I do not know (or, at all) what you mean, unless it be that you want money.
16. He turned the books upside down and his pockets inside out, but he could not find the letter.
17. After all, it is all the same to me whether you do it or not.
18. All sorts of people will be at the meeting, as, for example, noblemen, merchants, traders, shopkeepers, and so forth (etc.), but at all events I shall go there, for it takes place only once a year.
19. He tried to do his best, but it was all to no purpose.
20. To my surprise, he told me that he did not do it on purpose.
21. Well, it was so found.
22. I called upon him lately (not long ago).
23. I have not seen her of late, but I hope she will call upon me later on.

EXERCISE 44.

La edzino (pars. 276).

Georgo fiante kun ĉiuj estas laŭdanto de la ĉiuj, ĉiuj fiante estas edzino de Georgo. La ĉiuj fiante de Georgo parolis pri sia edzino kaj la edzino de la ĉiuj ŝi havis, kaj li diris, ke la edzino ŝi havis grandon pro ĝi, kaj ke ŝi havis grandon pro ĝi. Li parolis, ke la edzino ŝi havis en la ĉiuj...
La edzi a tago alvenis, kaj la edzi a tago pleniĝis je ĉiuj edziplanaj personoj el la vilaj homvilaĝoj, kaj, kiam la patro de Georgo, la edzi a tago, kaj, kiam la edzi a tago finis, la edzi a tago iris ĉe la patron de Georgo, kie fariĝis la edzi a festo.

Kelke da jaroj poste, Georgo eksedzis; kaj jaron pli poste, mi vidis en la jurnaloj, ke lia fratino eksedzigis (or, forsindis) sian edzon.
EXERCISES.

The wedding day arrived, and the church was filled with all the marriageable persons of the village, maids and bachelors; there was also present the clergyman's wife, who is a strong advocate of matrimony.

When the two brides arrived, the two bridegrooms were standing in the church and were the ceremony was about to begin, the clergyman put the following question to each bridegroom: "Wilt thou have this woman to thy wedded wife?" and then to each bride: "Wilt thou have this man to thy wedded husband?" Afterwards each bridegroom put a ring on the fourth finger of his bride, at the same time saying "With this ring I thee wed."

As soon as the marriage ceremony was over the brides and bridegrooms went to George's father's house, where the wedding banquet took place.

Some years afterwards George was divorced, and a year later I saw in the papers that his sister had divorced her husband.

"Bride" and "bridegroom" are synonymous terms in English for persons who are about to be and have been married, but they are distinguished in Esperanto.

1 "Bride" and "bridegroom" are synonymous terms in English for persons who are about to be and have been married, but they are distinguished in Esperanto.
2 Edzino = A bride before marriage.
3 Edzinto = A bride who is being married.
4 Novedzino = A bride after marriage.

(See paras. 208, 209).
PART IV.

PHRASES.

Affirmative Phrases.

It is true. That is true.
You are right.
It is certain that...
I am sure of that.
I can assure you.
I assure you it is so.
I believe so.
So (that) I believe.
I say yes.
You may (can) believe me.
I tell you it is true.
I give you my word (of honour).
That is sufficient.
It is he himself (she herself) (they themselves).
It is early (late).
It is still very early.
It is too (very) late.
So much the better.

 Jesaj Frazoj.

Estas vere. Tio estas vera.
Vi estas pram.
Estas certe, ke...
Mi estas certa je tio.
Mi povas vin certigi.
Mi certigas, ke jes.
Mi kredas, ke jes.
Tion mi kredas.
Mi diras, ke jes.
Mi donas al vi mian parolon de honoro.
Estas li (Ŝi) (ili) mem.
Estas frue (malfrue).
Estas la dua horo.
Tiom pli hone..

It is true. That is true.
You are right.
It is certain that...
I am sure of that.
I can assure you.
I assure you it is so.
I believe so.
So (that) I believe.
I say yes.
You may (can) believe me.
I tell you it is true.
I give you my word (of honour).
That is sufficient.
It is he himself (she herself) (they themselves).
It is early (late).
It is still very early.
It is too (very) late.
So much the better.
PHRASES.

Negative Phrases.

Ne estas vera, he...
Fakte malvera, tie...
Vi ne estas prava.
Vi estas malprava.
Neniu tion diras.
Li ne estas tie.
Mi ne diris tion.
Mi iras nenien.
Ne aŭ skultu lin.
La tar/mango ne estas preta.
Mi ne kredas tion.
Ne aŭ skultu lin.

Demandaj Frazoj.

Kio estas ? Kio okazis ?
Kiu estas ? Kiu estas tie ?
Kien vi iras 1
Kion vi faros, kiam...
Kion vi diris ?
Kion vi volas (deziras) (postulas) (bezonas) ?
Kie vi estas ?
Kioma horo estas ?

Interrogative Phrases.

What is it ? What is the matter ? What has happened ?
Who is it ? Who is there ? Where (where) are you going ?
What will you do when...
What did you say ?
What do you wish (desire) (require) (need) ?
Where are you ?

306
PHRASES.

Je kioma hora vi krepe?  
At what time do you get
up (rise)?

Kion vi adresis?  
What do you mean?

Kion daton mi havas hodia?  
What is the day of the
month (lit., what date
have we to-day)?

Ĉu vi malkapes?'  
Did you hear?

Ĉu vi konas Sinjonon B.?  
Do you know Mr. B.?

Ĉu vi parolas Esperanton?  
Do you speak Esperanto?

Ĉu vi parolas serios?  
Do you speak seriously?

Ĉu vi sercas i?  
Surely you are joking?

Ĉu la veturilo jam alvenis?  
Is dinner ready?

Ĉu la vesperejo povas prena i?  
Is it time to go away?

Ĉu vi havas la bonon on?  
Would you have the
goodness...

Ĉu vi renkontis Sin?  
Where (when) did you
meet him?

Ĉu vi renkontis honon?  
Shall we come with me?

Ĉu vi adiris honon?  
Are there any letters for
me?

Ĉu vi havas honon?  
Would you be so good?

Kion vi diris al li?  
What did you say to him?

Kion vi bezonas?  
What do you want?

Kion vi bezonas?  
What does this article cost?

Kio estus tiel bona?  
What is the name of this
town?

Kiam ni hallos por tagri?  
When shall we stop for
(to take) lunch?

Kial vi ne respondas?  
What is your opinion?

Kio estas la nemo de tiu urbo?  
What did you mean to him?

Kion vi bezonas?  
When (when) did you
want her?

Kial vi ne respondas?  
What is your opinion?

Kial vi ne respondas?  
What did you mean to him?

Kion vi bezonas?  
What did you want her?

Kion vi bezonas?  
When (when) did you
want her?
Did you see her in the street or at her house?
Did you not tell her what I begged you to say?

Ordinaaj Frazoj.

Come here. Go away.

Imperative Phrases.

Pray do not trouble yourself.

Come here. Go away.

Tell him to come.

Speak to him.

Do what I say.

Be quiet! Be silent!

Pray be seated. Please sit down.

Get me a cab.

Please lend me your umbrella.

Bring her this]

Brush these clothes.

Don't say a word.

Give me that book.

Please lend me your umbrella.

Bring the earrings.

Pray be seated! Please sit down.

Don't do that.

Did you not tell her what I begged you to say?

Did you see her in the street or at her house?
**PHRASES.**

Excuse me, Sir, you are occupying my place. Pass me the salt (pepper) (mustard), if you please!

Waiter, give me the bread!

Shut (open) the door (window), please.

Look at that pretty girl.

Oh! look what a beautiful house that is!

Save him! He is drowning!

---

**Expressions of Thanks.**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Esperimoj de Danko.</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Mi dankas.</td>
<td>Thank you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mi laŭdi kun danko.</td>
<td>Thank you very much.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mi dankeble dankas.</td>
<td>Thanks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Many thanks.</td>
<td>Many thanks.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A thousand thanks.</td>
<td>You are very good (kind).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I don’t know how to thank you.</td>
<td>You are really too good.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>You have done me a favour (service), which I shall never forget.</td>
<td>You have done me a favour (service), which I shall never forget.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I wish I could do more.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I shall always be your debtor.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
I shall never forget your goodness.
I beg you to accept the expression of my profound thankfulness.
It was a pleasure to me, to be able to be of service to you.
I regret that I could not do more.

The Weather.

What sort of weather is it?
It is a lovely day.
The sun is shining, but the wind is bitterly cold.
It is excessively hot.
Do you think it will rain?
The clouds are gathering.
It rained all night.
It will snow tomorrow, I think.
We shall soon have a deluge of rain (a downpour).
The wind is rising.
The rain is falling.
The weather is very changeable.
A storm is coming, and it appears as if it would be a hurricane.
The hail is now ceasing.
CONVERSATION

(Interparolado).

Excuse me, Sir, but do you speak Esperanto?

I speak it a little, but very incorrectly, for I have not had much practice.

It appears to me that you speak it very well.

You are paying me a compliment, I fear, but I am glad I speak it sufficiently well to be understood. If you speak French, will you kindly get me a ticket for Geneva?

With much pleasure. I also am going there. By what class do you travel?

By the first for such a long journey.

I too, so we can travel together. But if you have heavy luggage, you will have to register it.

I have two trunks and a portmanteau; you would do me a great kindness if you would get them registered for me.
Conversation.

I will do so, as soon as I
have got the tickets.
A thousand thanks! Here
are these 100-franc
notes.
I registered your luggage,
and here is your travel-
ling ticket, the luggage
ticket and change
(money balance). I
paid 222 francs for the
return ticket, and 21
for the luggage regis-
tering.
Very many thanks; and
now let us take our
seats in the train.
This compartment is full.
Here is another that
has two vacant seats.
Let us enter that.
Very well. Which seat do
you prefer? That which
faces the engine, or the
other?
It is all the same to me.
Choose yourself.
Well, I will take this, for
I do not like to travel
with my back to the
engine.
When does the train
start?
In two or three minutes.
Now we are off.
Do you know a good
hotel in Geneva facing
the lake?
I know several, to one of which I am going myself, and which is very comfortable, and the charges moderate.

Kindly tell me its name, for such an hotel would suit me very well, not being in any way a rich man.

I forgot the name, but if you will go there with me, I will show it to you.

You are very kind. I will accompany you with pleasure. Shall we have to change carriages before arriving at Geneva?

No. This train is express, and we stop only four times between here and Geneva, where we ought to arrive at 6.27 to-morrow morning. Thus we have still more than seven hours of the train. I shall take the opportunity for a good sleep, so I will say "Good night, Sir."

Wake up, Sir! Here we are at Geneva. Give me your luggage ticket, and I will collect your things with mine.
Shall I hire a cab?

It is not necessary. We can go in the omnibus; the hotel is not very far from the station.

There is the hotel. Does it satisfy you?

Perfectly, if the rooms and beds are clean and the food good.

Everything was satisfactory the last time I was there, and I fancy the same landlord still keeps the hotel. Yes, I am right. Here he is! So you can now tell him what you want.

Good evening. What do you desire, Sir?

A good, airy bedroom on the third floor, facing the lake. What is your charge (do you ask)?

I have exactly the room you desire, Sir. The charge depends on the length of time you stay in the hotel, and whether you take the rooms with or without board.

I shall remain at least five days for the Congress, and I shall take all meals in the hotel.
CONVERSATION.

In that case the charge will be (at the rate of)
eight francs a day (for each day); or if you
should remain a whole week, the entire cost
would be fifty francs, which includes atten-
dance and light.

Well, then, I think I shall stay a week, if I (shall)
find the food good and the bedroom clean and
comfortable. At what hours are the meals?

Breakfast at whatever hour you wish; lunch at
one o'clock, and dinner at half-past six.

Good. Kindly send my luggage up to my room.
CORRESPONDENCE (Korespondado).

The following are some of the more usual forms of dates, commencements, and conclusions of letters:

**Dates.**

London, Anglujo.

la 25an de januaro 1906a.

la 25an de febrero 1906a.

la 25an de marzo 1906a.

la 25an de abruzo 1906a.

la 25an de decembro 1906a.

LA 25an de marto.

Most countries do not use capital letters for the months, and it is perhaps better to follow the example of the majority, and write:—

la l^an de decembro, 1906a.

**Reference to Dates.**—In referring to dates, the preposition de is generally used, e.g.:—

Besponde je (or, al) vialeterode... = In reply to your letter of...

De la l^a de la lasta monato = Of the 4th of last month.

De la l^a de la nuna (huranta) monato —(M) the 4th of the present month.

De la l^a de la venonta (or, proksima) monato = On the 4th of next month, or on the 4th proximo.

Je la l^a de la venonta (or, proksima) = On the 4th of next month.

Je can be omitted and the accusative used, as:—

La l^an de la venonta.

Correspondence and Conclusion of Letters.

The style of address varies considerably among nations, but the following are some in more or less general use:

**Friends.**

Commencement.—Estimata = Esteemed.

Kara = Dear.

Mia kara Karlo = My dear Charles.

Kara (or, mia kara) Sinjoro B. = Dear (or, my dear) Mr. B.

Sinjorino B. = Mrs. B.

Fraidino = Miss B.

(Mia) kara Samideano = Eellow thinker (if an Esperantist), lit., partisan of the same idea.

Conclusion.—Refunmo = Resummed.

Kern. = Dear.

Mrs. Kern. = Miss Kern. (or, dear Madam).

Sinjoro Kern. = Mr. Kern.

Sinjorino Kern. = Mrs. Kern.

Sedulo = Sincerely.

Sedulo f. = Sincerely yours.

Sedulo k. = Sincerely yours sincerely.

Sedulo k. f. = Sincerely yours very sincerely.

Sedulo k. k. = Sincerely yours most sincerely.

Sedulo k. k. f. = Sincerely yours most very sincerely.

Sedulo k. k. k. = Sincerely yours most most sincerely.

Sedulo k. k. k. f. = Sincerely yours most most very sincerely.

Sedulo k. k. k. k. = Sincerely yours most most most sincerely.

Sedulo k. k. k. k. f. = Sincerely yours most most most very sincerely.

Sedulo k. k. k. k. k. = Sincerely yours most most most most sincerely.

Sedulo k. k. k. k. k. f. = Sincerely yours most most most most very sincerely.

Sedulo k. k. k. k. k. k. = Sincerely yours most most most most most sincerely.

Sedulo k. k. k. k. k. k. f. = Sincerely yours most most most most most very sincerely.

Sedulo k. k. k. k. k. k. k. = Sincerely yours most most most most most most sincerely.

Sedulo k. k. k. k. k. k. k. f. = Sincerely yours most most most most most most very sincerely.

Sedulo k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. = Sincerely yours most most most most most most most sincerely.

Sedulo k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. f. = Sincerely yours most most most most most most most very sincerely.

Sedulo k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. = Sincerely yours most most most most most most most most sincerely.

Sedulo k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. f. = Sincerely yours most most most most most most most most very sincerely.

Sedulo k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. = Sincerely yours most most most most most most most most most sincerely.

Sedulo k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. f. = Sincerely yours most most most most most most most most most very sincerely.

Sedulo k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. = Sincerely yours most most most most most most most most most most sincerely.

Sedulo k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. f. = Sincerely yours most most most most most most most most most most very sincerely.

Sedulo k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. = Sincerely yours most most most most most most most most most most most sincerely.

Sedulo k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. f. = Sincerely yours most most most most most most most most most most most very sincerely.

Sedulo k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. = Sincerely yours most most most most most most most most most most most most sincerely.

Sedulo k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. f. = Sincerely yours most most most most most most most most most most most most very sincerely.

Sedulo k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. = Sincerely yours most most most most most most most most most most most most most sincerely.

Sedulo k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. k. f. = Sincerely yours most most most most most most most most most most most most most very sincerely.
**CORRESPONDENCE**

**Constitution.** — In the cablegrammestential &c. one may be considered as the constitution said to be the same. Example, 1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th, 5th, 6th, 7th, 8th, 9th, 10th, 11th, 12th, 13th, 14th, 15th, 16th, 17th, 18th, 19th, 20th, 21st, 22nd, 23rd, 24th, 25th, 26th, 27th, 28th, 29th, 30th, 31st, 32nd, 33rd, 34th, 35th, 36th, 37th, 38th, 39th, 40th, 41st, 42nd, 43rd, 44th, 45th, 46th, 47th, 48th, 49th, 50th, 51st, 52nd, 53rd, 54th, 55th, 56th, 57th, 58th, 59th, 60th, 61st, 62nd, 63rd, 64th, 65th, 66th, 67th, 68th, 69th, 70th, 71st, 72nd, 73rd, 74th, 75th, 76th, 77th, 78th, 79th, 80th, 81st, 82nd, 83rd, 84th, 85th, 86th, 87th, 88th, 89th, 90th, 91st, 92nd, 93rd, 94th, 95th, 96th, 97th, 98th, 99th, 100th.

In the aforesaid 1st may be considered 2nd, or, as the following 3rd may be considered 4th, 5th, 6th, 7th, 8th, 9th, 10th, 11th, 12th, 13th, 14th, 15th, 16th, 17th, 18th, 19th, 20th, 21st, 22nd, 23rd, 24th, 25th, 26th, 27th, 28th, 29th, 30th, 31st, 32nd, 33rd, 34th, 35th, 36th, 37th, 38th, 39th, 40th, 41st, 42nd, 43rd, 44th, 45th, 46th, 47th, 48th, 49th, 50th, 51st, 52nd, 53rd, 54th, 55th, 56th, 57th, 58th, 59th, 60th, 61st, 62nd, 63rd, 64th, 65th, 66th, 67th, 68th, 69th, 70th, 71st, 72nd, 73rd, 74th, 75th, 76th, 77th, 78th, 79th, 80th, 81st, 82nd, 83rd, 84th, 85th, 86th, 87th, 88th, 89th, 90th, 91st, 92nd, 93rd, 94th, 95th, 96th, 97th, 98th, 99th, 100th.

**Direct Address.**

**Kun a mi hi salulo =** With friendly salutation.

**Kun edimo kaj... =** With... esteem and...

**Kun kora sahuo =** With hearty salutation.

**Kun saluto =** With salutation.

**Kun ĉiuj bondeziroj =** With all good wishes,

**Kun miaj bondeziroj =** With kind regards.

**Kun la plej granda eMirno =** With the greatest esteem.

**(La) via (tre) sincere =** Yours (very) sincerely.

**(Tre) kore (la) via =** (Very) heartily yours.

**Tute (la) via =** Entirely yours.

**Oiam (la) via—** Always yours.

**17 ct fidela a mi ko =** Your faithful...

**(La) via =** Yours.

**Sindone via. A mikone via.**

**Krnlu min esti Ham, k.c. Vin salutas, k.t.p.**

**Commencement.** — Sir. or Madam. or, in some cases, Sirs.

**Relatives.**

**Commencement.** — My dear... =

**Concluding.** — With much love (to all). I ia (tre) amanta = Your (very) affectionate.

**Titles.** — For the use of Mosto in addressing persons with titles, or in official positions, see para. 383.

**Near Relatives.**

In correspondence with near relatives, the following are some of the terms which might be written:

**Commencement.** — My dear... =

**Conclusion.** — With much esteem.

**Difficult or Commercial.**

**Commencement.** — Sir. or Madam. or, in some cases, Sirs.

**Conclusion.** — With the greatest esteem.
CORRESPONDENCE.

Paroles, oc obervas (chantul) servar — Tjus obedient (chamal) servar.

Ricevo la cerligon de la plej alia estimo de via obea servaru = Accept the assurance of the highest esteem from your obedient servant.

Mi restas kun tula respekto, via plej humila servanto = I remain with all respect your most humble servant.

Specimens of Letters (Modeloj de leteroj).

Oesinjoroj M. havas la honoron inviti Gesinjorojn N. kaj ilian filan, al vesperman ĝoju don venontan je la oka horo.

Mr. and Mrs. M. have the honour of inviting Mr. and Mrs. N. and their daughter to dinner on Thursday next at eight o'clock.

Mr. and Mrs. N. and their daughter accept with much pleasure the kind invitation of Mr. and Mrs. M. to dinner on Thursday next. Or, very much regret that a previous engagement prevents them from accepting the same invitation; but, as you are kind enough to send a note to me, I shall be most happy to accept it with great pleasure, if you will be favourably disposed.

Mr. and Mrs. N. and their daughter accept with much pleasure the kind invitation of Mr. and Mrs. M. to dinner on Thursday next. Or, very much regret that a previous engagement prevents them from accepting the same invitation; but, as you are kind enough to send a note to me, I shall be most happy to accept it with great pleasure, if you will be favourably disposed.

Dear Mr. B., — I propose calling upon you to-morrow afternoon at 5 o'clock, if that hour will be convenient to you; if not, kindly inform me by bearer (of this) at what hour you will be disengaged.

Dear Mr. B., — I propose calling upon you to-morrow afternoon at 5 o'clock, if that hour will be convenient to you; if not, kindly inform me by bearer (of this) at what hour you will be disengaged.

I did not receive your letter of the 30th ultimo till the 2nd instant.

I regret that I delayed so long in replying to your letter, but really I could not find time...
CORRESPONDENCE

Esperantisto KARLO
20th de Aprilo, 1906.
Londino.

Karla Karlo:

Kiam vi ricevis tion tiun letteron, eble vi diras:
"Kio estas tio? Kio lingvo eblas?" Sed, kiam vi mal-
fermiss la letteron, et aferas, ke:
"Estas ankoraŭ la unua okaj unuaj okoj. Sed vi trajnos
lunajn okaj unuaj okojn, kaj vi diras: "Tio estas mirinda!"
"Kio mi certas?" Mi povas tute facile kompreni tio:
"vi esturas lingvon?" Kio mi certas? Halut "tio
vivas, Esperanto?" Kion signifas Esperanto?"
"Mi mem en la stelo. Jen estis "Eper - ke, "hoo" - povas pertenci, "tio estas "ho", "tio havas"
"hoo" - esting of nouns; "hoo" - Esperanto, "hoo"
signifas esperanten. Ne, se ni povus tiu fari,
"tio" - kompreni tion, tiu lingvon, mi atendos
kien li faros kelkajn parojn, ke li elektigos unu
"deuton, kaj mi krom kelkaj, ke li malkonsas. Mi
"certa forno Esperanto kaj unu parolos distingita
"plej multe." Kaj nun, mia carla Karlo, skribu al mi
Esperanton kaj diru al mi, kio mi ne estas tute prava,
imagado, ke la supoditaj vortoj estas giaj koaj,
kio ni povus, migrotaj tio fi unu komplikita
G.C. 

Postskribajo. PS—Tiu "ho" estas tute esperan-
tista. Ĉiu antaŭ alia parolos Esperanton, mi formas
"hoo"; por tiuj li ni havas formon aparta distinktaj
al la formantoj, kaj tio al la unaj domo fakte
ĉiuj. La kelneroj kaj aliaj servistoj parolas
la Esperon. La manglecoj kor enesperantaj estis en
Esperanto, kaj mi tiam parolas Esperantajn unu kaj
la Esperon. Mi esperas, ku vi vivas, kiam vi ricevis
Anglujn.

219
Dear Charlie,

When you receive this letter possibly you will say: "What is this? What language is it?" But when you open the tiny key (herewith enclosed), and have read through the first eight pages, you will say: "This is wonderful! Who could have written such a thing?" When you have read the first page, you will say: "What is this language? I don't know. 'Esperanto'." When you have read the next page, you will say: "What does 'Esperanto' mean? Let me look at the key. Here it is! "Esper" = hope, "ant" = present participle, that is to say, "that makes 'hoping'; 'o' = ending of nouns; therefore 'esperanto' means 'someone hoping.'"

Well, if I can so easily, at first sight, understand the language, its author has every reason to hope that he will realize his dream, and I heartily hope that he will succeed. I shall certainly learn Esperanto, and try to spread it as much as possible.

And now, my dear Charles, write me a letter in Esperanto, and tell me if I am not quite right in imagining that the above-mentioned words are exactly what you thought, after reading this letter.

Always yours,
G.C.

Postscript. P.S. — This Club is entirely Esperantist. All members either speak Esperanto or are learning it; for the latter we have a room specially set apart for learners, and one of the members gives lessons daily. The waiters and all the servants speak the language. The menus and wine cards are in Esperanto, and we always speak Esperanto to each other. I hope you will become a member when you return to England.
PART V.

LIST OF PRIMARY WORDS.

A
Adieu = adieu, farewell, good-bye (adv. and int.).
Adj = one (adv.).
Al = a, for (prep.).
Al = ut, least (conj. and adv.).
Asto = both (prep.).
Asto = also, too (conj.).
Asto = after, in front of, apri (prep.).
Asto = before, in front of, apri (prep.).
Asto = beside, near to (prep.).
Asto = neither (conj.).
Asto = at, in (adv.).
Asto = neither (conj.).
Asto = a, to, at (adv.).
Asto = one, some (adv.).
Asto = for, after (prep.).
Asto = after, in front of, apri (prep.).
Asto = at, in (adv.).
Asto = neither (conj.).
Asto = a, to, at (adv.).
Asto = one, some (adv.).
Asto = for, after (prep.).
Asto = after, in front of, apri (prep.).
Asto = at, in (adv.).
Asto = neither (conj.).
Asto = a, to, at (adv.).
Asto = one, some (adv.).
Asto = for, after (prep.).
Asto = after, in front of, apri (prep.).
Asto = at, in (adv.).
Asto = neither (conj.).
PHONIC WORDS

Cen = hundred (num.).
Ca = then (prep. pren.).
Ca = (very) almost (adv.).
Ca = each, every kind of (pren. adj.).
Cag = for every reason, for every reason (adv.).
Cas = always, ever (adv.).
Cas = in every way (adv.).
Cas = everything (int. pron.).
Can = all, every quantity (adv.).
Cia = each, each one (num. and pron. adj.).
Cio = whether (conj. and adv.).

D
Da = of (for quantity), (prep.).
De = of, from, main (num.), by (agent), (prep.).
Dek = ten (num.).
Des + - so much the... (conj. and adv.). As = the...; there... so much the better (see ju plu).
Dum = thus, indeed, therefore (conj.).
Dum = thus (num.).
Dum = while, whilst (conj.), during which (prep.).

E
E = even (adv.).
Ekster = outside (prep.).
En = in (num.)
En = in, to (prep.).

F
Fi = for (int.).
For = away, forth (adv. and int.).
GI = J (per. pron.).

do = up to, down to, as far as (prep. and conj.).

H

Ha = ah! hello! (int.).
He = he! hallo! (int.).
Her = her (adj.).
Hers = hers (adv.).
Here = here (adv.).
Here is (adv.).
Here is a (adv.).

H

I

I = some, some kind of (adv.), (pron. adj.).
I's = of some (adj).
I'm = some (adj). (int.).
I've = somebody, anyone (adv.).
I've = someone's, anyone's (indo. pron.).
I'll = hey (per. pron.).
I'll be = behate (prep. and conj.).
I've = something, anything (indo. pron.).
I've = someone, someone, anyone, anything (adv.).
I've = some one (indo. pron. and adj.)

J

J = is in fact, indeed (adv.), indeed! (int.).
Jen = indeed (adv.), yet (adv.).
Jen = already, now, yet (adv.).
Jen = an (adv.)
Jen = an (adj.)
Jen = is (adv.)
Jen = a (adv.)
Jen = the (adv.)
Jen = that (adv.)
Jen = the (adv.)

323
PRIMARY WORDS.

K
Kaj = and, both (conj.).
Ku = that (con.
Ki = what kind of (interrogative and pron. adj.),
Kil = how, as, in what my (conj., adv., and interrogative).
Kies = whose (interrogative and relative pron.).
Kio = what (thing), (interrogative and relative pron.).
Kiam = when (conj., adv., and interrogative).
Ki = where (conj., adv., and interrogative).
Kiel = how, as, in what my (conj., adv., and interrogative).
Kia = what kind of (interrogative and pron. adj.),
Kia = what (thing), (interrogative and relative pron.).
Kian = how, as, in what my (conj., adv., and interrogative).
Kil = how, as, in what my (conj., adv., and interrogative).
Krom = ?io/ including, apart from; hence it can be used for “except, besides, save, without, but,” etc. (prep.).
Kuz = until (prep.), (not used in an instrumental sense).
Kvanka = although, though (conj.).
Kvae = four (num.).
Kvam = in, at in, at in (con.
Kvan = in, at in (con.

L
La = the (art.).
Lak = availability to (prep.).
La be (per. pron.).

M
Malgran = uncontrolled (prep.).
Mern = also, also, also (prep.).
Mi = I (per. pron.).
Mil = thousand (num.).
Morgel = however (adv.).
N

Nad = nine (num.).
Ne = no, not, nay (adv.).
Nen = none, no kind of (num. and adj.).
Nenian = for no cause or reason (adv.).
Nenial = neither, nor (conj. and adv.).
Nenia = nowhere (adv.).
Nenare = neither, nor (adv.).
Nenau = none, no kind of (num. and adj.).
Nenia = nowhere (adv.).
Nenio = nothing (num.).
Nenion = none, no quantity (adv.).
Nenie = nowhere (adv.).
Neniel = no how, in no way, not at all (adv.).
Nenie = nowhere (adv.).
Ni = the (pron.).
Nu = well! (int.).
Nun = note (adv.).

P

Por = by, by means of, through, with (prep.).
Pie = well (adv.).
Pil = more (adj. and adv.).
Pia = farther, further, more (adv.).
Poi = the rate of, in the proportion of (prep.).
Post = after, in order to (prep.).
Pri = the (pron.).
Poken = almost (adv.).
Porrer = by, by, by (prep.).
Plej = most (adv.).
Plo = concerning, of, about (prep.).
Pre = for, because of, for the sake of, owing to (prep.).
Be = if (conj.).
Sed = but (conj.).
Sen = without (prep.).
Ses = six (num.).
Hep — seven (num.).
Ŝi = she (per. pron.).
Sub = under (prep.).
Super = above, over (prep.).
Sur = upon (prep.).
Tamen = however, yet, nevertheless, still (conj.).
Tia = that (or, such) kind of (dem. pron. and pron. adj.)
Tiel = therefore, for that (or, such) cause (or, reason) (adv. and conj.).
Tia = thereby, at that time (adv.).
Tia = there, in that place (adv.).
Tia = therein, in that place (adv.).
Tia = there is, is that (or, such) any or, manner (comp. and adv.).
Tia = is this, such a one's (dem. pron.).
Tio = is this thing (dem. pron.).
Tio = is this thing, of this thing (neuter pron. and pron. adj.).
Tia = this one, the latter (dem. pron. and pron. adj.).
Tia = through (prep.).
Train = towards, beyond, on the other side of (prep.).
Train = away (adv.).
Train = towards (nom.).
Train = back, back (adv.).
Taj = at once, immediately (adv.).
Unu = one (num.).
Ves = one's, his / its (pl.).
Ves = one's, his, there (per. pron.).
LIST OF USEFUL WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS.

In making use of the following list of Adverbs, Adjectives, Conjunctions, Prepositions, and adverbial and prepositional expressions, if the student has any doubt as to the correct Esperanto words he should select when more than one is given, he will generally find them explained (with examples) in the alphabetical Index of Adverbs, Prepositions, and Conjunctions at pages 140, 150, and 260.

A
a. per en; por, an en - during a day.
A per en fojojn en tobro = Four times a day.
Tri fnatoin en monato = Three pounds per month.
Drapo po m franko por metro = Cloth at six francs a (per) metre.
About = ĉirkaŭ; pri: pli-malpli; proksimume.
Above = super; pli ol.
Across = tra; la en la njo.
Actually = efektive; fakte; ja; respektive.
Adieu = arla; u.
Afar = malproksime de.
After = poste; kiam; poste.
A time = poste kelka tempo.
A consideration = konserwante; post pensamento.
Some time = poste kelka da tempo.
Afterwards = poste; .
Again = poste; multfoje.
And again = foje kaj ree; refoje; multfoje.
Again = poste; rea;
Agreed that = hmsente ke.
327
USEFUL WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS.

All, all of it = tute, tute prave.
Always = preska ĉiam.
Among, amongst = inter, el.
Among other things = inter alie, inter aliaj aferoj.
And = kaj.
As...as = tiel...kiel.
As (time) = kiam, dum.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la ĉeble.
As far as possible = la Ĉeble.
As far as possible = la Ĉeble.
C U T P U L  M O T I O N  A N D  E X P R E S S I O N S.

As soon as (= tuj kiam, "as soon as")

As soon as = tuj kiam

As ... so = same, kid: "It was (happened! = kie! oka z in.

As if tit -i'/vr.'f/7 (followed by indicative).

As if lit wenjj mhxt'.afi (followed by conditional).

As soon ... a distance = malproksime; en malproksimo.

As ... a distance = malproksime; en malproksimo.

As if = traza&.

A possible way is the phy reaching.

A possible way is the phy reaching.

A = aparfe: fionkf.

A:=« /j€: apud: la fto: Mir; po,

As per, according to sense.

As per, according to sense.

As per icti'-' ; ĝ

As per icti'-' ; ĝ

A distance = malproksime; en malproksimo.

A distance = malproksime; en malproksimo.

A = same, kid: "It was (happened! = kie! oka z in.

A possible way is the phy reaching.

A possible way is the phy reaching.

A possible way is the phy reaching.

As soon as = tuj kiam, "as soon as")

As soon as = tuj kiam

As if = traza&.

A possible way is the phy reaching.

A possible way is the phy reaching.

A = aparfe: fionkf.

A:=« /j€: apud: la fto: Mir; po,

As per, according to sense.

As per icti'-' ; ĝ
USEFUL WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS.

At the latest = kiam plej malfrue.
,, least = kiam plej malfrue.
,, moment = kiam en la momento.
,, most = kiam la plej multe.
,, outset = kiam en la unua tempo; komence.
,, rate of = kiam la plej multe.
,, same time = kiam same tempo.
,, side = kiam side flanke de.
,, this = kiam ĉi.
,, times = kiam iafoje; kellcafoje.
,, what time = kiam je kioma horo.
,, will = kiam laŭvole; laŭplaĉe; laŭbono.
,, Athwart = kiam ĉi."{

Backwards, -ward. = kiam malakturne.
,, and forwards = kiam ĉi kaj ĉi kaj ree antaŭe.
,, everything = kiam antaŭ ĉio.
,, long = kiam baldaŭ; post ne longate.
,, Behind = kiam post; kiam malantaŭe.
,, Behold! = kiam jen!
,, Below = kiam sub; kiam malsupre de.
,, Beneath = kiam sub; kiam sube.
,, Beside = kiam laulonge de.
,, Besides = kiam ekster; krom; krom tio; kromo; cetere.
,, that... = krom tio, ke...
,, Better = kiam frue; kiam frutempe.
,, Between, betwixt = kiam inter.
,, beyond = kiam krome; supermezure.
,, Betimes = kiam frue; kiam frutempe.
,, by and by = kiam tiel; kiam tiel...kiel.
,, by chance = okaze.
,, consent = supermezure.
,, Both...and = kaj...kaj; tial...tial, ke.; tial, car...
USEFUL WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS.

Each one's = ĉiuj kia.
Either out = enka 
and/or (or 1 either) 
Either = enka, ali.
Else = alia, se ne.
Elsewhere = alia loko, alia loko.
Energetic = energia, afida, 
Energetic = energia, afida.
Enough = svasko, ĉe.
Entirely = tute, plnc.
Er = antaŭ, al la ol. 
Especially = precipe, aparte.

Even = ec, mem.

Ever = iam, ajn, ĉiam.

Everyday = ĉiutage.

Every kind of = ĉiuj la kia.
Everyday = ĉiutage.

Everywhere = ĉi, ĉi, ĉiue; kiel.

Evidently = videble, erindante.

Exactly = ĝuste, precize, akurate.

Exceedingly = trege, ekstreme.

Expressly = speciale, ĝuste, precize.

Extremely = trege, ekstreme.

Facilitating = faciliga, elstarigado.
For instance = ekzemple, ekzemple, ekzemple, ekzemple.
Fortune = ĥo, ĉapulo, ĥo, ĉapulo, ĉapulo.
 Favorable to = ĉe, ĉe.
USEFUL WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS.

-Few words only, or nothing at all: (omitting).
- a little; some; any.
- these, these; these, these; this, this, these; these, these, these, these, these.

Finally: in, at; in the place.
- few words more: however.
- a little more time: however.
- a few more days: however.
- at all costs: however.

For which: in, at; at at all; at all; at all.
- a long time: however.
- these, these; these, these; this, this, these; these, these, these, these, these.

For the first time: in, at; at at all; at all.
- a little more time: however.

For the first time: in, at; at all; at all; at all; at all.
- a long time: however.
- these, these; these, these; this, this, these; these, these, these, these, these.

For the first time: in, at; at all; at all; at all; at all.
- a long time: however.
- these, these; these, these; this, this, these; these, these, these, these, these.

For the first time: in, at; at all; at all; at all; at all.
- a long time: however.
- these, these; these, these; this, this, these; these, these, these, these, these.

For the first time: in, at; at all; at all; at all; at all.
- a long time: however.
- these, these; these, these; this, this, these; these, these, these, these, these.

For the first time: in, at; at all; at all; at all; at all.
- a long time: however.
- these, these; these, these; this, this, these; these, these, these, these, these.

For the first time: in, at; at all; at all; at all; at all.
- a long time: however.
- these, these; these, these; this, this, these; these, these, these, these, these.

For the first time: in, at; at all; at all; at all; at all.
- a long time: however.
- these, these; these, these; this, this, these; these, these, these, these, these.

For the first time: in, at; at all; at all; at all; at all.
- a long time: however.
- these, these; these, these; this, this, these; these, these, these, these, these.

For the first time: in, at; at all; at all; at all; at all.
- a long time: however.
- these, these; these, these; this, this, these; these, these, these, these, these.

For the first time: in, at; at all; at all; at all; at all.
- a long time: however.
- these, these; these, these; this, this, these; these, these, these, these, these.

For the first time: in, at; at all; at all; at all; at all.
- a long time: however.
- these, these; these, these; this, this, these; these, these, these, these, these.

For the first time: in, at; at all; at all; at all; at all.
- a long time: however.
- these, these; these, these; this, this, these; these, these, these, these, these.

For the first time: in, at; at all; at all; at all; at all.
- a long time: however.
- these, these; these, these; this, this, these; these, these, these, these, these.

For the first time: in, at; at all; at all; at all; at all.
- a long time: however.
- these, these; these, these; this, this, these; these, these, these, these, these.

For the first time: in, at; at all; at all; at all; at all.
- a long time: however.
- these, these; these, these; this, this, these; these, these, these, these, these.

For the first time: in, at; at all; at all; at all; at all.
- a long time: however.
- these, these; these, these; this, this, these; these, these, these, these, these.

For the first time: in, at; at all; at all; at all; at all.
- a long time: however.
USEFUL WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS.

From inside = el interne.
    = de la tempo, kiam.
, now = cle nun.
outside = el ekstere ; de ehter (to domo).
, time to time = de tempo al tempo.
, top to bottom = de supro (pis f undo ; de supre malsupren.
, under = sub.
within the = de en la ; el interne de la.
, without than = de ekster la.
Full of = plena de (or, je).
Further = plie; piu.
Furthermore = krom tio.
Generally = plejofte ; yenerale ; ordinare ; kulime.
Good-bye = adiaŭ.
Good enough = sttji ĉe. bona.
Half... .half = duone... .duone.
Hardly = apena ŭ ; preska ŭ ; ne.
Hence = (cause) tial; pro tio ; kaiize de tio ; (time) de nun; post; (place) de tie Si.
Henceforth = de nun.
Here = jen ; tie ĉi; ĉi tie.
Here is (or, &i-e) = jen estas.
Here and there = kaj tie ; tie aŭ aliloke.
Hereafter = de mm ; estonte.
Herewith = per tio ĉi; tie ĉi aldonita (enjermita) ; ĉi ĉi kune.
High up = alte supre.
Hither = en ĉi; ĉi tien : pli proksimit.
Hither and thither = ĉi kaj tien.
Hitherto = ĝis nun.
Hour by hour = horo(n) post horo.
Hourly = ĉiuhore.
Ho = kiel; kiamaniere.
, long = yis kiam.
, many (much) = kiom ; kiom da.
However = kiel ajn ; tamen.
, little = kiel ajn malmultt.
, niany (much)— = kiom " ĵj,
Identically = idente; precize same ; tute same ; ĝuste.
If = se.
, ever (at any time) = en ĉi,

281
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Chinese Characters</th>
<th>English Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If however = manua.</td>
<td>If however = manua.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In short = en.</td>
<td>In short = en.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In my view = en.</td>
<td>In my view = en.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In the past = en.</td>
<td>In the past = en.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immediately = en.</td>
<td>Immediately = en.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In addition to = aldone al; plie ; krom.</td>
<td>In addition to = aldone al; plie ; krom.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In all particulars = ind*tah.</td>
<td>In all particulars = ind*tah.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In various sorts of ways = in various ways, je; en ciuj rilatoj.</td>
<td>In various sorts of ways = in various ways, je; en ciuj rilatoj.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In answer to = responde je ; responde al.</td>
<td>In answer to = responde je ; responde al.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any case = kiaokaze ; kiausupoze ; en kia okazo.</td>
<td>Any case = kiaokaze ; kiausupoze ; en kia okazo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other way = alie ; alimaniere.</td>
<td>Other way = alie ; alimaniere.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Place = He; (ie).</td>
<td>Place = He; (ie).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bad condition = hag*;</td>
<td>Bad condition = hag*;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Breadth = ljadn_r(p.</td>
<td>Breadth = ljadn_r(p.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>End condition = a-;</td>
<td>End condition = a-;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Consequence = sekre : &quot;komkrence ; sekve (de tio) (of that).</td>
<td>Consequence = sekre : &quot;komkrence ; sekve (de tio) (of that).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Of which = seilve de kio.</td>
<td>Of which = seilve de kio.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparison with = kumftere kum ; en komparo kun.</td>
<td>Comparison with = kumftere kum ; en komparo kun.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conclusion = fine; la*te : finaufe.</td>
<td>Conclusion = fine; la*te : finaufe.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Conformity with = konforme kun (or, je); la.</td>
<td>Conformity with = konforme kun (or, je); la.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In the course of = in d.aiivo (irado) de.</td>
<td>In the course of = in d.aiivo (irado) de.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Time = en la da uro de tempo.</td>
<td>Time = en la da uro de tempo.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Due course = dt ve : &quot;intempe ; ĝ uste ; ĝ ustatempe.</td>
<td>Due course = dt ve : &quot;intempe ; ĝ uste ; ĝ ustatempe.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Effect = en la efektireco ; &quot;fektive ; la u esence.</td>
<td>Effect = en la efektireco ; &quot;fektive ; la u esence.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

310
In every case, 

... every manner (or, way) = eiel; eielamere.

... excess = li oe.

... fact = efckt ire; falcle; ja.

... favor = por.

... form = forme.

... front = untaiie.

... other respects = en aliaj ri/atoj.

... other words = a livorte; a! id ire.

... particular = precipe; aparte.

... point of fact = fakte; efektive.

... reality = efektire; en rexdeco.

... regard = rilate al; or, rilate (with accusative).

... relation to = rilate al; to be in relation to = rilati al.

... reply to = responde je; or, responde al; respoudante.

... rotation nice = la vico; la vico.

... shape = forme.

... short = mallonye; malmultarorte.

... so many words = per tiom da vortoj.

... succeeding, for, etc. then, etc. = sussece.

... degree of to grade; expreco; eem.

... succession = intersekve.

... such a case = tiaokaze; en tia okazo.

... degree = en tia yrado; tiagrade.

... succeed = sucede.

... spite of = spite.

... other way = la ia alia maniero.

... other respects = en kelkaj ri/atoj.

... other thing = spite c celebrated.

... succession = intersekve.

... spite of said.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Useful Words and Expressions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>In such a manner = in a manner = manner = in this manner; log; &amp; al.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... manner (way) to do = a manner to do; manner of manner (way) to do; manner (way) to do.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... that same = that same = that same; same = that same.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... event of = event of; event of.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... former = former; former.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... latter = latter; latter.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... least = least; least.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... midst = midst; midst.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... morning = morning; morning.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... proportion of = proportion of; proportion of.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... same = same; same.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... space of = space of; space of.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... this respect = this respect; this respect.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... time = time; time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... turn = turn; turn.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... vain = vain; vain.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... what manner (way) = what manner (way); what manner (way).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... whatever manner = whatever manner; whatever manner.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>... width = width; width.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inasmuch as = inasmuch as; inasmuch as.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Incidentally = incidentally; incidentally.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indeed = indeed; indeed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inevitably, infallibly = inevitably; inevitably.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inside = inside; inside.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inside out = inside out; inside out.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Insomuch as = insomuch as; insomuch as.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instead of = instead of; instead of.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intrinsically = intrinsically; intrinsically.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is it not so = is it not so; is it not so.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>It is a pity = it is a pity; it is a pity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May he = may he; may he.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May she = may she; may she.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May we = may we; may we.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May you = may you; may you.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Would not he = would not he; would not he.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Would not she = would not she; would not she.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Would not we = would not we; would not we.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Would not you = would not you; would not you.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

337
Useful Words and Expressions

J
Jointly = joint.
Jointly, together = jointe.
Jointly = same.
just = simply.
just = even.
Just as = as.
just = simply.
Just like = similar.
Just so = just.
Just so = same.
J ust = simply.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
J ust = simply.
Just as = as.
J ust = simply.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
Just as = as.
### USEFUL WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS

- **More** = pli; pli da.
- **More... than** = pli... ol.
- **Moreover** = pli kaj krom tio.
- **Most** = pli; plej; la plej granda nombro (da); la plej mult (da).
- **Most often** = plej oft; pleje.
- **Mostly** = plej; plej oft; la plej multe.
- **Much** = multo; multe da.
- **Namely** = nome; tio estas, or, I.e.
- **Nay** = ne.
- **Near (to)** = apud; proksime.
- **Nearly** = proksima ti.
- **Neither** = nek.
- **Neither... nor** = nek... nek.
- **Never** = nii, ne.
- **No** = ne.
- **No doubt** = senthe; senduhe.
- **No farther (further)** = M fiht.
- **No longer** = ne: ne p/u.
- **No matter** = ne malhelpis.
- **No sooner than** = tuj kiam: tuj post kiam.
- **No one** = nenies.
- **No one else** = nenin alia.
- **No quantity** = nenio.
- **No us** = semdila.
- **Nobody's** = mii.
- **Nohow** = neniel.

![Image of the page content](image-url)
USEFUL WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS.

None = neniom.
Nor...also (either) (too) = nek...ankau.
Not = ne.
altogether (entirely) = ne tute.
" any = neniom
at all = neniom.
in the least = mniel; tute ne.
long ago (since) = a>Ua ĉiujlonge ; antau nelonga tempo.
many = nemulte (da).
more than = ne pli ol.
" only = nenur; m sole.
till after that = ne plifurte, ol pod tio.
" now = jen...jen.
now and then = iafoje ; okaze.
nowadays = n uten Tempo.
nothing = nenio.
notwithstanding = malgra
all that = malgra ke.
Now = jen.
Now...now = jen...
Nowhere, not anywhere = nenio.
Of = de ; per ; en ; inter ; pro, etc., according to sense.
Of = de ; do.
Often = ofte ; midtfoje.
On = de ; en ; pro ; sur, etc., according to sense.
account = kauze de ; pro.
arrival = alvenante ; alveninte.
behalf of = por ; pro la profito de.
condition that = kondiĉe, ke ; or, kun la kondiĉo, ke.
consideration = konsideri, konsiderante ; pripensante.
every occasion = en ĉiu okazo ; ĉiuokazo.
For = fareble ; fakte.
just = pretumble.
my account = por mi (for my sake) ; pro mi (because of me).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Useful Words and Expressions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>On my part: <strong>iniaf anke</strong>; <strong>mia fianko</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No account: <strong>nenial</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One's own account: <strong>(por) 4 mem.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Purpose: <strong>(vi) w&lt;rc.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sale: <strong>(vxdNa.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Second thoughts: <strong>(hem*ldmm</strong>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>That (at): <strong>et tio.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>That account: <strong>pro tio : tial.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The contrary: <strong>(male; in rose.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>That day: <strong>la tago: la tagon.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other hand: <strong>(alijianke : aliparte.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Side: <strong>trans :  alijtanke de.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Supposition: <strong>&lt;?HjSgiftt.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part of: <strong>riank( lie.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Way: <strong>en (st/r) fa rojo ; .«ttrroji.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whole: <strong>entute.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>This: <strong>ĉ tio et.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Account: <strong>tio M.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>View: <strong>elmontrata.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Once: <strong>foje : iam (sometime), unufoje (once); unu fojon (one time, on one occasion).</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A week: <strong>fojon en semajno.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Again: <strong>dtnore : ankoran unu fojon.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For all: <strong>unufoje por ¨iam ; unu fojon por ¨iam.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a way: <strong>en unu fojo; en unu fojo (hovve).</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upon a time: <strong>(vak fils; fils.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When: <strong>(tago ham; en unu tago, ham.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upon another: <strong>unu post (la) aha.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>And the other: <strong>(la amik'i.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Another: <strong>unu la alian ; tin reciproke.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>At a time: <strong>unuope.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One: <strong>unu post unu.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Day: <strong>iam ; en unu tago ; foje j unu tagon.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Whom: <strong>(fhoro.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chee character: <strong>(ih.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Others: <strong>(la aliaj ; the rest remaining; fa ahhaj.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Otherwise: <strong>a he ; se ne ; ahmamere; en aha okazo.</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Out of: <strong>out.</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Useful Words and Expressions

- **Out of date** = malormoda; ne lŭmoda.
- **Order** = maordigita; vendi/a (sold out); elĉerpita (exhausted).
- **Outside** = ekster; ekstere de.
- **Over** = super; pli ol.
- **Overlooking** = kontraŭe; rigardo/aire.
- **Owing to** = kahze de; pro; en ĉe.
- **Particular** = ajmla; specifika.
- **Particularly** = precius; apurto.
- **Possibly** = eble; verajante.
- **Post** = afranita; afranke.
- **Precisely** = juste; precize.
- **Quite** = tute.
- **Right** = tute pramo; tute r̩̊sta.
- **Rarely** = malofte.
- **Rather** = pli ol; prefere. Mi preferis pli, ke...
- **Readily** = volonte; pretemo; facile.
- **Recently** = ĉe; ĉe; freŝe.
- **Regarding**, **respecting**, **re** = riĉe; rilate al.
- **Relative to** = rilate al; pri.
- **Rest** = la ceteraj.
- **Right through** = tra; tute tra; tra la tuta.
- **Round about** = ĉirkaŭe; ĉirkaŭen.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Example Usage</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ago</td>
<td>It happened a week ago.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>almost</td>
<td>It was almost a year ago.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after</td>
<td>It happened after the event.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>after some time</td>
<td>It happened after some time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>afterwards</td>
<td>It happened afterwards.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>before</td>
<td>It happened before the event.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>before some time</td>
<td>It happened before some time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>before some time ago</td>
<td>It happened before some time ago.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>before some time later</td>
<td>It happened before some time later.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>before some time previous</td>
<td>It happened before some time previous.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>since</td>
<td>It happened since the event.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>since some time</td>
<td>It happened since some time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>since some time ago</td>
<td>It happened since some time ago.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>since some time later</td>
<td>It happened since some time later.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>since some time previous</td>
<td>It happened since some time previous.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than</td>
<td>It happened than the event.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time</td>
<td>It happened than some time.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time ago</td>
<td>It happened than some time ago.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time later</td>
<td>It happened than some time later.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time previous</td>
<td>It happened than some time previous.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time ago than</td>
<td>It happened than some time ago than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time later than</td>
<td>It happened than some time later than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time previous than</td>
<td>It happened than some time previous than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time ago than some time later</td>
<td>It happened than some time ago than some time later.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time later than some time previous</td>
<td>It happened than some time later than some time previous.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time previous than some time ago</td>
<td>It happened than some time previous than some time ago.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time ago than some time later than</td>
<td>It happened than some time ago than some time later than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time later than some time previous than</td>
<td>It happened than some time later than some time previous than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time previous than some time ago than</td>
<td>It happened than some time previous than some time ago than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time ago than some time later than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time ago than some time later than than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time later than some time previous than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time later than some time previous than than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time previous than some time ago than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time previous than some time ago than than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time ago than some time later than than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time ago than some time later than than than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time later than some time previous than than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time later than some time previous than than than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time previous than some time ago than than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time previous than some time ago than than than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time ago than some time later than than than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time ago than some time later than than than than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time later than some time previous than than than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time later than some time previous than than than than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time previous than some time ago than than than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time previous than some time ago than than than than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time ago than some time later than than than than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time ago than some time later than than than than than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time later than some time previous than than than than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time later than some time previous than than than than than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time previous than some time ago than than than than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time previous than some time ago than than than than than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time ago than some time later than than than than than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time ago than some time later than than than than than than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time later than some time previous than than than than than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time later than some time previous than than than than than than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time previous than some time ago than than than than than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time previous than some time ago than than than than than than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time ago than some time later than than than than than than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time ago than some time later than than than than than than than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time later than some time previous than than than than than than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time later than some time previous than than than than than than than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time previous than some time ago than than than than than than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time previous than some time ago than than than than than than than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time ago than some time later than than than than than than than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time ago than some time later than than than than than than than than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time later than some time previous than than than than than than than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time later than some time previous than than than than than than than than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time previous than some time ago than than than than than than than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time previous than some time ago than than than than than than than than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time ago than some time later than than than than than than than than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time ago than some time later than than than than than than than than than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time later than some time previous than than than than than than than than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time later than some time previous than than than than than than than than than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time previous than some time ago than than than than than than than than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time previous than some time ago than than than than than than than than than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time ago than some time later than than than than than than than than than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time ago than some time later than than than than than than than than than than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time later than some time previous than than than than than than than than than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time later than some time previous than than than than than than than than than than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time previous than some time ago than than than than than than than than than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time previous than some time ago than than than than than than than than than than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time ago than some time later than than than than than than than than than than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time ago than some time later than than than than than than than than than than than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time later than some time previous than than than than than than than than than than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time later than some time previous than than than than than than than than than than than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time previous than some time ago than than than than than than than than than than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time previous than some time ago than than than than than than than than than than than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time ago than some time later than than than than than than than than than than than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time ago than some time later than than than than than than than than than than than than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time later than some time previous than than than than than than than than than than than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time later than some time previous than than than than than than than than than than than than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time previous than some time ago than than than than than than than than than than than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time previous than some time ago than than than than than than than than than than than than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time ago than some time later than than than than than than than than than than than than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time ago than some time later than than than than than than than than than than than than than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time later than some time previous than than than than than than than than than than than than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time later than some time previous than than than than than than than than than than than than than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time previous than some time ago than than than than than than than than than than than than than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time previous than some time ago than than than than than than than than than than than than than than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time ago than some time later than than than than than than than than than than than than than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time ago than some time later than than than than than than than than than than than than than than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time later than some time previous than than than than than than than than than than than than than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time later than some time previous than than than than than than than than than than than than than than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time previous than some time ago than than than than than than than than than than than than than than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time previous than some time ago than than than than than than than than than than than than than than than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time ago than some time later than than than than than than than than than than than than than than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time ago than some time later than than than than than than than than than than than than than than than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time later than some time previous than than than than than than than than than than than than than than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time later than some time previous than than than than than than than than than than than than than than than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time previous than some time ago than than than than than than than than than than than than than than than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time previous than some time ago than than than than than than than than than than than than than than than than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time ago than some time later than than than than than than than than than than than than than than than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time ago than some time later than than than than than than than than than than than than than than than than.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than some time later than some time previous than than than than than than than than than than than than than than than than</td>
<td>It happened than some time later than some time previous than than than than than than than than than than than than than than than than.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SOMETHING AND EXPRESSIONS.

Somehow = id; somehow;
Sometimes = id fid;
Something = ia;
Else = in aha;
Of that kind = iu thi.
Sometime = iaw;
Sometimes = kelkafojc;
Somewhat = iom;
Later = iom pode;
Somewhere = ie;
Soon = halda;
Soon afterwards = ImiiMft poxtr.
Sooner or later = ImiiMft a; rather than);
Specially = aparte; precipe; xpeclale.
Still = ankorau; nun ankorau; tamen.
Subsequently = pine.; poste.
Such = tia; tiaj.
(a one), the like = tie/a | tidaj.
A one's = ties.
And such = ia kaj tia; tiu kaj tin.
As = tia, kia; tia, kiel.
Being the case = en tin okazo.
That = ta'a, ke.
Suddenly = subite.
Suffice it to say = suficas diru.
Suppose = supozite.
Supposing that = supozinte, ke.
Surely = corte; nepre.
Taking into consideration that = konsiderante ke; ne forye-
sante ke.
Than = ol.
Thanks to (your advice) = dank' al (via konsilo).
That = ke.
(I.e.) tio estas; or,
,, the reason = jen kial; jen (estas) la ka-
ŭ zo; tio estas la.
,, why = tio estas, kial; jen kial.
,, one's = ties.
The day after (following), the next day = fa.
(moryaiian, sekvantan) tayon.
,, ,,, to-morrow = postmoryai.

344
Useful Phrases and Expressions

The day before yesterday = antaŭeri la antaŭan tagon.

"but one after = fa duan tagon jioste.

"less...the less = ju malpli...des malpli.

"more...the more = ju pli...des pli.

"more...the more...the less = ju pli...des malpli.

"more...the more...the more = ju pli...des pli.

"more so, as (that) = pli tia (ke).

"sooner the better = ju pli...des pli bone.

"time will come when... = renos iam la tempo, kiam.

Then = tiam, tiam, kiam, poste, tiamokaze.

Then, when = tiam, kiam.

Thence = tie nun, de tie, el tie.

There = li, ĝi, ĉi tie.

and back again = el ĝia, ĝiaj.

Throughout = tute tra.

Throughout = tute tra.

Thus, = tiel...

,, for example = tiel ekzemple.

Till = ĝis kiam.

Time after time = = ĝiaj(o)j(e) kaj ree.

To = aŭ, ĉe, ĝis, kun, por, etc., according to sense.

,, a great extent = grandmporte.

,, and back again = tien kaj reeli.

,, my surprise = mia surprize.

,, no purpose = sene, ke; vane.

,, no place = nenien.

,, some extent = iom, en ia amplekso.

,, that effect = tiu senco.

,, the effect that = tid, ke; por ke.

,, ,, full extent = en tuta amplekso.

,, ,, left = maldekstren.

,, ,, right = dekstren.

,, ,, same extent = samamplekie; lau sama grado.

,, what extent = ĉia kia 'mezuro.

,, with = norne, tio estas.

345
USEFUL WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS.

To-day = hodiu.
Together = akompa.
To-morrow = morgan.
Thursday = morgauta.
Friday = morgfri.
Saturday = morgsatu.
Sunday = morgsunda.

My family is fine.
My mother is happy.
My father is healthy.
My child is happy.

Touching — pri; tu.sante; ri.sante.
Towards — al; kontrau.

Ultimately = last; fine; en la.fino.
Under — sub; sube.

Until = ĝis; ĝis kiam; ĝis la tempo, kiam; tiel longe; ĝis.

Late at night = ĝis profunda nokte.
Now = ĝis nun;
Then = ĝis tiam;
This = ĝi nun;
That = ce tio.
Whole = entute.
These = tiuokaze.
Such = tiaocaze.
Some = iaokaze.
No = neniaokaze.
Any = ciaokaze.
Consideration = konsiderata.

Unless = escepte se; esceptinte, ke; se ne.

Upon = sur.(To depend) upon = (dependi) de.

Upside down = sumpren; renversite; la fundo supren.
Upstairs = supre; supren.

Yesterday = hodia; progresma.

To-night = hodia; ĝis nokte.
Two-sides = du-meslaj; du-meslaj libre; du-meslaj libere.
USEFUL WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS.

Upwards = -iiprtu.

Of = pli. ol.

Utterly =/«/t ; tutegc.

Verily = vtre.

Very = lr<.

Seldom = tre malmjt.

Soon —tre balda ŭ

Vice versa = kontra>'te ; in» /-...

Virtually=praktike : laiiintence.

Weekly= tine.

Well = hone ; nu'

Well-nigh = pre Ami.

What = bio : kia.

What... else = kin alia : kio alia.

What is to be done = kion fari ?

What... matters it ?=fc»o grara gi estas I

Whatever = kia ajn.

Whatsoever = kio ajn.

When = kiim ; or, tiam, kiam.

Whence = de kie ; or, el kie.

Wheresoever = de kie ojn ; or, el kie ajn.

Whenever, whensoever = kiam ajn ; ĉiufoje kiam; iiun fojon kiam.

Where = kie : Hen.

Whereas = kiam efektire; rilate al kio ; car; dume.

Whereby = per kio.

Wherefore = kial.

Wherever, wheresoever = kie ajn ; kien ojn.

Wherein = en kio.

Whereof = pri kio ; pri kin ; el kio.

Whereupon = pro kio ; sekve de kio; tuj post kio.

Whether = ĉiu...

Whether...or = ĈH.. an.

Whether... whether = iu...iu.

Which = kio; kiu.

" of the two—//

Whichever, whoever = kiu ajn.

While, whist = dum ; kiam efektive.

Whither = kien.

Whithersoever = kien ajn.

Whose = kies.

Why = kial ; '(/ro kio ; por kio.

Willingly = volonte.

Weekly
USEFUL WORDS AND EXPRESSIONS.

Within — kung; per; de; etc., according to sense.

Without = etoor; krom; sen; estere; etc., according to sense.

Within — kung; per; de; etc., according to sense.

Within — kung; per; de; etc., according to sense.

Word for word = la vorte.

Year by year = jaro(n) post jaro.

Yearly = ciujare.

Yes = jes.

Yesterday = hieraŭ.

In the morning = en la mateno.

Yet = ankoraŭ; tamen.

Yonder = tie; tien.

Years = jaroj.

Year = jaro.

Yesterday — hieraŭ.

In the morning = en la mateno.

You = vi.

Years = jaroj.

Year = jaro.

Yesterdays = jaroj.
HINTS TO LEARNERS.

These hints are principally for learners teaching themselves. Follow the advice of your instructor, if you have a good one.

1. First study carefully the pronunciation (para. 3—19).

2. Learn, in the following order: Genetical Terminations (para. 53); Bohemian Prefixes (para. 54, 55); Prepositions (paras. 104, 121); List of Prepositions (page 177); Correlative Words (para. 147); List of Primary Words (page 301); Use of the Accusative (paras. 60—63).

3. Read aloud daily some portion of the “Krestomatio” and Exercises on pages 241—304.

4. Translate daily some portion of the “Krestomatio” or Kabe’s “Unua Legolibro” into English, and then back into Esperanto and compare. At first, translate the Esperanto fairly literally, so as to get a good idea of the usual order of words in Esperanto, and where it differs from English in construction. Afterwards translate into fluent English, and then back into Esperanto.

5. Get readiness of expression by constantly asking yourself aloud questions, and then replying to them; by saying in Esperanto what you see when walking out, what you are doing, etc., as, “Now I must go to bed,” “It is time to get up,” “I must cross the street,” “I wonder who lives there,” etc.

6. Read anecdotes in the “Krestomatio” or in Kabe’s “Unua Legolibro,” and then try and repeat them, as if you were telling them to someone. Keep on repeating an anecdote until you can tell it as
HINTS TO LEARNERS.

Read fluently in Esperanto as in English, but not necessarily in the exact words of the book.

(7). In writing, say aloud the sentences as you write them. Your ear will then often prevent errors.

(8). Write your diary in Esperanto.

(9). Read the best authors, and mark in pencil any words or phrases which strike you as useful to remember. Write these in a notebook for future reference.

(10). Don’t slavishly copy in your style any particular author. Note the good points in each, and remember that what is not easily understood is not good style, however correct it may be grammatically.

(11). After a week’s study, look out for recruits and teach them what you have learnt. In teaching others you teach yourself.

(12). When you read your daily newspaper, translate aloud a few sentences; that will give you facility of expression in many subjects.

(13). Always bear in mind the following:

(a). Every letter and syllable is pronounced (para. 16).

(b). Do not clip or drag the vowels (paras. 8—10).

(c). The tonic accent is always on the last syllable but one (para. 17).

(d). Do not use the compound forms of verbs in the active voice unless necessary for the sense (paras. 167—170, 222—226).

(e). Remember that each preposition in Esperanto, except je, has a fixed meaning (paras. 250, 251).

(f). Note carefully the use of the accusative case (66—68).

(g). Avoid conundrums in the shape of long compound words of three or more different roots. A sentence in Esperanto is not a riddle!
## INDEX

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Accessories Case</th>
<th>Par 6.5...69</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. To show direct object</td>
<td>66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>After participles</td>
<td>66 (a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With transitive verbs</td>
<td>66 (b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With transitive verbs in exclamations</td>
<td>66 (c)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. To show motion towards</td>
<td>67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverbs</td>
<td>67 (a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Direction</td>
<td>67 (b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. To show preposition omitted</td>
<td>68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>After doubtful verbs</td>
<td>68 (a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Denoting place and time</td>
<td>68 (b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Price, weight, etc.</td>
<td>68 (c)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. General remarks on...</td>
<td>69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nouns and pronouns in apposition</td>
<td>69 (a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qualifying and predicative adjectives</td>
<td>69 (b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjectives</td>
<td>69 (c)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use of with adjectives</td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; with &quot;</td>
<td>70 (a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; with proper names</td>
<td>70 (b)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; with personal pronouns</td>
<td>70 (c)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&quot; in reply to questions</td>
<td>70 (d)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classifiers</td>
<td>70-116</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terms of comparison, etc.</td>
<td>106</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Classifiers</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heads of chapters, etc.</td>
<td>110</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Terms of comparison, etc.</td>
<td>111</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Page:** 301
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INDEX</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>ALPHABETICS (continued)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numerical adjectives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Participles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adjective: not used when they have form of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Place of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Participles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qualifying place of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relative to case of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Expressive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use, in place of apostrophe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use in compound words</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When articles are used for</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Used in a possessive sense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ADVERBS</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adverbial participles and adjective</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Comparative and superlative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Place of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Numerical adverbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Of quantity followed by an</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preceding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Preceding adjectives at all angles, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remarks on, and the expression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When participles take the form of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When they take the place of preposition and complement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>When used for adjectives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>AFFIRMATION</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ARTICLE</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Before numeral adjectives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proper names</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case of optional use</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use, when omitted in English, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CAPITAL LETTERS</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Use of</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

352
## INDEX

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Complements</td>
<td>52, 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Direct</td>
<td>29, 30, 46, 76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Immediate for</td>
<td>239, 242</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indirect for</td>
<td>239, 242</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component Words</th>
<th>Definition of</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Complemental</td>
<td>52, 50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Context</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Order of component parts</td>
<td>46-48</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Constructions</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Correlative</td>
<td>139-158</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Correlative Words</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Demonstrative</td>
<td>141-144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interrogative and intensive</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meaning of initial and terminal letters</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Co-ordination</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Conversion</td>
<td>283-288</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Conversion</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Titles and addresses</td>
<td>283-288</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exemplary</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Exercise</td>
<td>283-288</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Exemplary Words</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Foreign</td>
<td>45-50</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Foreign Words</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Formation of words</td>
<td>45-50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changes of English spelling in the</td>
<td>45-50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Changes of words</td>
<td>45-50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Definitions</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

353
### INDEX

**Formation of Words (continued)**
- Foreign words ••• 52
- Grammatical terminations explained ••• 42
- How prefixes and suffixes are coined ••• 55
- *prefix* ••• 50
- *suffix* ••• 44
- Roots, definition of ••• 48
- When full words are compounded ••• 49

**Grammatical Terminations** ••• 40
- List of ••• 40
- Of verbs ••• 40
- Want they show ••• 40

**Grammar and Commentary** ••• 94—290
- Parts of Speech ••• 95
- Adjectives ••• 107—114
- Adverbs ••• 238—248
- Article ••• 96—102
- Conjunctions ••• 262—268
- Interjections ••• 269
- Nouns ••• 103—106
- Prepositions ••• 249—261
- Pronouns ••• 125—157
- Verbs ••• 159—237

**HINTS TO LEARNERS** ••• Page 349

**Interjections and Exclamations** ••• 309
- Fis a prefix ••• 368 (i)

**Interrogation** ••• 59
- Examples of ••• 64, 179
- Place of interrogative ••• 91

**Mood of Verbs** ••• 121—202
- Conjunctive have no influence over ••• 171—202
- Different from English ••• 171
- How to determine ••• 273
- Conditional ••• 190—194
- after infinitival as to refer in expression ••• 190
- mood of ••• 194
- Impersonal ••• 195
- other part of ••• 194
- one of ••• 187—209
INDEX

Nouns or "words" (continued)

- for of...
- when obligatory
- infinitive
- as an auxiliary
- place of...
- prepositions that can be used with...
- use of...
- adds "able for the...
- used for the process...
- called "participle of another...
- used generally without a preposition...
- what it expresses...
- when another word is used for...

Nouns, use of...

- 38-42

Negative
- 66, 70

Place of negative...
- 92

Nouns
- 327-330
- 104, 111
- 355

Case, termination of noun...

Elision of short O...

Formed from gerund...

Infinite used...

Numerals
- 1-10

Adjective used for...

Secondary uses...

Prefixes of...
- 30, 106

Proper nouns, form of...
- 63 (f)

Numbers
- 15-20

Cardinal...

Collective...

Distributive...

Multiple...

Ordinal...

Reiterative...

Substantive...

Use of "...i..." with...

INDEX
INDEX

INDEX

PARTICIPLES 203—213

Agree in case and number with nouns, etc. ... ... 207

but adverbial are invariable ... ... 207 (d)

predicative, agree only in number ... ... 207 (f)

Conjunctive cases of agreement in nouns 206-210

How participles are renounced 210

Indefinite mood, in English serious 184

Participles, in Esperanto 184

Not to be used for adjectives that have a form of their own 213

Participial adverbs, when used _ ... ... 245 (a)

Passive, not used with suffix -IGI 280 (g)

Place of ... ... ... ... 87

Terminations of 203, 204

Use of case, etc., etc. ... ... 207—208

Parts 46

Pronouns ... ... ... ... Pages 296—300

Pronouns ... ... ... ... 168

Pronouns ... ... ... ... 34, 35

Prefixes 286—290

Definition of ... ... ... ... 44

List of ... ... ... ... 38

Order of, in a word ... ... ... ... 40

North, in EN 35, 39, 40, 41, 42

EX, ENG, 127, POL, 156, PRA 286

DASS, 131, 162, 163, 164, 166, 286

BRA 286, MAL 286, SENE 286

516
## INDEX

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Topic</th>
<th>Page(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Rules of Grammar</td>
<td>76-94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suffixes</td>
<td>270-285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Order of, in a word</td>
<td>46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remarks on:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-A-</td>
<td>271, 279, 284, 287, 290, 291, 294, 297</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-E-</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-IND-</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-Ac-</td>
<td>270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ER-</td>
<td>273</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ISt-</td>
<td>272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-AN-</td>
<td>272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-Kstr-</td>
<td>272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-NJ-</td>
<td>274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-AR-</td>
<td>273</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-Et-</td>
<td>277</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-Obl-</td>
<td>284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-Cj-</td>
<td>274</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-Id-</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-On-</td>
<td>284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-Ebl-</td>
<td>275</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-El-</td>
<td>280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-OP-</td>
<td>284</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-EC-</td>
<td>271</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-IG-</td>
<td>280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-Uj-</td>
<td>278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-EDZ-</td>
<td>276</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-IL-</td>
<td>281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-UL-</td>
<td>272</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-EG-</td>
<td>277</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-IN-</td>
<td>282</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-UM-</td>
<td>285</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use of -IGI, -IGI with numerals, prepositions, etc.</td>
<td>280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syntax</td>
<td>20-36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Complement, direct</td>
<td>28-30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Suprajectual</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Object</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-Object</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Predicate</td>
<td>34-35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Propagation</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject</td>
<td>33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Excluded</td>
<td>23, 33, 36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tenses</td>
<td>214-256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Action, continuation of, shown by ek</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- showing of</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- showing of</td>
<td>216</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- soon to happen</td>
<td>225, 229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- just happened</td>
<td>225</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Emphatic form of, expressed by ja</td>
<td>217</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Future</td>
<td>227</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- compound forms</td>
<td>228</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- for the present or subjunctive</td>
<td>229</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Names of</td>
<td>238-256</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Present tense</td>
<td>238, 239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- use of A, A, A, A, A</td>
<td>238, 239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Past, simple</td>
<td>239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- use of A, A, A, A, A</td>
<td>239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Perfect, simple</td>
<td>239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- use of A, A, A, A, A</td>
<td>239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pelopon, simple</td>
<td>239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- use of A, A, A, A, A</td>
<td>239</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Use of j's mode for compound forms</td>
<td>255</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
INDEX

Verbs

Auxiliary, i.e.,

Composed forms rarely used in active verb

Conjugation

Impersonal use of

Omitted in questions and replies

Past participle of suffix -IGI, used only in active voice

Place of

Auxiliary, i.e.,

Compound forms rarely used in active verb

Conjugation

Past participle

Duration of action

Observations:

Vocabulary:

List of primary words

Use of the formation of and composed words

Notes, see Formation of and composed words.
The British Esperanto Association

(INCORPORATED)

BRITA ESPERANTISTA ASOCIO.

Founded 14th October, 1904.

Hon. President—
DR. L. L. ZAMENHOF.

Vice-Presidents—
C. E. COWPER, F.B.E.A.
H. BOLINGBROKE MUDIE.

MAJOR-GEN. G. COX, B.A., F.B.E.A.
REV. J. C. RUST, M.A.

II. F. HOVELER, W. T. STEAD.

PROF. J. E. B. MAYOR, D.C.L., D.D.
J. M. WARDEN, F.B.E.A.

Secretary—
HARALD CLEGG.

The British Esperanto Association is the Union of Esperanto Societies throughout the Empire, and has been established to promote in every way the spread of the "International Auxiliary Language, Esperanto," and especially by—

(a) Promoting the formation of new Local Groups;
(b) Disseminating information and publishing propaganda literature;
(c) Organising Examinations and granting Certificates of Proficiency;
(d) Promoting Lectures and arranging loans of Literature, etc.;
(e) Making arrangements for Congresses at home and abroad;

and to maintain headquarters in London where all Esperantists may obtain information and assistance in their work.

A list of Groups affiliated to the B.E.A. can be obtained from the Secretary. There are two Examinations of Proficiency: Preliminary and Advanced, both to be taken by Correspondence. Full particulars of the Examinations can be obtained from the Secretary free.

The Subscription for "Members" is 5s. per annum, which includes a free copy of "THE BRITISH ESPERANTIST." Fellows are elected by the Council after they have passed the Advanced Examination or have qualified by having rendered some special service to the cause of Esperanto.

The Association is greatly in need of a large addition to the number of Subscribing Members, in order to carry on efficiently and energetically the propaganda work which has been so successfully begun. Members have the privilege of purchasing Esperanto Publications sold by the B.E.A. and taking lessons by correspondence at reduced prices.

THE BRITISH ESPERANTIST,

with which is incorporated "THE ESPERANTIST."

The Obelisk, Victoria, 20 the British Esperanto Association, London, W.C.

THE BRITISH ESPERANTIST is printed in Esperanto and English, and besides the Official Records of the Association, contains Reports of Interest from Local Groups, Articles on the Grammar of the Language, Original and Translated Literary Matter in Esperanto, Reviews, Correspondence, Foreign News, etc., and is indispensable to every English Student of Esperanto.

Members of the B.E.A. have the privilege of having their names inserted free of charge in the column inviting Foreign Correspondence. It is hoped that every Esperantist in the country will support the cause by subscribing to the B.E.A.
COX, GEORGE, 1838-1909
A Grammar and Commentary on the International Language
014053674 (95155)